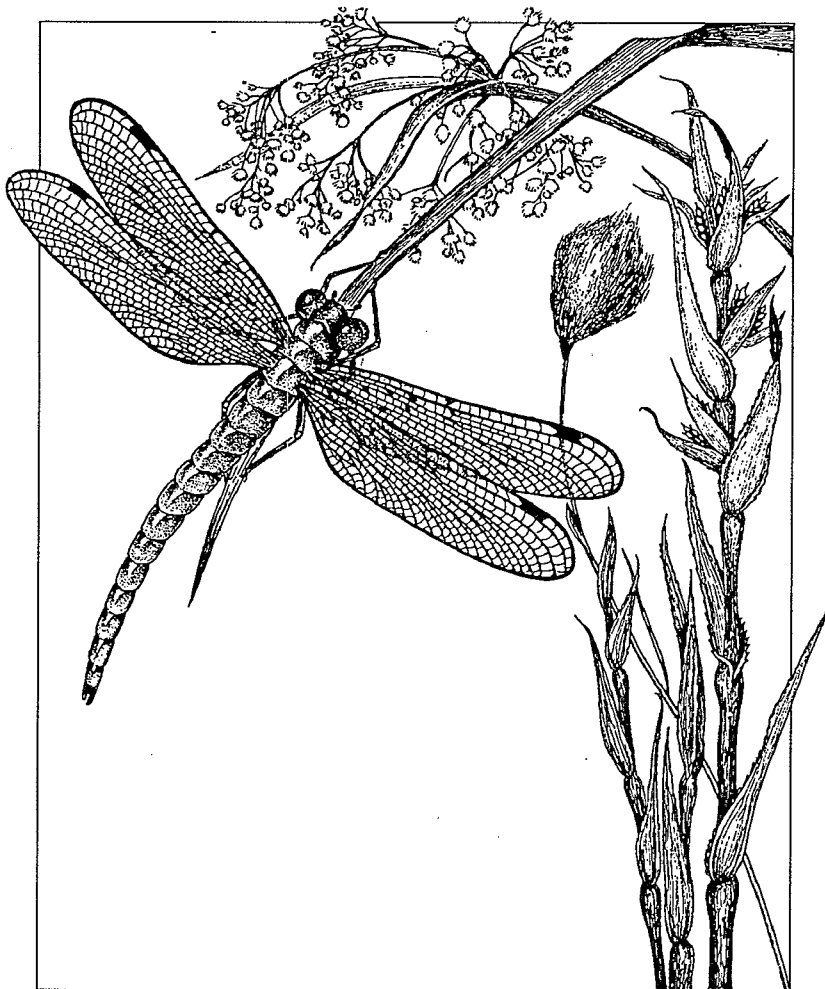
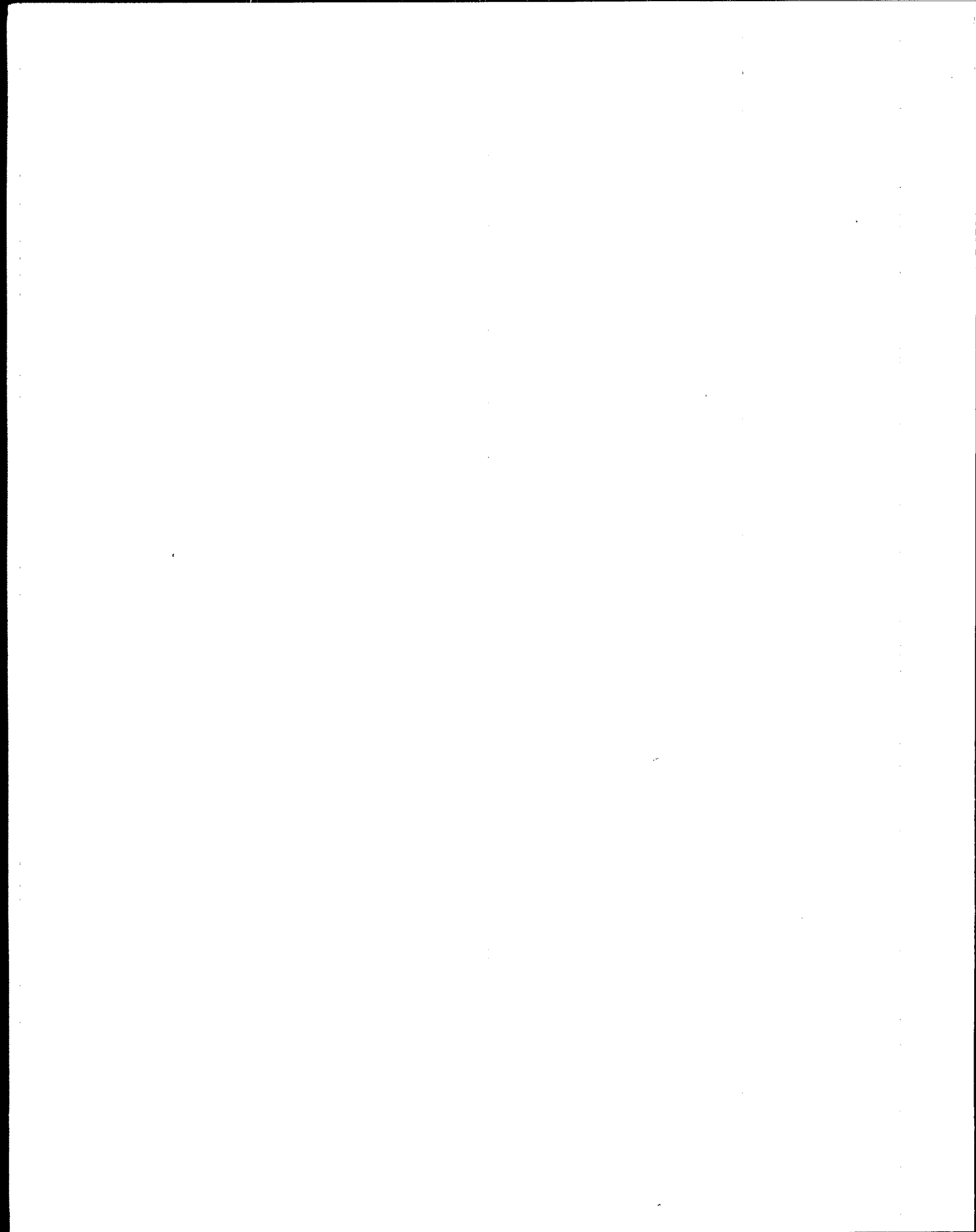




# A Synoptic Approach to Cumulative Impact Assessment

## A Proposed Methodology





EPA/600/R-92/167  
October 1992

# ***A Synoptic Approach to Cumulative Impact Assessment***

## **A Proposed Methodology**

by  
Scott G. Leibowitz<sup>1</sup>  
Brooke Abbruzzese<sup>2</sup>  
Paul R. Adamus<sup>2</sup>  
Larry E. Hughes<sup>2</sup>  
Jeffrey T. Irish<sup>2</sup>

Technical Editors:  
Scott G. McCannell<sup>3</sup>  
Ann R. Hairston<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup>U.S. Environmental Protection Agency  
USEPA Environmental Research Laboratory  
200 SW 35th Street  
Corvallis, OR 97333

<sup>2</sup>ManTech Environmental Technology, Inc.  
USEPA Environmental Research Laboratory  
200 SW 35th Street  
Corvallis, OR 97333

<sup>3</sup>Word Design  
610 NW Van Buren Avenue  
Corvallis, OR 97330

U.S. Environmental Protection Agency  
Environmental Research Laboratory  
200 SW 35th Street  
Corvallis, OR 97333



Printed on Recycled Paper

#### NOTICE

This document has been reviewed in accordance with U.S. Environmental Protection Agency policy and approved for publication. Mention of trade names or commercial products does not constitute endorsement or recommendation for use.



UNITED STATES ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION AGENCY  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20460

OFFICE OF  
WATER

Dear Reader:

The following document is a product of the Environmental Protection Agency Office of Research and Development's (ORD) Wetlands Research Program developed at the request of our office in response to the need for more information on cumulative impact assessment. The proposed methodology was designed to assist wetland regulators in assessing the cumulative effect of individual wetland impacts within the landscape. Other potential applications of the approach include prioritizing areas for restoration and protection as part of nonpoint source abatement efforts implementing the Coastal Zone Act Reauthorization Amendments guidance, supporting the development of State Wetland Conservation Plans and wetland water quality standards, including designating uses and identifying Outstanding National Resource Waters, prioritizing acquisition and restoration efforts for other water quality or habitat benefits, and conducting regional risk assessments and watershed planning efforts such as Advance Identifications or Special Area Management Plans.

The synoptic approach allows wetland managers to produce statewide maps that rank portions of the landscape according to a set of landscape variables, or synoptic indices. These maps and indices should enable permit reviewers to consider the landscape condition of the area in which a particular permit is proposed, and, in so doing, allow them to better consider the cumulative impact of a proposed activity.

The synoptic approach was specifically designed for situations in which time, resources, and information are limited. It is practical within this context because an assessment is prepared for an entire state or region, and not on a case-by-case basis. In addition, the approach is intended to augment the best professional judgement used daily by wetland managers and regulators. It is not intended to provide a precise, quantitative assessment of the cumulative effects within a particular area. Rather, it provides a mechanism to compare potential cumulative impacts between areas.

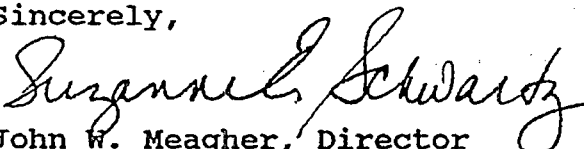
The report describes the steps of conducting a synoptic assessment, and illustrates the use of synoptic information through four case studies. In the Pearl River, Louisiana case study, the potential use of the synoptic approach for assessing cumulative impacts under the Clean Water Act Section 404 regulatory program is illustrated. In the Illinois case study,

subwatersheds are ranked for restoration according to their potential for water quality improvement. In the Washington State case studies, the approach is used for regional comparisons to support the development of a State Wetland Conservation Plan and to demonstrate the feasibility of introducing the concepts of value and future risk into the synoptic assessments.

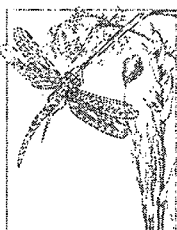
The report does not provide a specific, detailed procedure for choosing the synoptic indices, nor does it supply a scientifically tested list of landscape indicators with confidence limits. This is not possible, given the strong dependency of the synoptic indices and landscape indicators on the specific management goals and the actual environmental conditions of the assessment.

ORD has issued this report as a proposed, rather than operational methodology to allow testing of the approach in Regional and State applications. We ask anyone conducting a synoptic assessment to provide the Wetlands Research Program or our office with feedback so that EPA can evaluate the suitability of the method and refine the approach.

Sincerely,

  
John W. Meagher, Director  
Wetlands Division  
Office of Wetlands, Oceans  
and Watersheds

# TABLE OF CONTENTS



<i>List of Figures .....</i>	<i>vi</i>
<i>List of Tables .....</i>	<i>vii</i>
<i>Disclaimer .....</i>	<i>ix</i>
<i>Acknowledgments .....</i>	<i>x</i>
<i>Preface .....</i>	<i>xi</i>
<i>Glossary .....</i>	<i>xii</i>
 <b>Section 1: The Synoptic Approach</b>	 <b>1</b>
<b>Chapter 1: Introduction</b>	<b>3</b>
Cumulative Impacts .....	3
Regulatory Mandate .....	5
Regulatory Context .....	6
The Synoptic Approach .....	6
<b>Chapter 2: Ecological Basis for the Synoptic Indices</b>	<b>9</b>
Rationale for a Landscape Approach .....	9
Landscape Model of Ecosystem Function .....	10
Effect of Impacts on Landscape Function .....	11
Synoptic Indices .....	12
Function .....	13
Value .....	13
Functional Loss .....	14
Replacement Potential .....	14
Synoptic Index Evaluation .....	14
<b>Chapter 3: Conducting a Synoptic Assessment</b>	<b>15</b>
Step 1: Define Goals and Criteria .....	15
Step 1.1 - Define Assessment Objectives .....	15
Step 1.2 - Define Intended Use .....	16
Step 1.3 - Assess Accuracy Needs .....	17
Step 1.4 - Identify Assessment Constraints .....	17
Step 2: Define Synoptic Indices .....	17
Step 2.1 - Identify Wetland Types .....	18
Step 2.2 - Describe Natural Setting .....	19
Step 2.3 - Define Landscape Boundary .....	19
Step 2.4 - Define Wetland Functions .....	20
Step 2.5 - Define Wetland Values .....	20
Step 2.6 - Identify Significant Impacts .....	20
Step 2.7 - Select Landscape Subunits .....	20
Step 2.8 - Define Combination Rules .....	22
Step 3: Select Landscape Indicators .....	22
Step 3.1 - Survey Data and Existing Methods .....	23
Step 3.2 - Assess Data Adequacy .....	23
Step 3.3 - Evaluate Costs of Better Data .....	23
Step 3.4 - Compare and Select Indicators .....	24
Step 3.5 - Describe Indicator Assumptions .....	24
Step 3.6 - Finalize Subunit Selection .....	25
Step 3.7 - Conduct Pre-Analysis Review .....	25

<b>Step 4: Conduct Assessment .....</b>	<b>25</b>
Step 4.1 - Plan Quality Assurance/Quality Control .....	25
Step 4.2 - Perform Map Measurements .....	25
Step 4.3 - Analyze Data .....	26
Step 4.4 - Produce Maps .....	26
Step 4.5 - Assess Accuracy .....	28
Step 4.6 - Conduct Post-Analysis Review .....	29
<b>Step 5: Prepare Synoptic Reports .....</b>	<b>29</b>
Step 5.1 - Prepare User's Guide .....	29
Step 5.2 - Prepare Assessment Documentation .....	29
<b>Chapter 4: Case Studies .....</b>	<b>31</b>
<b>Pearl River Basin .....</b>	<b>32</b>
Management Goal .....	32
Wetland Types .....	32
Landscape Boundary and Subunits .....	32
Natural Setting .....	32
Wetland Functions .....	32
Significant Impacts .....	32
Synoptic Indices .....	34
Landscape Indicators .....	34
Map Interpretation .....	35
<b>State of Louisiana .....</b>	<b>35</b>
Management Goal .....	38
Wetland Types .....	38
Landscape Boundary and Subunits .....	38
Natural Setting .....	38
Wetland Functions .....	38
Significant Impacts .....	38
Synoptic Indices .....	38
Landscape Indicators .....	39
Map Interpretation .....	41
<b>State of Washington .....</b>	<b>41</b>
Management Goal .....	41
Wetland Types .....	41
Landscape Boundary and Subunits .....	49
Natural Setting .....	49
Wetland Functions .....	49
Significant Impacts .....	49
Synoptic Indices .....	50
Landscape Indicators .....	50
Map Interpretation .....	50
<b>State of Illinois .....</b>	<b>55</b>
Management Goal .....	55
Wetland Types .....	55
Landscape Boundary and Subunits .....	55
Natural Setting .....	55
Wetland Functions .....	55
Significant Impacts .....	56
Synoptic Indices .....	56
Landscape Indicators .....	56
Map Interpretation .....	57
<b>Chapter 5: Section 1 Summary .....</b>	<b>63</b>
<b>Future Directions .....</b>	<b>65</b>

---

## **Section 2: Background Information** **67**

### **Chapter 6: Ecological Response to Stress** **69**

#### **Ecosystem Stability** ..... **69**

#### **Adaptations to Stress** ..... **70**

##### Physiological Adaptations ..... **70**

##### Life History ..... **70**

##### Gene Banks ..... **72**

#### **Stress-Adapted Ecosystems** ..... **72**

#### **Effect of Disturbance on Ecosystem Function** ..... **72**

#### **Mitigating Effects of Landscape on Disturbance** ..... **74**

##### Landscape Elements as Conduits or Barriers to Disturbance ..... **74**

##### Landscape Pattern of Sources and Sinks ..... **74**

##### Recovery from Local Extinction ..... **74**

#### **Landscape Fragmentation** ..... **75**

### **Chapter 7: A Review of Wetland Functions and the Effect of Wetland Impacts** **77**

#### **Wetland Functions** ..... **77**

##### Hydrologic Functions ..... **77**

##### Water Quality Functions ..... **78**

##### Habitat Functions ..... **81**

#### **Wetland Degradation** ..... **81**

#### **Wetland Conversion** ..... **83**

#### **Effects of Cumulative Wetland Loss on Landscape Functions** ..... **85**

##### Loss of Hydrologic Functions ..... **85**

##### Loss of Water Quality Functions ..... **86**

##### Loss of Habitat Functions ..... **87**

## **References** **91**

## **Appendices** **107**

### **Appendix A** ..... **109**

### **Appendix B** ..... **110**

### **Appendix C** ..... **113**

### **Appendix D** ..... **114**

### **Appendix E** ..... **115**

### **Appendix F** ..... **120**

### **Appendix G** ..... **122**

### **Appendix H** ..... **124**

### **Appendix I** ..... **127**

# LIST OF FIGURES



Figure 1.1.	"A Short History of America" .....	4
Figure 1.2.	Improving best professional judgment .....	7
Figure 2.1.	Generic model of ecosystem impacts .....	11
Figure 3.1.	Illustration of maps using different class intervals to represent the same data .....	27
Figure 3.2.	Different possible data distributions .....	28
Figure 4.1.	The Pearl River Basin in south-central Mississippi and southeastern Louisiana and the five subunits .....	33
Figure 4.2.	Functional loss for the Pearl River Basin .....	36
Figure 4.3.	Loss of hydrologic function for the Pearl River Basin .....	37
Figure 4.4.	The State of Louisiana and the 124 subunits .....	42
Figure 4.5.	Replacement potential with respect to soils for Louisiana .....	43
Figure 4.6.	Replacement potential with respect to hydrologic integrity for Louisiana .....	44
Figure 4.7.	Replacement potential with respect to water quality for Louisiana .....	45
Figure 4.8.	Hydrologic function for Louisiana .....	46
Figure 4.9.	Water quality function for Louisiana .....	47
Figure 4.10.	Habitat function for Louisiana .....	48
Figure 4.11.	The State of Washington and the 62 subunits .....	51
Figure 4.12.	Habitat value for Washington .....	52
Figure 4.13.	Future risk for Washington .....	53
Figure 4.14.	Future risk of habitat loss for Washington .....	54
Figure 4.15.	The State of Illinois and the 90 subunits .....	58
Figure 4.16.	Water quality function for Illinois .....	59
Figure 4.17.	Water quality value with respect to humans for Illinois .....	60
Figure 4.18.	Water quality with respect to valued fish communities for Illinois .....	61
Figure 4.19.	Replacement potential with regard to soils for Illinois .....	62
Figure 5.1.	Applications of synoptic assessments at various spatial scales .....	64
Figure 6.1.	Example of a disturbance, stress, and response .....	70
Figure 6.2.	Disturbance and biotic responses occur in many forms and at various spatial and temporal scales .....	71
Figure 6.3.	Ecosystem resistance and resilience .....	71
Figure 6.4.	Simple steady-state ecosystem where excess capacity buffers function from disturbance .....	73
Figure 6.5.	Buffering of landscape effects in a disturbed ecosystem .....	73
Figure 6.6.	Ecosystem fragmentation .....	75
Figure 7.1.	Historical loss of wetland area and percent loss in the United States, by state ..	84
Figure F.1.	Subunit 4 from Illinois case study overlaid with county boundaries .....	120
Figure F.2.	Subunit 815 from Louisiana case study overlaid with precipitation zone boundaries .....	121
Figure G.1.	Subunit 4 from the Illinois case study overlaid with dot grid .....	122
Figure G.2.	Subunit 4 from the Illinois case study overlaid with denser dot grid .....	122
Figure G.3.	Electronic planimeter .....	123
Figure H.1.	The Pearl River Basin with subunit boundaries .....	124

# LIST OF TABLES



Table 1.1.	Major steps in conducting a synoptic assessment .....	7
Table 2.1.	Typology of cumulative impacts and cumulative effects .....	12
Table 2.2.	Model of ecosystem response to increasing stress .....	13
Table 3.1.	Steps in conducting a synoptic assessment .....	16
Table 3.2.	Examples of landscape descriptions that can be used in selecting indices .....	18
Table 3.3.	Examples of technical questions that could be used to describe the natural factors determining wetland function .....	19
Table 3.4.	Typical relationships expected between agricultural impacts and wetland degradation .....	21
Table 3.5.	Effect of wetland degradation on hydrologic functions and degree of expected association .....	22
Table 3.6.	Example of objectives and related questions for defining landscape indicators for synoptic indices .....	24
Table 4.1.	Landscape indicators for the Pearl River Basin case study .....	34
Table 4.2.	Landscape indicators for the Louisiana case study .....	40
Table 4.3.	Landscape indicators for the Washington case study .....	49
Table 4.4.	Landscape indicators for the Illinois case study .....	56
Table 7.1.	Functions that wetlands may perform .....	78
Table 7.2.	Multiwatershed studies in which wetland area or related variables significantly predicted streamflow conditions .....	79
Table 7.3.	Relationship between increased wetland area and peak and base flows by geographic region .....	80
Table 7.4.	Examples of area-sensitive wetland bird species .....	82
Table 7.5.	Stresses and associated impacts that can degrade wetlands .....	83
Table 7.6.	Wetlands whose functions may be more sensitive or less resistant to particular types of stress .....	85
Table 7.7.	Generally expected effects of various stresses on hydrologic functions of wetlands .....	86
Table 7.8.	Generally expected effects of various stresses on water quality functions of wetlands .....	87
Table 7.9.	Generally expected effects of various stresses on habitat functions of wetlands .....	88
Table B.1.	Typical relationships expected between resource extraction impacts and wetland degradation .....	110
Table B.2.	Typical relationships expected between urbanization impacts and wetland degradation .....	111
Table B.3.	Typical relationships expected between water management impacts and wetland degradation .....	112
Table C.1.	Effect of wetland degradation on water quality functions and degree of expected association .....	113
Table C.2.	Effect of wetland degradation on habitat functions and degree of expected association .....	113
Table D.1.	Potential sources of mapped and tabular data for landscape indicators of synoptic indices .....	114
Table F.1.	Prorating county data to Subunit 4 for the Illinois case study .....	120

Table F.2.	Prorating precipitation data to Subunit 815 for the Louisiana case study .....	121
Table G.1.	Area estimates using dot grid method .....	122
Table G.2.	Area estimates using denser dot grid .....	122
Table G.3.	Partial listing of land-use areas for polygons within Subunit 4 of the Illinois case study .....	123
Table G.4.	Area estimates using GIS package .....	123
Table H.1.	Calculation of weighting factors for counties overlapping Washington Subunit 26 .....	125
Table H.2.	Conversion of county census data into joint county-subunit values .....	125
Table H.3.	Weighted percent annual population change and agricultural change for joint county-subunit areas .....	126

## DISCLAIMER

The research described in this report has been funded by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency. This document has been prepared at the EPA Environmental Research Laboratory in Corvallis, Oregon, through Contract No. 68-C8-0006 to ManTech Environmental Technology, Inc., and Contract No. 2B0245NTSA to Word Design. This document has been subjected to the Agency's peer and administrative review process and approved for publication. Mention of trade names or commercial products does not constitute endorsement or recommendation for use.

Two earlier reports (Abbruzzese et al. 1990a, 1990b) were produced during the development of the synoptic approach. Although these reports are useful in illustrating applications of the approach, the procedures contained in this document supersede those earlier versions and should be used in conducting a synoptic assessment. As the approach is further tested and evaluated, it may become necessary to update this method again. A mail-in form is provided in the back of the report for those wanting future updates or related products.

## ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

This report is the culmination of a five-year effort on cumulative impact assessment and involved many individuals over the years. We would like to acknowledge all those who collected information, analyzed data, or otherwise helped with the case studies, including Jack Davis, Robert Hipple, JoEllen Honea, Colleen Johnson, Harbans Lal, Daren Moore, Frances Morris, Barbara Peniston, and Susan Ross. Debby Sundbaum-Somers produced Figures 2.1, 6.1, 6.2, and 6.4-6.6, and Linda Haygarth prepared Figures 4.1 and 5.1. Kristina Miller generated the computer graphics for Figures 1.2, 3.1, 3.2, 6.3, 7.1, and G.3. Brenda Huntley assisted in producing the synoptic maps, Figures 4.2-4.19. Thanks to Robert Crumb for allowing use of his cartoon, "A Short History of America" (Figure 1.1).

Susan Christie assisted in some of the initial editing of this document. Special thanks to Myrna Branam, Janet Converse, Kelly Davis, and the rest of those at Word Design for making the extra effort and sacrifices without complaint and for their high quality work. We would especially like to thank and recognize our technical editors, Ann Hairston, for her energy and support, and for showing us the light at the end of the tunnel; and Scott McCannell, for his creative contribution to the document's layout, his attention to the details, his dedication to the project, and for bearing the brunt of it all.

We thank the individuals and agencies that supplied us with data for the case studies, including the Louisiana Department of Environmental Quality, the Washington Department of Ecology, the Illinois Natural History Survey, and the State Heritage Programs of Mississippi, Louisiana, Washington and Illinois. We also thank EPA Regions 4, 5, 6, and 10 for their cooperation and input.

Drs. Louis Iverson (Illinois Natural History Survey), Joseph Larson (University of Massachusetts-Amherst), Arnold O'Brien (University of Massachusetts-Lowell), and Paul Risser (University of New Mexico) served as official reviewers and provided many useful comments that improved this document. We also want to thank all

those others who read through the draft manuscript and provided useful feedback. Of course, final responsibility for this document and its contents lies with the authors.

We would especially like to thank our colleagues in the Wetlands Division within the Office of Water for their early and enthusiastic support of the synoptic approach. John Maxted, now with the State of Delaware, was an early believer in the method and provided additional funding for the Louisiana and Illinois case studies. Doreen Robb has served as Wetlands Division liaison to the Wetlands Research Program (WRP), coordinating review and comments from the Office of Water and providing us with her own useful feedback and vision. We especially appreciate the support we have received on our landscape concepts from John Meagher, Wetlands Division Director, and David Davis, Deputy Director of the Office of Wetlands, Oceans and Watersheds.

Dr. Mary E. Kentula, acting WRP Program Leader, has been kind enough to provide administrative cover, allowing us to focus on completing this document. We appreciate her patience during this period.

Richard Sumner, WRP regional liaison, deserves special mention for his enthusiastic and tireless campaigning to promote the synoptic approach among the Regions. He has been responsible for acting as a "reality check" to make sure this work would be useful to the program. Also, he has been the motivating force behind our ideas on the use of best professional judgment.

Finally, we would like to acknowledge the earlier work and contributions of Dr. Eric M. Preston, Assistant Chief of the Watershed Branch and former WRP Program Leader, who started it all. In spite of the growth and evolution of the synoptic approach, it still includes many of his original ideas. Although we miss his direct involvement in this area, we look forward to his continuing influence through his work on biodiversity and habitat.

We were deeply saddened to learn of the death of Dr. Allan Hirsch as we were completing this document. Allan Hirsch was a visionary and leader in the field of environmental management, excelling in both science and policy arenas. He served as the first Director of Fish and Wildlife Service's Office of Biological Services, where his leadership established that office. He was subsequently Director of EPA's Office of Federal Activities, where he led the EPA Wetlands Program during an important period in its growth and maturation, and later was instrumental in establishing the Office of Wetlands Protection. Dr. Hirsch contributed to the Wetlands Research Program and to this report both directly and indirectly through his published ideas, by participating in an early WRP workshop on cumulative impacts, by serving as chairman of a Science Advisory Board review of WRP's five year research plan, and most recently by reviewing and commenting on the draft of this report. This document is dedicated to Allan's vision and legacy.

## PREFACE

A 1987 study conducted by the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) found that problems considered by experts to pose the most serious threat to the environment were not those targeted most aggressively by Congress or EPA (EPA 1987). A follow-up study by EPA's Science Advisory Board suggested ways in which EPA could reduce environmental risk, including a recommendation that EPA develop methods to improve our ability to assess and compare environmental risks (SAB 1990).

Given this challenge, the Wetlands Research Program (WRP) within EPA's Office of Research and Development has proposed a hierarchical, risk-based approach to wetland assessment that would allow evaluation at three different scales (Leibowitz et al. 1992): a site-specific scale, at which the function of individual wetlands is assessed; an intraregional scale, at which relative comparisons are made between wetlands within the same watershed (or similar landscape subunit); and an interregional scale, at which relative comparisons are made between landscape subunits by considering the

aggregate characteristics of wetlands within those subunits. WRP's Wetland Function Project and Characterization and Restoration Project are primarily responsible for developing the site-specific and intraregional approaches, respectively. The Landscape Function Project is developing a method for making assessments at the interregional scale. The latter, known as the synoptic approach, is the subject of this document.

WRP originally developed the synoptic approach so that regulators could include information on cumulative impacts of wetland loss during review of permits for proposed discharges under Section 404 of the Clean Water Act. However, the approach also fits into the larger framework of risk assessment by providing managers a broad view of wetlands within a landscape context, and it can be used to assign priority to wetland protection or replacement efforts as part of a comprehensive wetland management program. Because the synoptic approach has not been tested in real management applications, it should be viewed as a proposed, rather than operational, methodology.

# GLOSSARY

## ***Active pool***

The materials (including biota) or energy within a landscape that are actively being transferred between component ecosystems as opposed to materials or energy that are cycled or stored within an individual ecosystem.

## ***Barrier***

An ecosystem that inhibits material movement by excluding imports.

## ***Best professional judgement***

Making decisions based on personal experience when better information is unavailable. Best professional judgement is often used in day-to-day management decisions.

## ***Capacity***

The maximum amount of a particular material that an ecosystem can remove from the active pool were the material not limiting; also referred to as "assimilative capacity." Could be used more specifically, e.g., decomposition capacity. Also refers to one of the components of the function index.

## ***Combination rule***

A rule that specifies how two or more components of a synoptic index will be mathematically or logically combined.

## ***Conduit***

An ecosystem that assists the movement of materials through different parts of the landscape by transferring imports between ecosystems without altering the amount of material.

## ***Conversion***

Transformation of an ecosystem into a different ecosystem type or land use (e.g., conversion of a wetland for construction of a mall). Causes complete functional loss of the original ecosystem functions.

## ***Creation***

Building a wetland on an upland site, i.e., in a location where wetlands did not previously exist (compare with restoration).

## ***Cumulative effects***

The sum of all environmental effects resulting from cumulative impacts.

## ***Cumulative impacts***

The sum of all individual impacts occurring over time and space, including those of the foreseeable future.

## ***Degradation***

Partial functional loss caused by impacts that act on an ecosystem without causing conversion (e.g., reductions in productivity because of inputs of pesticides through nonpoint source pollution).

## ***Disturbance***

The action that causes ecosystem stress; includes actions caused by natural agents (e.g., hurricanes) and human impacts.

## ***Drainage area***

See "Watershed."

## ***Ecological function***

An aggregate behavior that arises from one or more physical, chemical, or biological processes.

## ***Effect***

A physical, chemical, or biological change in an ecosystem that results from an impact. The effect can be an immediate consequence of the impact (direct effect) or it can be removed in time and space (indirect effect).

## ***Excess capacity***

The difference between a sink ecosystem's capacity (the maximum amount of a material that the ecosystem can remove if the material is not limiting) and the actual amount of material removed. Excess capacity represents additional material that could be removed and is a form of redundancy that buffers an ecosystem from impacts.

## ***Existing data***

Data that were previously collected, usually for purposes unrelated to the current objective. Existing data must be used when time or money preclude the collection of new data. Also referred to as "available data."

### **Forcing functions**

Materials and energy that drive an ecosystem. These materials and energy originate outside the ecosystem boundary, but over the long run drive most ecosystem processes. In the broadest sense, forcing functions can be natural or anthropogenic in origin. Also referred to as "driving factors."

### **Function**

One of the four synoptic indices; refers to the total amount of some function provided by one or more ecosystems within a landscape without consideration of benefits. Capacity and input are components of function.

### **Functional loss**

One of the four synoptic indices; refers to the complete or partial loss of one or more ecological functions as a result of impacts.

### **Fragmentation**

The break-up of an extensive ecosystem into a number of smaller patches.

### **Habitat function**

Ecological processes that, when taken together, provide support (food, shelter, breeding sites, etc.) for different species.

### **Home range**

The area around an organism's home typically used for feeding.

### **Hydrologic function**

Ecological processes that, when taken together, somehow moderate hydrology; e.g., reduce flood peaks, recharge aquifers, etc.

### **Impact**

A human-generated action or activity that either by design or by oversight alters the characteristics of one or more ecosystems.

### **Index**

See "Synoptic Index."

### **Indicator**

See "Landscape Indicator."

### **Input**

The total amount of material imported into sink ecosystems from one or more sources. Also referred to as "landscape input." Can also refer to one of the components of the function index.

### **Landscape ecology**

The study of interactions between ecosystems.

### **Landscape indicator**

The actual data or measurements used to estimate a synoptic index; in the synoptic approach, a landscape indicator is usually a first-order approximation based on existing data.

### **Landscape subunit**

The basic subdivision of a landscape for which synoptic indices are calculated; a synoptic assessment provides a comparison of landscape subunits. Landscape subunits could be defined environmentally (e.g., watersheds or ecoregions), politically (e.g., counties or conservation districts), or by other criteria.

### **Landscape**

"A heterogeneous land area composed of a cluster of interacting ecosystems that is repeated in similar form throughout" (Forman and Godron 1986). A landscape is normally defined by geomorphology or climate. The study boundary for a synoptic assessment need not include the entire landscape.

### **Landscape unit**

The specific landscape or portion of a landscape for which a synoptic assessment is conducted. The landscape unit can be larger than the study unit because it can contain forcing functions that are outside of the study unit.

### **Metapopulation**

The combined population of all ecosystem patches that are connected by movement of individuals. The metapopulation contributes to the redundancy of a landscape.

### **Patch**

An irregularly shaped ecosystem embedded within a larger "matrix" ecosystem.

### **Patch distance**

The distance between two patches or, more generally, the average distance between patches in an area.

### **Process**

A basic physical, chemical, or biological transformation within an ecosystem which, in aggregate, defines ecosystem functions.

### **Project-specific application**

The use of a synoptic assessment to provide a landscape context for a subunit that has been preselected based on independent criteria (compare with regional comparison).

### ***Redundancy***

The ability of an ecosystem to perform functions in more than one way, or an excess capacity or structure beyond what is normally needed. Redundancy buffers an ecosystem from impacts.

### ***Regional comparison***

The use of a synoptic assessment to determine which subunits within a region best meet some specific criteria (compare with project-specific application).

### ***Replacement potential***

One of the four synoptic indices; refers to the degree to which a wetland and its valued functions can be replaced by creation or restoration. Specifically refers to the landscape characteristics as opposed to on-site characteristics that control replacement.

### ***Resilience***

The ability of an ecosystem to return to predisturbance levels of function.

### ***Resistance***

The ability of an ecosystem to resist loss of function as a result of a disturbance.

### ***Response***

The long-term physical, chemical, and biological changes that result indirectly from stress.

### ***Restoration***

Building a wetland on a non-upland site in a location where a wetland previously existed (compare with creation).

### ***Risk assessment***

An evaluation of environmental risks associated with human actions.

### ***Section 404***

The portion of the Clean Water Act that specifies that a permit must be obtained to discharge dredged or fill materials into waters of the United States.

### ***Sink ecosystem***

An ecosystem that causes a net decrease in the total amount of a material being transferred within the landscape; this occurs if exports are less than imports (compare with source ecosystem). The status of an ecosystem as a source or sink depends upon the particular material.

### ***Source ecosystem***

An ecosystem that causes a net increase in the total amount of a material being transferred within the landscape; this occurs if exports are greater than imports (compare with sink ecosystem). The status of an ecosystem as a source or sink depends upon the particular material.

### ***Stress***

The immediate physical, chemical, and biological changes that result from a disturbance.

### ***Stressor***

Same as a disturbance.

### ***Structure***

The collection of an ecosystem's physical, chemical, and biological characteristics. Structure is built from energy and raw materials.

### ***Study unit***

The actual geographic boundary of a synoptic assessment. May be based on political (e.g., a state) or environmental (e.g., a geological province) criteria.

### ***Synoptic approach***

A five step approach to assessing cumulative impacts or environmental risk, as described in this document, that provides a broad overview of environmental and landscape factors.

### ***Synoptic assessment***

The process of following the five steps of the synoptic approach in order to produce a set of maps, data, and reports that can be used to assess cumulative impacts or environmental risk.

### ***Synoptic index***

A landscape variable that is used in a synoptic assessment as a basis for comparing landscape subunits. There are four general synoptic indices (function, value, functional loss, and replacement potential); in an actual assessment, a specific index would be defined for one or more of the general indices.

### ***Systems ecology***

The study of ecological systems (ecosystems), including their response to stress.

### ***Travel distance***

The maximum distance an organism can travel in order to reach suitable habitat. An organism cannot travel to a different patch if the patch distance is greater than the travel distance.

### ***Value***

One of the four synoptic indices; refers to the benefits obtained by individuals or society from an ecological function. Could include benefits received indirectly, i.e., when the function acts on something of value (e.g., flood reduction is valuable because it reduces loss of life and loss of valued property).

### ***Water quality function***

Ecological processes that, when taken together, improve water quality; e.g., reduce pollutant concentrations, contribute to nutrient cycling, etc.

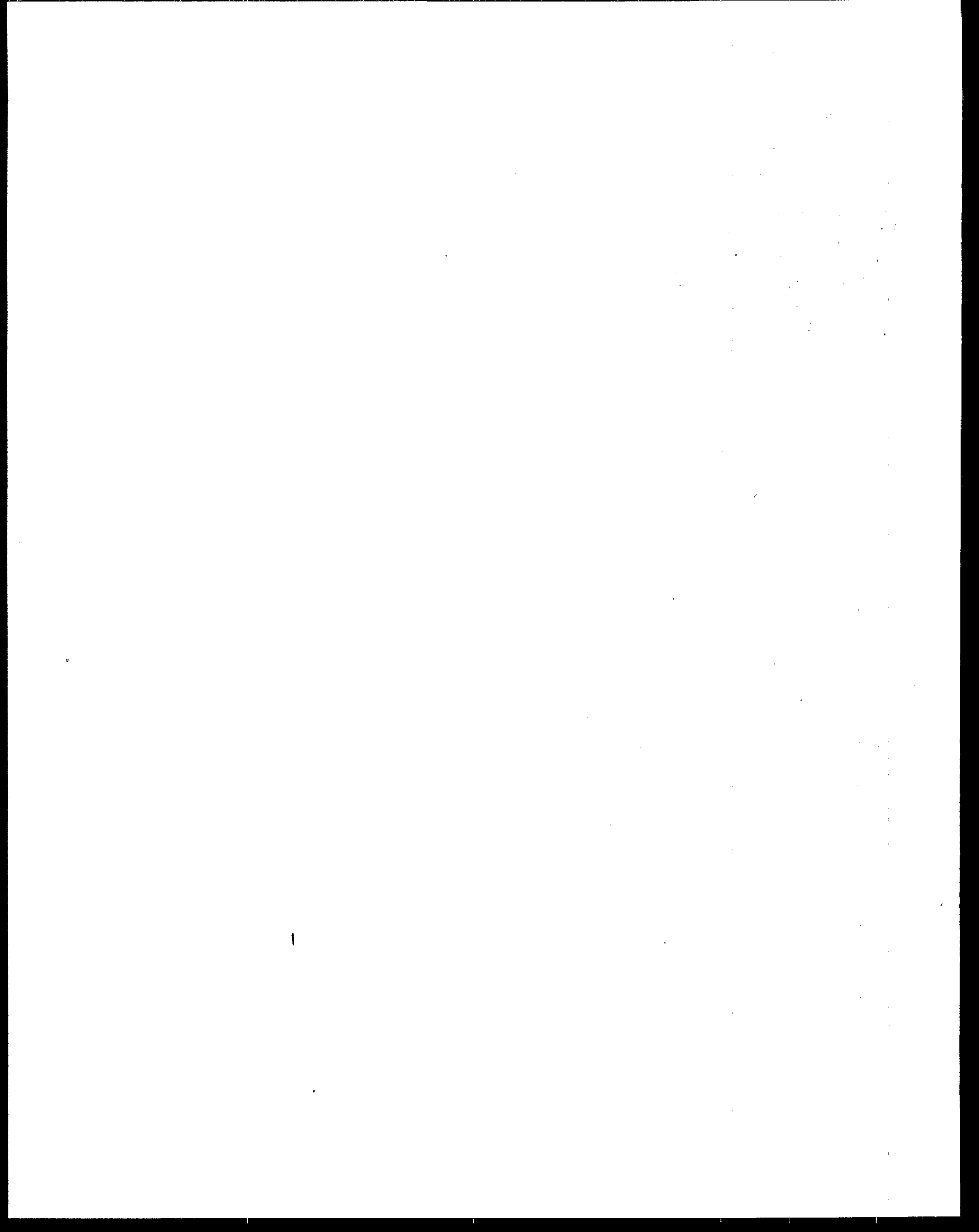
### ***Watershed***

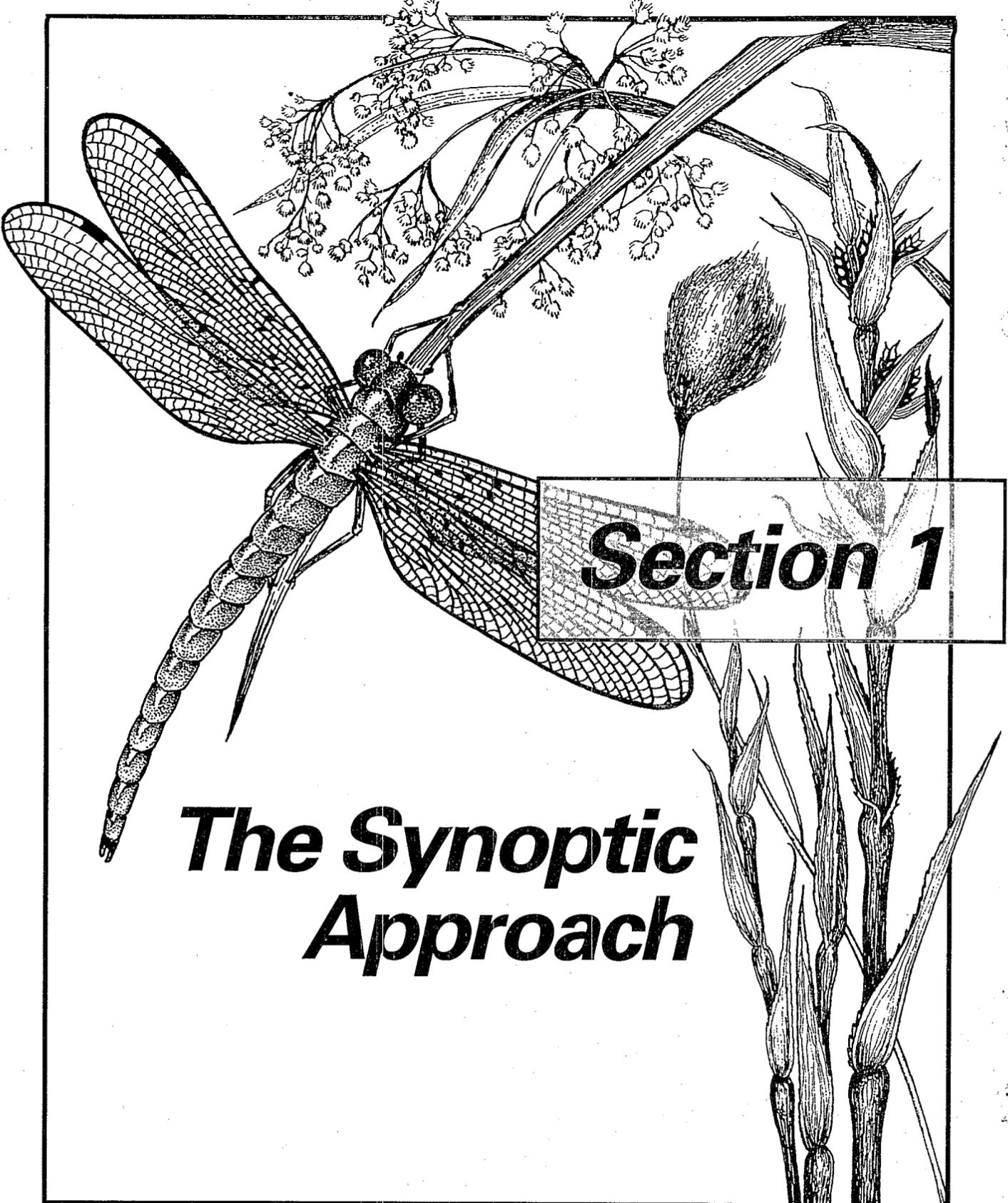
A natural drainage unit defined by topographic high points within which the only input of water

is precipitation. Used analogously with drainage area, although the latter is more properly defined relative to some specific point; e.g., the drainage area for some particular point on a river includes all the area that collects precipitation that is ultimately routed through that point on the river.

### ***Wetland***

Any ecosystem characterized by the presence of water; unique soils compared with adjacent uplands; the presence of vegetation adapted to wet conditions; and the absence of flood-intolerant vegetation (Mitsch and Gosselink 1986). In a more limited sense, used to specifically refer to those wetlands that are included under Section 404 of the Clean Water Act ("jurisdictional wetlands").

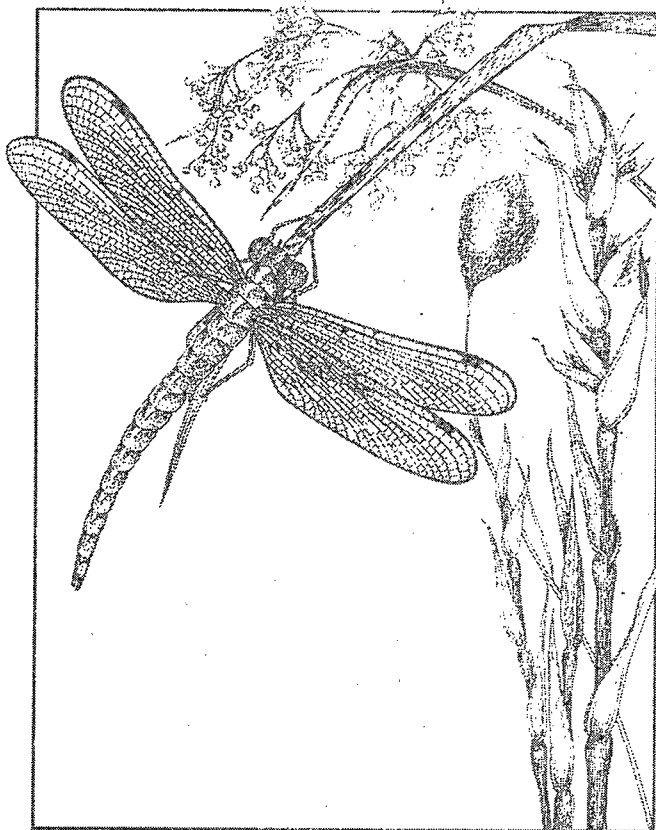




***Section 1***

***The Synoptic  
Approach***





## Chapter 1 Introduction

This report provides resource managers and technical staff with an approach for evaluating the cumulative environmental effects of individual human impacts on the environment, particularly with respect to wetlands. This document is intended to give the reader a general understanding of cumulative impacts and to describe how a synoptic assessment is produced. Although specifically designed for use in wetland permit evaluation under the Clean Water Act (CWA), this method can be applied to cumulative impact assessment in general<sup>1</sup>. A second objective of this report is to encourage resource managers responsible for wetland protection to consider and view wetlands within a landscape context.

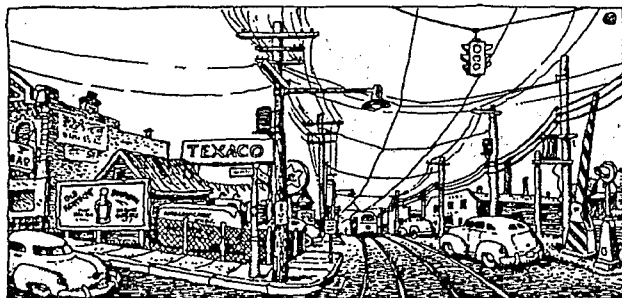
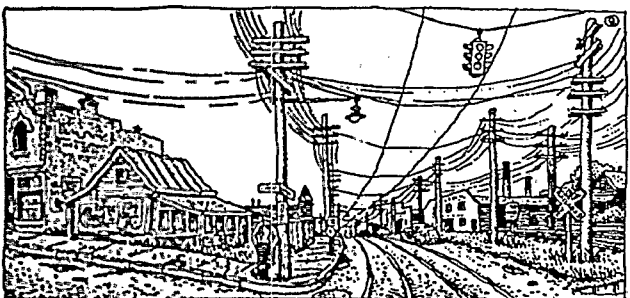
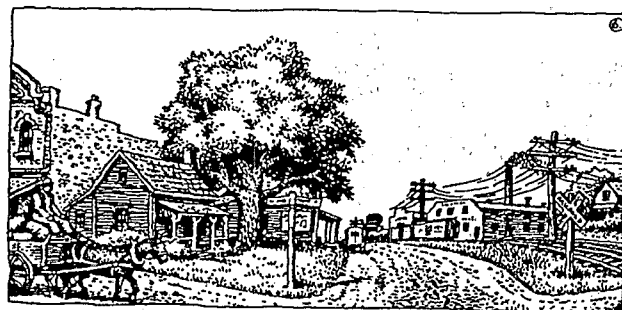
The synoptic approach, so named because it provides a broad overview of the environment, was developed specifically for cases in which time, resources, and information are limited. The method is not intended to provide a precise, quantitative assessment of cumulative impacts *within* an area, nor can it be used to assess the cumulative effects of specific impacts. Rather, it provides a relative rating of cumulative impacts *between* areas. The approach is intended to be easily applied so it can augment the best professional judgment used daily by wetland managers and regulators.

This report is divided into two sections. Section 1 describes the method and illustrates its use. It defines cumulative impacts, reviews the regulatory basis for cumulative impact assessment, and introduces the Wetland Research Program's (WRP's) synoptic approach (Chapter 1). It also provides the ecological basis for the synoptic indices (Chapter 2), describes in detail how to conduct a synoptic assessment (Chapter 3), illustrates the method's use and several possible applications through four case studies (Chapter 4), and contains a summary that discusses future directions (Chapter 5). Section 2 contains detailed background material for readers interested in additional information. It includes a discussion of environmental stress (Chapter 6) and a review of wetland functions and the effects of impacts on these functions (Chapter 7).

### Cumulative Impacts

Traditionally, impact assessment has evaluated the likely effects of a single action on the environment. There has been concern, however, that numerous activities considered insignificant by themselves could, when taken together, cause significant degradation and damage to

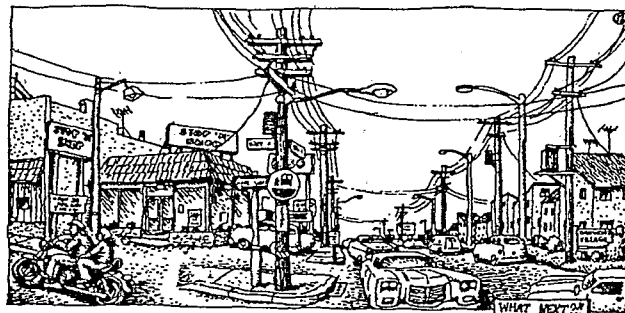
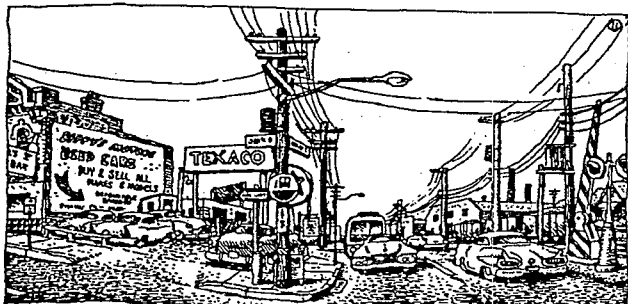
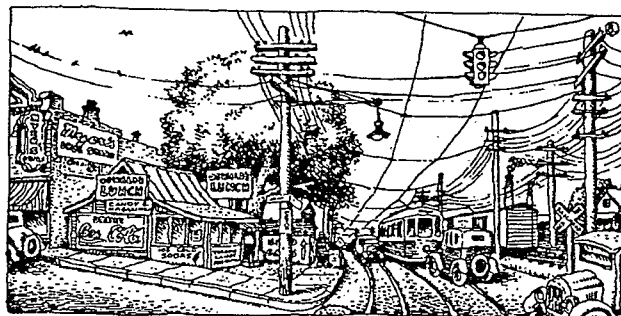
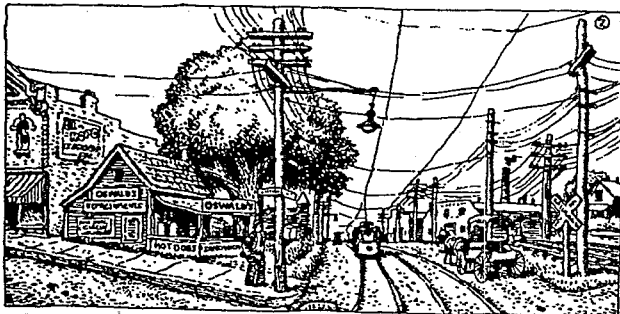
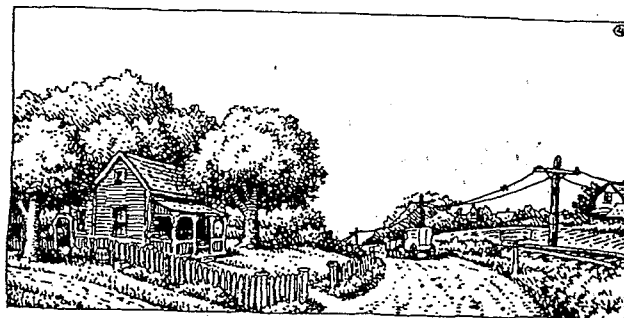
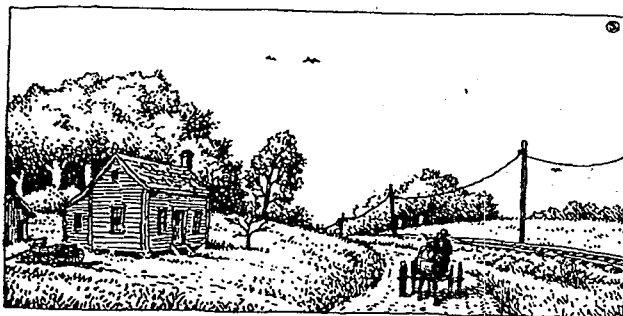
<sup>1</sup> Because of its general nature, the synoptic approach is not limited to legally defined (i.e., "jurisdictional") wetlands. We therefore define wetlands in the broadest sense, as those ecosystems that are characterized by: the presence of water; unique soils, compared to adjacent uplands; the presence of vegetation adapted to wet conditions; and an absence of flood-intolerant vegetation (Mitsch and Gosselink 1986).



**Figure 1.1.** "A Short History of America," by the cartoonist R. Crumb, graphically illustrates cumulative impacts over time. Although none of the individual impacts would have been expected to significantly damage the environment, the cumulative result is a major loss of environmental functions (from *CoEvolution Quarterly* No. 23, Fall 1979, © R. Crumb 1992).

the environment (Kahn 1966; Odum 1982). An analogy provided by Ehrlich and Ehrlich (1981) illustrates this concept. If a single rivet pops out of a jet's wing, no serious threat exists, because no one rivet contributes significantly to the plane's airworthiness. But if enough rivets are lost, the integrity of the plane's structure gradually weakens until a failure occurs. In this analogy, the cumulative effect of the individually minor impacts would be catastrophic. In the same manner, a conventional impact analysis might conclude that a single discharge into a wetland would not amount to significant impact and would therefore be acceptable. However, an assessment that ignores the combined effect of these cumulative impacts could seriously underestimate the extent of environmental damage (Figure 1.1), thereby frustrating policy and management goals (Irwin and Rodes 1992).

A major difference between traditional impact assessment and cumulative impact assessment is that the former is performed with respect to the proposed *disturbance*. Cumulative impact assessment is performed with respect to valued environmental *functions* (Beanlands and Duinker 1983; Preston and Bedford 1988). Cumulative impact assessment must therefore take a holistic view of the environment. An excellent overview of cumulative impacts and wetlands is given in a special volume edited by Bedford and Preston (1988a) that includes a review of regulatory issues and the status of scientific understanding of cumulative impacts with respect to hydrology, water quality, and wildlife. This volume is highly recommended for readers interested in a more in-depth treatment of the subject.



## Regulatory Mandate

Regulations prepared by the Council on Environmental Quality under the National Environmental Policy Act require environmental impact statements to "anticipate a cumulatively significant impact on the environment from Federal action"<sup>2</sup> (38 CFR Sect. 1500.6). A cumulative impact is defined as:

"...the impact on the environment which results from the incremental impact of the action when added to other past, present, and reasonably foreseeable future actions regardless of what agency (Federal or non-Federal) or person undertakes such other actions. Cumulative impacts can result from individually minor but collectively significant actions taking place over a period of time." (40 CFR Sect. 1508.7)

Under CWA Section 404, permits must be obtained to discharge dredged or fill material into waters of the United States, which include most wetlands. The CWA Section 404(b)(1) guidelines contain the criteria that are used in evaluating a permit for a proposed discharge. These regulations, promulgated by the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) in conjunction with the Army Corps of Engineers, call for consideration of cumulative impacts (40 CFR 230.11):

"[1] Cumulative impacts are the changes in an aquatic ecosystem that are attributable to the collective effect of a number of individual discharges of dredged or fill material. Although the impact of a particular discharge may constitute a minor change in itself, the

<sup>2</sup> "Federal action" has been interpreted to include any action regulated by the federal government.

cumulative effect of numerous such piecemeal changes can result in a major impairment of the water resources and interfere with the productivity and water quality of existing aquatic ecosystems.

[2] Cumulative effects attributable to the discharge of dredged or fill material in waters of the United States should be predicted to the extent reasonable and practical. The permitting authority shall collect information and solicit information from other sources about the cumulative impacts on the aquatic ecosystem. This information shall be documented and considered during the decision-making process concerning the evaluation of individual permit applications, the issuance of a General Permit, and monitoring and enforcement of existing permits."

## Regulatory Context

If a proposed discharge involves a major or controversial action, permit evaluation requires extensive information and may include collection of field data and even an Environmental Impact Statement (Hirsch 1988). However, most of the permit requests received each year are for minor, routine actions. Because of the large number of requests and the limited amount of time and staff, a simpler environmental assessment must be conducted, based upon existing information.

There are a number of methods for evaluating cumulative impacts (Appendix A); however, none of these are practical within the regulatory constraints of Section 404. Although the concept of cumulative impacts is intuitive enough to have influenced the guidelines for permit evaluation, the lack of an easily applied method makes it difficult to consider cumulative impacts as part of routine permit decisions (Preston and Bedford 1988). Therefore, regulators must often rely on best professional judgment in order to comply with the 404(b)(1) guidelines. A major goal of EPA's Wetlands Research Program has been to provide permit reviewers with an easily applied technical approach for assessing cumulative impacts.

Our current understanding of the environment and our lack of data make it impossible to provide a precise, quantitative evaluation of the effects that cumulative wetland losses will have in a specific region or to predict how additional wetland losses will add to those effects. However, our understanding of ecological processes in general, and wetlands in particular, should be sufficient for us to make qualitative comparisons of these effects between different areas. For example, we may not be able to say that the cumulative loss of 100 hectares of wetland within a particular area caused a

10% reduction in water quality; however, we should be able to say that a 100 hectare loss of wetland in area "A" will more likely cause a reduction in water quality than a similar loss in area "B". The synoptic approach is a response to Hirsch's (1988) call for "simple protocols, analytical procedures, or logic flows, and some *do's and don'ts* or rules of thumb" that can augment the site-specific permit review process and improve in best professional judgment (Figure 1.2). Managers can use this approach to evaluate cumulative impacts until more rigorous research provides better alternatives.

## The Synoptic Approach

The synoptic approach is an inexpensive, rapid assessment method that can assist managers and regulators in evaluating cumulative impacts within the regulatory constraints of tight schedules and budgets. Although research on the loss of wetland function is far from complete, the synoptic approach can support development of the best possible management strategies based on current knowledge.

Using the synoptic approach, wetland managers will be able to produce regional or statewide maps<sup>3</sup> that rank portions of the landscape according to synoptic indices. These maps and indices will enable permit reviewers to consider the landscape condition of the area in which a particular permit is proposed compared with other areas within their jurisdiction. By providing the environmental context in which wetlands occur, the maps also will allow wetland managers to examine wetland issues more comprehensively. Further, because the assessment is prepared at the same time for an entire state or region and not on a permit-by-permit basis, using this method will save time and money.

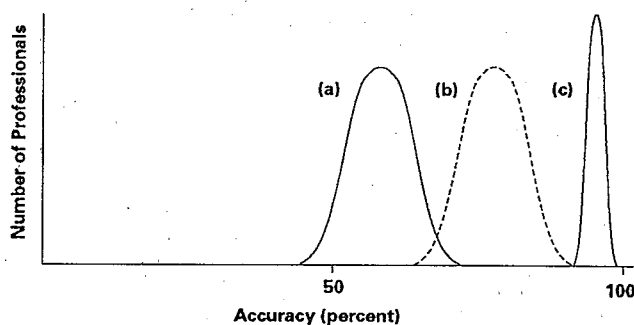
The synoptic approach consists of five steps (Table 1.1). Two major steps are definition of synoptic indices and selection of landscape indicators. The synoptic indices represent the actual functions and values within the particular environmental setting of interest. The landscape indicators are the actual data used to represent these indices. Choosing indicators often requires making simplifying assumptions because of limited information, time, and money. For example, agricultural area as measured from a land-use map could be a landscape indicator for agricultural nonpoint source nutrient loading, which would be the synoptic index for that particular management concern. The synoptic index and landscape indicator are defined separately to

<sup>3</sup> The end product of a synoptic assessment need not be a set of maps, but could consist solely of tabular data summaries. However, we believe that presentation as maps is more appropriate for the intended use, and gives a "big picture" overview that tables cannot provide.

keep them distinct, so we remember that agricultural area is not the management concern; it is only useful to the extent to which it represents nonpoint source nutrient loading.

The synoptic approach is flexible enough to cover a broad spectrum of management objectives and constraints. The specific synoptic indices and landscape indicators used in an application depend on the particular goals and constraints of the assessment. They also depend on the actual environmental setting. However, *this handbook does not provide a specific, detailed procedure for choosing the synoptic indices, nor does it supply a scientifically-tested list of landscape indicators having known confidence limits.* This is not possible, given our current state of knowledge and the strong dependency of the synoptic indices and landscape indicators on the particulars of the assessment. Instead, *the approach relies on the assessment team to make decisions, since they are best qualified to know their particular needs and constraints.* The synoptic approach provides the user with an ecologically-based framework in which local information and best professional judgment can be combined to address cumulative impacts and other landscape issues.

The synoptic approach is not a fixed procedure that always uses the same data sources and provides a standard end product. Rather, a synoptic assessment is a creative process that requires the manager to weigh the need for precision—as determined by management objectives—against the constraints: limited time, money, and information. An initial synoptic assessment could be conducted using the best available information and then updated as better data become available.



**Figure 1.2.** Improving best professional judgment (BPJ). "a" represents the hypothesized accuracy of BPJ under current conditions; most professionals probably give correct answers more than 50% of the time, and the most experienced professionals may be fairly accurate. However, the least experienced professionals may do worse than the flip of a coin, i.e., their answers may be wrong more often than right. A precise, quantitative assessment would greatly improve the accuracy of BPJ ("c") and reduce variability. However, such an assessment could be impractical within a regulatory context. The synoptic approach is a compromise that can be implemented within regulatory constraints and yet still improve the accuracy of BPJ ("b").

**Table 1.1.** Major steps in conducting a synoptic assessment.

Step 1.	Define Goals and Criteria
Step 2.	Define Synoptic Indices
Step 3.	Select Landscape Indicators
Step 4.	Conduct Assessment
Step 5.	Prepare Synoptic Reports

100

100

100

100

100

100

100

100

100

100

100

100

100

100

100

100

100

100

100

100

100

100

100

100

100

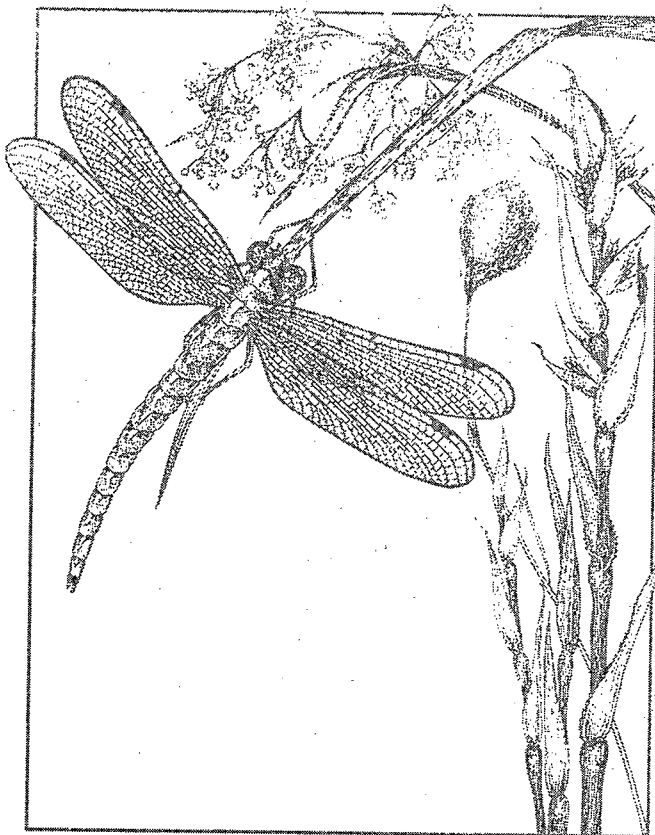
100

100

100

100

100



## Chapter 2 Ecological Basis for the Synoptic Indices

The synoptic approach provides a framework for making comparisons between landscape subunits<sup>1</sup> so cumulative impacts can be considered in management decisions. Comparisons are made by evaluating one or more landscape variables, or *synoptic indices*, for each subunit. Defining the proper synoptic indices for a particular assessment is a critical step and depends on the environmental setting and the specific goals of the assessment. In this chapter, we provide an overview and rationale for the synoptic indices, drawing on concepts from three disciplines: *systems ecology*, or the study of ecological systems (ecosystems), including their response to stress; *landscape ecology*, which examines the interactions between ecosystems; and *risk assessment*, which evaluates environmental risks associated with human actions.

### Rationale for a Landscape Approach

The purpose of a cumulative impact assessment is to evaluate the cumulative environmental response to various impacts. Because no standard usage exists for the term, we define *impact* as a human-generated action or activity that either by design or by oversight alters the characteristics of one or more ecosystems; *cumulative impacts* are the sum of all individual impacts occurring over time and space, including those of the foreseeable future. We define *effects* as the physical, chemical, and biological changes that result from an impact, including direct and indirect changes that can be removed in time and space. *Cumulative effects*, then, are the sum of all these changes resulting from cumulative impacts.

In conducting a cumulative impact assessment, we are particularly concerned with the loss of valued functions. These *ecological functions* are aggregate behaviors that arise from the many physical, chemical, and biological processes that take place in the environment. For example, whether a wetland reduces flood peaks depends on the processes that determine the wetland's hydrologic budget, e.g., precipitation, evapotranspiration, surface and groundwater inflows and outflows, and tidal input (Mitsch and Gosselink 1986).

Because an impact can affect more than one ecosystem and because an ecosystem can be affected by activities outside its boundaries, an assessment of cumulative impacts cannot be limited to a single ecosystem. Also, many ecological functions valued by society depend on interactions between ecosystems; they are more properly viewed as landscape functions, rather than ecosystem functions. For example, the water quality of a river is not determined by any one ecosystem but by

<sup>1</sup> Examples of possible subunits are counties, watersheds, and ecoregions; selection of subunits as part of a synoptic assessment is discussed in Chapter 3.

the aggregate effect and interaction of all ecosystems within its drainage area. The landscape is an appropriate unit for considering cumulative impacts, especially since landscape factors partially determine an ecosystem's response to cumulative impacts. For example, the survival of organisms following disturbance can depend on landscape characteristics such as corridor quality (Henein and Merriam 1990) and the degree of habitat fragmentation (Merriam and Wegner 1992; Stacey and Taper 1992).

Synoptic indices allow us to evaluate overall wetland condition for a particular landscape subunit through comparison with other subunits. Because the approach is not intended to provide a detailed landscape assessment, we must simplify and generalize our view of the landscape to ensure that relevant factors are included. The synoptic indices are therefore based on a simple model that describes ecosystem functions within the landscape and includes the effect of impacts on these functions. Because the focus of an assessment is *valued* ecological functions, concepts of risk assessment are also incorporated.

## Landscape Model of Ecosystem Function

Forman and Godron (1986) have defined a landscape as "a heterogeneous land area composed of a cluster of interacting ecosystems that is repeated in similar form throughout." Wetlands, forests, lakes, and streams are examples of such ecosystems. Interactions occur through transfers of energy and material—including nutrients, minerals, and organisms—between ecosystems. A landscape can be viewed as a portion of the environment composed of ecosystems within which materials and energy are transferred as a result of various ecological processes. To further simplify this view, we will consider these ecosystems only as they affect the transfer of materials within and through the landscape.

At any time, a landscape contains a pool of materials<sup>2</sup> and energy being transferred between component ecosystems (as opposed to being cycled or stored *within* individual ecosystems). This dynamic state can be described by the aggregate flow of these materials within and through the landscape; it also includes the processes that drive or are controlled by these flows. Landscape functions result from these interactions, as in the earlier discussion of the effect of drainage area on river water quality. Ecosystems contribute to landscape functions by affecting (1) the quantity of transferred material, i.e., either increasing or decreasing the active pool; (2) the quality of the material, i.e., transforming it into different forms; or (3) the timing of material transfers, e.g., introducing a temporal lag in transfers or altering transfer rates.

From the simplest perspective, each component ecosystem can be considered to function as either a source or a sink for a given material. An ecosystem is a *source* if it causes a net increase in the total amount of material being transferred within the landscape (i.e., exports from the ecosystem are greater than imports into it); it is considered a *sink* if it causes a net reduction in the material flux<sup>3</sup>. We define these terms in the broadest sense, without regard to the specific processes responsible for the functions. For example, an ecosystem could function as a sink through biochemical conversion, filtration (e.g., removal of suspended materials from water as it passes through clays), or trapping (e.g., settling out of particulates from water). In the case of biological materials, an ecosystem would be a sink if emigration were less than immigration, which could occur if the death rate exceeded the birth rate (MacArthur and Wilson 1967; Pulliam 1988).

Because our definition of a sink is independent of causative processes, an ecosystem that induces a net transfer of materials to on-site storage would also be considered a sink since this would lead to a net reduction in the pool of materials. Conversely, an ecosystem that removes material from storage and returns it to the pool acts as a source. For example, a riparian forest acts as a sink where stream velocities are low and sediment storage increases through deposition; however, it acts as a source if high current velocities cause bank erosion, thereby removing sediment from storage (Pinay et al. 1992).

A landscape model that describes an ecosystem as either a source or a sink can easily account for the effect ecosystems can have on the quantity of transferred materials. When the status of the ecosystem as source or sink is dynamic, the model can also account for qualitative and timing effects. For example, an ecosystem that converts nitrate to molecular nitrogen through denitrification (a qualitative effect) would be described as a sink for nitrate and a source for molecular nitrogen. An ecosystem that stores water below ground during spring runoff functions as a sink at that time of year, then as a source during summer and fall, when it slowly releases the water from storage.

The ability and degree to which an ecosystem functions as a source or a sink is controlled by on-site conditions, such as local hydrology and geomorphology, soil and vegetative characteristics, nutrient availability, and population densities. However, an ecosystem with the potential to reduce material flows could not function as a sink if the particular material was unavailable. In

<sup>2</sup> We define materials broadly to include biotic and abiotic materials.

<sup>3</sup> An ecosystem could be neither a source nor a sink if exports are equal to imports. Such an ecosystem would be neutral with respect to changes in the magnitude of landscape flows. However, such an ecosystem could still affect the distribution of materials; see Chapter 6.

other words, an ecosystem can reduce the pool of active landscape materials only if it is connected to at least one source. Thus the ability of an ecosystem to function as a sink depends on two factors: the *assimilative capacity*, which is the amount of material the ecosystem could remove, assuming it was available; and *landscape input*, which is the amount of material<sup>4</sup> imported into the ecosystem from source ecosystems<sup>4</sup>. While capacity is controlled by characteristics *within* the ecosystem, landscape input is determined by interactions *between* ecosystems and depends on (1) the magnitude of the various sources, (2) where these sources are located relative to the target ecosystem, (3) the transport mechanism of the particular material (e.g., passive diffusion, wind-borne dispersion, gravity flow, or migratory movement in animals), and (4) the occurrence of any sinks along the transfer pathway.

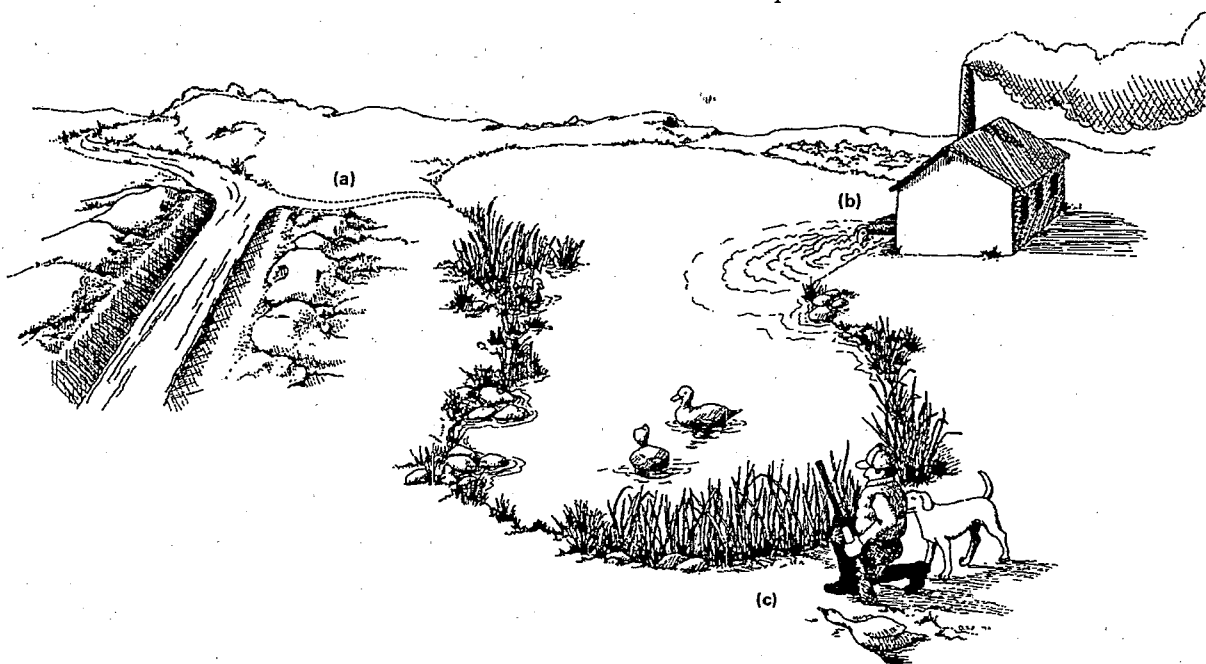
Phosphorus retention by a wetland is one example of how capacity and landscape input control sink functions. A wetland's capacity to retain phosphorus depends on factors such as plant uptake; the concentrations of minerals that precipitate phosphorus (e.g., ferric iron and aluminum); soil pH, which affects phosphorus solubility; and adsorption to soil constituents such as clays and organic matter (Mitsch and Gosselink 1986). The landscape input of phosphorus into the wetland depends on the types of neighboring ecosystems, land-use practices outside the wetland (e.g., fertilizer application rates), and landscape characteristics that control sedimentation rates into the wetland, such as slope.

According to the model we have been describing, the landscape is a collection of source and sink ecosystems embedded within a matrix of neutral ecosystems. Although this is somewhat simplistic and ignores actual processes, simplifying the overwhelming complexity of a real landscape is necessary if overall function is to become understandable. This model allows us to visualize the landscape as a dynamic network of interacting ecosystems, each of which can affect the quantity, quality, and timing of the materials transferred within the landscape. It also provides a framework that allows us to consider the effect of impacts on landscape function.

## Effect of Impacts on Landscape Function

It is important to differentiate between an activity (the impact) and the ecological response to it (the effect), because many environmental regulations target activities (e.g., discharge of dredge and fill materials under CWA Section 404). Numerous ecosystem characteristics could be altered by an impact. Lugo (1978) developed a generic model that described five ways in which an ecosystem could be stressed. We further aggregate these to define three general types of impact based on the type of characteristic being altered (Figure 2.1):

<sup>4</sup> As defined here, the capacity is the net amount of material that can be removed, after accounting for removal of on-site material. If gross capacity is preferred, landscape input would have to include on-site production.



**Figure 2.1** Generic model of ecosystem impacts. An impact can affect external driving factors (forcing functions) before they cross the ecosystem boundary, e.g., hydrologic diversion (a); an impact can affect ecosystem processes, e.g., discharge of industrial pollutants that alter productivity (b); and an impact can alter ecosystem structure, e.g., harvesting wildlife through hunting (c).

- **Changes in forcing functions** — Ecosystems are ultimately driven by material and energy flows that originate outside their boundaries. These driving factors are referred to as *forcing functions*. For example, sunlight is the ultimate forcing function for most ecosystems, and hydrologic input (in the form of surface water, groundwater, or tides) is an important driving factor for wetlands. Forcing functions can be diverted or reduced in magnitude, or the timing can be changed. New forcing functions to which the system is not adapted can be introduced, or the magnitude of an existing factor can be increased beyond its natural range.
- **Changes in ecosystem process** — Processes such as production or respiration can be stimulated or depressed, and material or energy distribution within the ecosystem can be altered.
- **Changes in structure** — *Structure*, built from energy and raw materials, is the collection of an ecosystem's physical, chemical, and biological characteristics. Biological examples of ecosystem structure include the various organisms, their complex behaviors, trophic relationships between organisms, seed banks that maintain biodiversity, and even dead matter. Physical structure includes concentrations of raw materials, such as lake water. Examples of structural impacts include harvesting of organisms by hunting or farming, introduction of domestic species not naturally present, reductions in water level through drainage, and destruction of soil structure by compaction.

In general, ecosystems affected by stress exhibit the following properties (Odum 1985): (1) internal material cycling is reduced, (2) the community reverts to earlier successional stages, (3) efficiency of resource use declines, and (4) parasitism increases. In stressed ecosystems, native species can be replaced by opportunistic species; this is especially significant in wetlands, where invasion by weedy species such as purple loosestrife can alter community structure (Wilcox 1989).

Not only does the environment respond to individual impacts, it also responds to them cumulatively. Examples of cumulative impacts and cumulative effects appear in Table 2.1. Bormann (1987) described seven stages of ecosystem stress, ranging from insignificant effects at low levels of pollution to complete ecosystem collapse under continued, severe pollution (Table 2.2). Although based on air pollution, these seven stages could represent a general model of ecosystem response to cumulative impacts. From a landscape perspective, the ultimate consequence of these changes is a loss of ecosystem function. This translates into a change in the ability of an ecosystem to act as a source or a sink either quantitatively (an increase or a decrease in the existing level of function) or qualitatively (e.g., a change from source to sink or vice versa).

The boundaries for cumulative impacts and cumulative effects need not coincide. Some cumulative effects could occur outside a cumulative impact boundary; conversely, cumulative effects within an area could partially result from impacts occurring outside the boundary. If the objective is to determine the cumulative effects within a specific area, a larger boundary must be defined that includes impacts to external forcing functions.

## Synoptic Indices

Based on these principles, we define four synoptic indices for assessing cumulative impacts and relative risk: function, value, functional loss, and replacement potential. These indices are landscape-level measures, so each is evaluated for an entire landscape subunit, rather than for an individual component ecosystem. Although the indices are generic and could be applied to any ecosystem type, we discuss each as it applies specifically to wetlands. The hierarchical evaluation of these indices as part of a risk assessment can be found in Leibowitz et al. (1992).

**Table 2.1. Typology of cumulative impacts and cumulative effects (after Beanlands et al. 1986).**

Cumulative Impact	Description
Time-crowded Perturbations	Disturbances that are so frequent in time that the ecosystem does not have the chance to recover between disturbances
Space-crowded Perturbations	Disturbances that are so close in space that their effects overlap
Cumulative Effect	Description
Synergisms	Interaction of different types of disturbance to produce a response that is qualitatively and quantitatively different than the separate effects combined
Indirect Effects	Effects that are produced through a complex pathway and that are removed in time and/or distance from the initial disturbance
Nibbling	Simple additive effects that result from cumulative impacts

**Table 2.2. Model of ecosystem response to increasing stress (adapted from Bormann 1987).**

Stress Level	Ecosystem Response
Insignificant	Insignificant
Low levels	Relatively unaffected; ecosystem may function as a sink
Levels inimical to some species	Changes in competitive ability of sensitive species; selection of resistant genotypes; little effect on biotic regulation
Increased stress	Resistant species substitute for sensitive ones; some niches opened for lack of substitutes; biotic regulation may be disrupted, but may return as system becomes wholly populated by resistant species
Severe levels	Large plants, trees, shrubs of all species die off; ecosystem converted to open-small shrubs, weedy herb system; biotic regulation severely diminished; increased runoff, erosion, nutrient loss
Continued severe stress	Ecosystem collapse; completely degraded ecosystem; ecosystem seeks lower level of stability with much less control over energy flow and little biotic regulation

### Function

Wetlands are capable of performing various functions as a result of physical, chemical, and biological processes. These functions can be divided into three general categories:

- Habitat functions—Providing support for wetland-dependent species, including food, shelter, and breeding sites;
- Water quality functions—Water quality improvement, nutrient cycling and supply; and
- Hydrologic functions—Flood attenuation and moderation of hydrologic flow.

The *function* index refers to the total amount of a particular function a wetland provides within a landscape subunit *without consideration of benefits*. The index is the rate at which material or energy is added to or removed from the active landscape pool. In the case of a sink function, the index is separated into two components<sup>5</sup>: *capacity*, which is the maximum net amount of material that could be removed by a subunit's wetlands if the supply of material were unlimited; and *landscape input*, or the total amount of the material imported into wetlands from contributing sources.

### Value

Environmental regulations such as the Clean Water Act consider both ecosystem functions and their impact on public welfare (Preston and Bedford 1988; Westman 1985); thus we identified *valued* ecological functions as the target of a cumulative impact assessment. Wetlands can be valued for the tangible benefits they provide, such as clean water or hunting, or for intangible benefits such as aesthetics. However, values are highly subjective, and a wetland characteristic valued by one individual could be perceived as a liability to another.

Even when the wetland provides a service that benefits the individual (such as improved water quality), the service could be undervalued because of poor information or conflicting goals.

Whether a particular ecological function is considered valuable is not a technical issue, but must be determined by the policy maker initiating the synoptic assessment. Such a decision might be based on law or on agency mandate. For example, by enacting the Endangered Species Act, Congress has determined that endangered species are valuable; similarly, an agency mandated with protection of drinking water would value functions that improve water quality. Policy makers could determine values through public input, interagency consensus or both. Gosselink and Lee discuss policy considerations and the importance of goal-setting as part of a cumulative impact assessment (Gosselink and Lee 1989; Lee and Gosselink 1988). A framework for including the effects of cumulative impacts on programmatic decisions is given in Irwin and Rodes (1992).

Once it is decided that a particular function is important, the *value* index can be used to determine the relative value of that function within each landscape subunit. This ranking depends on two factors. First, value is related to overall level of function, although this need not be a linear relationship (e.g., there could be diminishing returns at higher functional levels). Second, a function may be considered valuable not because of its inherent value, but because it acts upon something else valued by society. In such instances, the overall value also depends on the occurrence of this valued object. For example, flood reduction has no inherent value; it is

<sup>5</sup> These two sub-components are similar to the terms "effectiveness" and "opportunity" used in the Wetland Evaluation Technique (Adamus 1983). However, the synoptic terms and their meaning are derived from the previously described landscape model.

valued because it reduces property damage and human injuries and deaths. Dams are not necessarily built where the largest floods occur, but where floods threaten human populations, valuable property, or both. Valued objects can also include plants and animals; the value of wetlands for habitat could increase with the number of rare and endangered species supported by that habitat. This index can also include future values by considering the future benefits of these functions. Finally, we note that this index does not represent economic value, since it does not consider market factors, etc. Instead, it provides an estimate of the value provided by a function within a landscape subunit, relative to other subunits.

### **Functional Loss**

*Functional loss* represents the cumulative effects on a particular valued function that have occurred within a subunit. Functional loss caused by changes in forcing functions, processes, and structure should all be considered. The index should include complete loss of function from *conversion*, where the ecosystem is changed into a different ecosystem or land use (e.g., filling in a wetland to build a home), and partial loss through *degradation*, where the impact does not change the ecosystem type but alters function (e.g., reduced production through pesticide contamination). Future loss should also be considered as called for by Council on Environmental Quality regulations (40 CFR Sect. 1508.7).

Functional loss depends on the characteristics of the impact, including the type of impact, its magnitude, timing, and duration; and ecosystem *resistance*, or the relative sensitivity of the ecosystem to the impact, based on its robustness and overall health (see Chapter 6).

### **Replacement Potential**

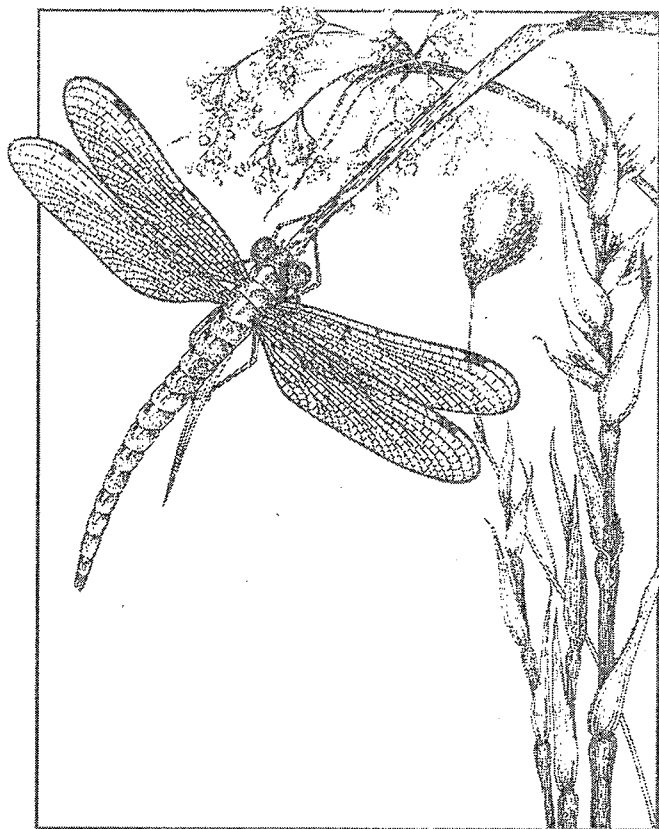
*Replacement potential* refers to the ability to replace a wetland and its valued functions. In this case, we are referring to functional replacement carried out by people; however, natural recovery could also be considered. Although not a component of a cumulative impact assessment *per se*, replacement potential is included as a synoptic index because it is a consideration within the 404 permit process and is also an important component of risk assessment (Leibowitz et al. 1992). The ability to offset the loss of valued functions and reduce ecological risk is greater if replacement potential is high; conversely, protection is more critical for risk reduction if replacement potential is low.

Replacement potential depends on many factors specific to the particular wetland, such as the type of wetland, the function to be restored, and, in the case of restoration, the kind of impact that altered the original wetland (Kentula et al. 1992; Kusler and Kentula 1990). In a synoptic assessment, however, we are more concerned with the landscape factors that contribute to replacement potential. Because it is more difficult to replace a wetland if critical driving factors have been disrupted, this index depends on the overall environmental condition of the subunit. For example, it would be difficult to restore a swamp within a historical flood plain if a levee had been constructed on the river. If restoration did take place, the wetland probably would not be sustainable because natural overbank flooding, which was a driving factor for the original swamp, would be disrupted.

### **Synoptic Index Evaluation**

In conducting a synoptic assessment, it is necessary to refine the general synoptic indices into a specific set of indices that are most relevant to management concerns within a particular landscape setting. For example, in an application concerned with nonpoint source nitrogen pollution within an agricultural region, the specific indices for capacity and landscape input might be the maximum denitrification rate and the nitrate loading rate, respectively. However, quantifying the specific indices accurately for large landscape subunits would be difficult if not impossible. In order to evaluate the indices, the synoptic approach uses landscape *indicators* of actual functions, values, and effects. The indicators are first-order approximations that represent some particular index, given certain assumptions (see discussion in Chapter 3, Step 3.5). For example, data on agricultural nonpoint source nitrate loadings might not be available, in which case agricultural area could be used as a first-order landscape indicator.

In addition, we often take a risk-based approach to estimate specific indices. For example, we may not be able to quantify the actual loss of hydrologic function due to cumulative impacts, but we could assume that the risk of actual loss is greater in areas with high function and high cumulative impacts, compared with areas having low function and low impacts. Such an approach will undoubtedly make errors in assigning a relative ranking to each landscape subunit. However, a synoptic assessment need not provide a perfect evaluation of cumulative effects. The goal is to provide information that will improve permit evaluation and management decisions overall.



## Chapter 3 Conducting a Synoptic Assessment

The process of producing a synoptic assessment involves five steps (Table 3.1). Although presented and discussed sequentially, it might be necessary in an actual application to follow these steps iteratively. We suggest that information resulting from this process not be viewed as the ultimate end product, but that synoptic assessments be updated periodically to reflect changing objectives and environmental conditions or to incorporate better data. Further, it may not be possible to achieve the desired management objectives in a one- or two-year period. By producing an initial assessment and improving it over time, an agency can obtain the desired results over the long run while gaining useful short-run results. A synoptic assessment should be an iterative process.

Preparation of a synoptic assessment requires the efforts of a team of individuals having different backgrounds and responsibilities (in an actual assessment, these roles need not literally be performed separately by three individuals):

- The manager, who is in charge of the resource management program and who makes the decision to conduct a synoptic assessment, is the individual with primary responsibility for defining the overall goals of the assessment.
- The resource specialist, who is the ultimate user of the final maps (e.g., a permit reviewer) and who is familiar with the area's wetland resources and their ecological functions, has the primary responsibility for defining the ecological relationships relevant to the particular management objectives.
- The technical analyst, who assembles the data, makes measurements, calculates the index values, and then maps them, should be familiar with database management and geographic information systems (GIS) or computerized mapping.

### Step 1: Define Goals and Criteria

The purpose of this step is to identify explicitly the assessment objectives, intended use, required accuracy level, and the constraints within which the assessment will be conducted. Often the objectives call for more accuracy and detail than constraints allow. This step may require repetition until an acceptable combination of objectives, accuracy, and resource allocation is agreed upon.

#### Step 1.1 – Define Assessment Objectives

The general objectives of the assessment depend on the overall mission and goals of the particular agency or organization conducting it. If the manager works within a Department of Environmental Quality, the focus could be wetland water quality functions. A manager

**Table 3.1. Steps in conducting a synoptic assessment.**

Steps	Procedures
1. Define Goals and Criteria	1.1 Define Assessment Objectives 1.2 Define Intended Use 1.3 Assess Accuracy Needs 1.4 Identify Assessment Constraints
2. Define Synoptic Indices	2.1 Identify Wetland Types 2.2 Describe Natural Setting 2.3 Define Landscape Boundary 2.4 Define Wetland Functions 2.5 Define Wetland Values 2.6 Identify Significant Impacts 2.7 Select Landscape Subunits 2.8 Define Combination Rules
3. Select Landscape Indicators	3.1 Survey Data and Existing Methods 3.2 Assess Data Adequacy 3.3 Evaluate Costs of Better Data 3.4 Compare and Select Indicators 3.5 Describe Indicator Assumptions 3.6 Finalize Subunit Selection 3.7 Conduct Pre-Analysis Review
4. Conduct Assessment	4.1 Plan Quality Assurance/Quality Control 4.2 Perform Map Measurements 4.3 Analyze Data 4.4 Produce Maps 4.5 Assess Accuracy 4.6 Conduct Post-Analysis Review
5. Prepare Synoptic Reports	5.1 Prepare User's Guide 5.2 Prepare Assessment Documentation

for the Fish and Game Division might be particularly interested in wetland habitat functions. A manager of a wetland protection program, however, might be interested in not just one particular function but in several functions or in wetland restoration. The management objectives could be very specific, e.g., determination of wetland degradation caused by superfund sites, protection of wetland habitat for sport fish, protection of floodplain wetlands, etc.

During this step, the boundary for the study unit needs to be defined explicitly. This would typically be either a political boundary, based on the agency's jurisdiction (a state or multi-county region) or a natural boundary, e.g., a natural watershed or geomorphological province. The study area could be of special interest to management (one for which a special area management

plan is being developed). It may be necessary to get input from other agencies or interested parties before finalizing the boundary.

### ***Step 1.2 – Define Intended Use***

The manager should define how assessment results will be applied. The assessment could be used to support very specific decisions, e.g., to support cumulative impact assessment as part of Section 404 permit review, or it could be used for general planning, e.g., to help identify areas sensitive to future impacts as part of a State Wetland Conservation Plan. The particular use affects the level of accuracy required and the degree of review the final products must undergo. In addition, an assessment used as part of a regulatory program might need to meet specific legal tests or require public

comment or interagency consensus. The manager should also determine whether the assessment is to be purely technical or whether political considerations need to be included.

### **Step 1.3 – Assess Accuracy Needs**

The overall management objectives and intended use of the information determine the level of uncertainty the manager is willing to accept in decisions that make use of a synoptic assessment. EPA guidelines on data quality assurance refer to the process of selecting the level of accuracy needed as defining the data quality objectives. This process includes five steps (EPA 1989):

- Define the decision;
- Describe the information needed for the decision;
- Define the use of environmental data;
- Define the consequences of an incorrect decision attributable to inadequate environmental data; and
- Estimate available resources.

The previous sections covered the first three steps of this process. Since any analysis has a level of uncertainty, and thus the chance of erroneous conclusions, the manager must consider the repercussions of incorrect decisions based on the level of uncertainty. If it could lead to litigation, for example, an assessment developed for regulatory applications might require a high confidence level. If the assessment is being conducted for broad-scale planning using best professional judgment, results might be sufficient as long as they are "more right than wrong." In other words, results need not be completely accurate; rather, the data must be adequate for the stated purposes of the assessment. The manager, in consultation with other team members, must define the level of accuracy needed for an assessment so the benefits outweigh the liabilities. Estimating available resources is discussed in the following section.

### **Step 1.4 – Identify Assessment Constraints**

The manager must estimate the amount of time, money, and personnel hours that can be committed to the project. Regardless of the objectives and needs for accuracy, the effort will be limited by available resources.

As an example of possible assessment costs, the Louisiana and Washington pilot projects that are discussed in Chapter 4 each took a year and a half for completion and required a half-time senior scientist and both a full-time and half-time technical analyst (i.e., two full-time equivalents per year for each project). Much of the technical analysts' time was spent collecting data from various

agencies, conducting quality control checks, performing map calculations, digitizing, and creating various databases. Other costs included approximately \$20,000 for supplies and materials (excluding data, which mostly were obtained from cooperating agencies), plus access to a GIS. Although the purpose of the pilots was methods and development, and not an actual application, costs for a similar statewide analysis should be comparable. At the opposite extreme, an application requiring high precision and field verification could easily require several years of effort and cost hundreds of thousands of dollars for data collection, analysis, and labor. Project costs depend on study area extent and whether adequate data already exist (Steps 3.1-3.3).

The team should also consider other constraints that influence the outcome of an assessment, such as legal requirements, agency mandates, institutional constraints, and the need for public comment or interagency coordination.

If the resources available for an assessment are much less than what is deemed necessary based on best professional judgment (Steps 1.1-1.3), then management can change the objectives (e.g., assess a smaller area or accept less accurate results), relax the constraints (find a source of extra funding), or conclude that the assessment is not feasible at that time.

## **Step 2: Define Synoptic Indices**

Once the objectives have been determined, the resource specialist must define a specific set of synoptic indices that will meet the objectives and intended use of the assessment. This involves replacing the four generic indices (function, value, functional loss, and replacement potential) with a set of indices specific to the objectives.

Defining the specific indices and the factors they include requires an understanding of the interactions between wetlands and regional landscapes. To summarize this understanding, the resource specialist can provide a landscape description that includes wetland types, functions and related societal values, natural factors sustaining the wetlands and major impacts (Table 3.2).

The resource specialist can consult with regional experts for assistance in determining these interactions, for example:

- University or state Soil Conservation Service (SCS) soil scientists are familiar with regional factors affecting denitrification capacity and adsorption potential (e.g., percent of organic matter);

**Table 3.2. Examples of landscape descriptions that can be used in selecting indices.**

Category	Example 1
Management Objective	Develop risk assessment guidance for county planners to protect sparse wetland populations of central Washington for waterfowl and other wildlife habitat.
Wetland Type	Palustrine (emergent, scrub-scrub and forested) on floodplains; saline (scrub-scrub) in playas and wind created depressions (Canning and Stevens 1989).
Natural Setting	Basin, characterized by loess deposits and deep dry channels cut into basalt, surrounded by mountain ranges which provide hydrologic inputs; arid climate (23-64 cm average annual precipitation); streams predominantly influent, many go dry in dry years (Omernik and Gallant 1988).
Landscape Boundary	Columbia Basin in Central Washington.
Significant Impacts	Water withdrawal for irrigation; altered water quality and stream morphology from grazing; high nutrient and suspended sediments from agriculture and mining.
Specific Indices	Habitat support, low stream flow and hydrologic modification (water withdrawal); non-point source pollution.
Landscape Subunits	Subwatersheds and county boundaries.
Category	Example 2
Management Objective	Include cumulative impacts as part of 404 permit review in Southern California.
Wetland Type	Intertidal salt marshes.
Natural Setting	Mediterranean climate, accretion and erosion of sediments, warm ocean current from Mexico, tidal flushing. Natural perturbations include storm events and catastrophic sedimentation; drought; lagoon closure (Zedler 1982).
Landscape Boundary	Southern California coast including intertidal slopes in river valleys, from Point Conception to the international border with Mexico.
Significant Impacts	Urban development (dredge and fill disposal); reduced circulation from anthropogenic sedimentation; altered watershed hydrology (Zedler 1982).
Specific Indices	Cumulative wetland loss, suspended sediment loading, peak discharge, hydrologic modification.
Landscape Subunits	Coastal watersheds.

- Hydrologists with universities or the state office of the U.S. Geological Survey (USGS) can provide insight into the hydrologic factors that form wetlands, and can also provide information on hydrologic modifications that may affect wetland functions;
- Biologists with the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service (USFWS), state agencies, or the Nature Conservancy/Natural Heritage Program can provide expertise on wetland habitat and wetland-dependent species; and
- Biologists with the SCS and other agencies will be familiar with wetlands in agricultural settings, as well as with opportunities for restoration.

Other valuable resources are USFWS "Community Profile" reports. Each of these reports provides a wealth of information on a regional wetland type and often includes discussions of geological/climatic setting, natural forcing functions, ecological functions, ecosystem structure, and degradation by human impacts.

### **Step 2.1 – Identify Wetland Types**

The first step in developing synoptic indices is to compile a list of the major wetland types found in the assessment area, e.g., specific wetland communities. This list can be limited to a particular type of wetland if management objectives are narrow, or it can include all of the area's wetlands if objectives are broad. The identification of these wetland types can be based on popular classifications (e.g., marsh, bog, or pothole), a functional classification (e.g., Novitzki 1979; O'Brien and Motts 1980), or the more detailed system developed by USFWS (Cowardin et al. 1979). The choice of classification should match the assessment objectives and constraints. For example, if protection of wetlands for flood control is the primary objective, the analyst could focus on palustrine or floodplain wetlands as defined by the Cowardin system or floodplain/river lower perennial wetlands as defined by a hydrogeomorphic classification (personal communication, M. Brinson, East Carolina University, Greenville, North Carolina). If,

however, the objective is protection of wetlands for environmental education, then unique or rare wetlands near urban areas could be classified using a popular system or one defined by the State Heritage Program. Where the objective is to assess cumulative impacts, it will be important to select a classification that is broad and synthetic.

Selection of a particular wetland classification scheme also depends upon the availability of information. For example, if National Wetland Inventory (NWI) maps are available for the region, the Cowardin classification is a logical choice. At the minimum, the classification should include or be cross-referenced with information on geomorphic setting and source of water because both are important components of the natural setting (Step 2.2) and are useful for identifying significant impacts (Step 2.6).

### **Step 2.2 – Describe Natural Setting**

The analyst should understand the landscape driving factors or forcing functions responsible for the formation and maintenance of wetlands because this information is important for defining landscape boundaries (Step 2.3) and for evaluating the significance of impacts (Step 2.6). The natural factors include natural stresses, such as drought, and structural components, such as soil and seed banks (see Chapter 6). The classification used to identify wetland types (Step 2.1) should provide relevant information. A broad-scale or detailed description of natural factors can be developed around a series of questions such as those listed in Table 3.3.

### **Step 2.3 – Define Landscape Boundary**

In Chapter 2 we noted that the boundaries for cumulative impacts and cumulative effects need not be the same; the cumulative effects occurring within a given

area could result partially from impacts that take place outside the boundary. The resource specialist must define the landscape boundary to include the appropriate natural setting (Step 2.2) and impacts (Step 2.6) that could be operating outside the study area. Even if the actual analysis ignores this larger boundary, the boundary must be defined so the resource specialist can determine the degree to which the assessment might be ignoring important factors.

Because hydrology is the single most important determinant of wetland type and function, the landscape boundary should include at least the entire drainage area in which the study is located. For example, an assessment of the state of Louisiana cannot stop at the state boundary but must consider hydrologic input from upstream segments of the Mississippi, Red, Sabine, Ouachita, and Pearl rivers. The landscape boundary for groundwater discharge wetlands might include recharge areas hundreds of miles outside the study area; likewise, the boundary for coastal wetlands will probably include estuarine, nearshore, and even off-shore waters. These hydrologic boundaries also delimit many water quality processes, such as transport of nutrients, sediments, and pollutants.

Defining the boundary for habitat processes is more problematic than for the other functions. Biotic factors operate on scales defined by the ranges of wetland-dependent species. Given the diversity of species, no single spatial unit can encompass all species' ranges for a particular study area. Many times, ecoregions provide useful landscape units for habitat support (Omernik 1987); research by Inkley and Anderson (1982) and Larsen et al. (1986) demonstrates a correspondence between ecoregions and wildlife and fish communities, respectively. If habitat of wide-ranging migratory species is an important element of the assessment, a broader landscape boundary must be defined.

**Table 3.3. Examples of technical questions that could be used to describe the natural factors determining wetland function.**

	Technical Questions
Describing natural wetland setting related to forcing functions, ecosystem processes, and structure:	What are the geological processes responsible for the wetlands' formation, e.g., deposition of marine or riverine sediments, glaciation?
	What are the physiographic characteristics associated with the wetlands, e.g., large depressions, river valleys, karst topography?
	What are the hydrologic influences, e.g., tidal, riverine or lacustrine energy, or groundwater influence?
	What are the climatic influences, e.g., timing, type and amount of precipitation, length of growing season?
	What are the chemical characteristics and fluxes of the wetlands, e.g., salinity, organic content, nutrient and mineral availability?
	What are the natural perturbations that wetlands are either adapted to or dependent on, e.g., fire dependent species, periodic inundation, seasonal drought?

### **Step 2.4 – Define Wetland Functions**

The resource specialist next defines the particular wetland functions to be addressed. Depending on management objectives, the functions of interest could be either specific or broad. Because it is impossible to assess all functions, even when the objectives are general, the specialist must determine a subset of functions that best represents the broader class. For example, consideration of hydrologic function in regions where small, non-tidal wetlands prevail might include wetland influence on peak flow but not on storm surges, which occur mainly in larger, tidal wetlands.

Habitat functions can be defined by determining the various species (including birds, fish, and mammals) that are dependent on or utilize the wetland communities identified in Step 2.1. For hydrologic and water quality functions, wetlands often function as sinks. Therefore it is useful to consider the hydrologic and water quality sources that are found within the particular landscape setting, since the source is a component of sink functions (Chapter 2). Natural and anthropogenic sources should both be included. Chapter 7 provides a detailed discussion of wetland functions that have been reported in the literature and can serve as a source of candidate functions that should be considered during this step.

### **Step 2.5 – Define Wetland Values**

As discussed in Chapter 2, whether a function is valued is a policy decision rather than a technical consideration. These valued functions could be a given, based on the objectives. However, the manager might choose to map the relative magnitude of many functions first, then use this information to determine which wetland functions are most valuable. If so, the manager has deferred the valuation until after analysis. In either instance, the value may also depend on the co-occurrence of the function and "valued objects" such as property.

To define a synoptic index for value, the team must determine who ultimately benefits from the various wetland functions and whether other valued objects are involved (see discussion on value, Chapter 2). For example, they might decide that the value of flood protection is low if it occurs mostly in uninhabited regions or that the value of water quality improvement is very high if it occurs in areas that supply drinking water to large urban centers.

Functions and values are kept distinct by defining them in separate steps. This allows the team to consider whether important ecological functions, based on technical information, are being undervalued in terms of social perceptions.

### **Step 2.6 – Identify Significant Impacts**

In this step, the resource specialist determines the most significant impacts on the functions of interest. If the proportion of recent wetland conversion within a particular region is high, it may be the dominant cause of functional loss, in which case other factors may be assigned lower priority. In this case, the index for functional loss would be loss of wetland area.

If conversion in the region is insignificant or if the specialist thinks conversion is not the dominant cause of functional loss, then the impacts most likely to cause wetland degradation must be identified. Tables 3.4 and 3.5 are examples of how best professional judgment could be organized to guide this process. Table 3.4 contains a list of impacts associated with agriculture along with the type of degradation each is expected to produce. Similar tables for other major classes of wetland impacts (resource extraction, urbanization, and water management) appear in Appendix B. Using Table 3.4 or a modification, the specialist can identify significant types of degradation that would result from commonly occurring impacts. Then the specialist could use Table 3.5 to determine which hydrologic functions would most likely be affected by these impacts (similar tables for water quality and habitat functions appear in Appendix C). The tables can be used in reverse order to determine which impacts would most likely degrade a given function.

As an example, in a state where livestock ranching is a major agricultural activity, possible impacts include fertilizers, harvesting, pesticides, species introduction, trampling, and water consumption (Table 3.4). Based on familiarity with the region, the specialist might decide that harvesting and trampling are the two most common impacts. Both have a high likelihood of causing degradation through changes in behavior or habits of wetland animals resulting from habitat alteration, and both have a medium likelihood of causing denudation (Table 3.4). If the overall function of interest is hydrology, Table 3.5 indicates that functional loss from changes in animal behavior is not likely.

These tables represent hypotheses about the mechanistic linkages between impacts, degradation, and functions; they are an example of how best professional judgment could be used to guide the selection process. The resource specialist should consult regional experts to ascertain whether these relationships hold true in the specific study area.

### **Step 2.7 – Select Landscape Subunits**

At this time the resource specialist defines the landscape subunits that will be the basis for making relative comparisons and reporting results. For now, the decision

**Table 3.4. Typical relationships expected between agricultural impacts and wetland degradation based on best professional judgment. Letter indicates degree of expected association and not the intensity or duration of impact (H = high, M = medium, L = low).**

Impact	Acidification	Altered Animal Behavior	Compaction	Contamination/Toxicity	Denudation
Channelization <sup>3</sup>					H
Drainage <sup>3,4</sup>	L	H	L	M	
Fertilizers <sup>1-5</sup>	L			M	M
Fill <sup>2,3</sup>	L	H	H	L	H
Harvesting or Burning <sup>1-5</sup>	M	H <sup>1-3</sup>			M <sup>2</sup>
Impoundment <sup>1</sup>		H		M	
Irrigation/Flooding <sup>3</sup>	L	M		M	
Pesticides <sup>1-5</sup>				H	M
Species Introduction <sup>1-5</sup>		H			
Tillage <sup>3</sup>	L	L			H
Trampling <sup>1-5</sup>		H	L		M
Vehicles/Boats/Planes <sup>1-4</sup>		M	M	L	L
Water Consumption <sup>1-5</sup>				M	
Impact	Dehydration	Eutrophication/Enrichment	Erosion	Inundation	Light Reduction
Channelization <sup>3</sup>	M	M	M		L
Drainage <sup>3,4</sup>	H	M	M		M
Fertilizers <sup>1-5</sup>		H			L
Fill <sup>2,3</sup>	H	M	L		H
Harvesting and Burning <sup>1-5</sup>				M <sup>2</sup>	
Impoundment <sup>1</sup>		M	L	H	M
Irrigation/Flooding <sup>3</sup>		M	M	H	M
Pesticides <sup>1-5</sup>					
Species Introduction <sup>1-5</sup>	L				L
Tillage <sup>3</sup>		M	H		
Trampling <sup>1-5</sup>			L		L
Vehicles/Boats/Planes <sup>1-4</sup>			M		L
Water Consumption <sup>1-5</sup>	H	M			
Impact	Salinization	Sedimentation	Surface Runoff Timing	Thermal Warming	
Channelization <sup>3</sup>	L	L	H	M	
Drainage <sup>3,4</sup>	L	M	H		
Fertilizers <sup>1-5</sup>	M				
Fill <sup>2,3</sup>	L	H	M		
Harvesting and Burning <sup>1-5</sup>		M <sup>2</sup>	M <sup>2</sup>	H <sup>2</sup>	
Impoundment <sup>1</sup>	M	M	H		
Irrigation/Flooding <sup>3</sup>	H	M	M	L	
Pesticides <sup>1-5</sup>					
Species Introduction <sup>1-5</sup>					
Tillage <sup>3</sup>	L	H	M		
Trampling <sup>1-5</sup>					
Vehicles/Boats/Planes <sup>1-4</sup>					
Water Consumption <sup>1-5</sup>	M		H	L	

<sup>1</sup> Aquaculture (e.g., cranberries, rice, crayfish)  
<sup>2</sup> Crops - No Till  
<sup>3</sup> Crops - Till  
<sup>4</sup> Forestry  
<sup>5</sup> Livestock

**Table 3.5. Effect of wetland degradation on hydrologic functions and degree of expected association based on best professional judgment (H = high, M = medium, L = low).**

Type of Degradation	Peak Flow Reduction	Storm Surge Reduction	Water Conservation	Groundwater Exchange	Hydrologic Input
Acidification					
Animal Behavior					
Compaction	L	L		M	M
Contamination/Toxicity					
Denudation	M	M	M	H	M
Dehydration	H	H	H	H	H
Eutrophication/Enrichment			L	L	
Erosion		M			
Habitat Fragmentation				M	
Inundation	H	H	H	H	H
Light Reduction			L	L	
Salinization					
Sedimentation	M	L	M	M	
Surface Runoff	H	H	H	H	H
Thermal Warming			L	L	

should be based on management objectives and ecological considerations; data availability will be considered in Step 3. For assessments at the state or regional level, the USGS cataloging unit or a similar state unit might be most appropriate because it functions as a natural drainage area. Ecoregion subunits (see the previous section) or finer-resolution subunits, e.g., soil-vegetation associations, may also be useful. Selection of landscape subunits might also be based on political criteria, e.g., county boundaries.

### Step 2.8 – Define Combination Rules

A specific synoptic index is typically a mathematical expression that includes several factors. Factors that may be combined in an index include components of an index (for example, capacity and landscape input could be components of function, and degradation and conversion could be components of functional loss) or other indices (e.g., an index of value would include function). Although a separate index could be defined for each of these factors (e.g., separate indices of functional loss through stormwater runoff and agricultural conversion), it is often desirable to mathematically combine them into a single index, in which case a set of combination rules needs to be defined. These combination rules must address the following questions:

- Will the factors be combined by addition, multiplication, or some other operation?
- Will the data be normalized, that is, adjusted to a common ordinal scale, prior to combination? If so, by what procedure?
- Will all factors be considered to contribute equally, or should weighting factors be applied to some?

- Will the same combination rules apply to all wetland types and across the entire range of conditions within the study area?

Decisions concerning combination rules are difficult and often subjective, but deserve careful attention to reduce error. Mathematical relationships between factors may be available from the literature or regional models. It is often necessary, however, to assume that factors have equal weight (i.e., are added without weighting factors) or that there is a first-order proportionality between factors, i.e., that the factors are multiplicatively combined. At the minimum, the resource specialist should explicitly describe the combination rules and any assumptions as part of the review (Step 3.7) and documentation (Step 5.2). Combination rules are further discussed in Hopkins (1977), O'Banion (1980), Skutch and Flowerdew (1976), Smith and Theberge (1987), and USFWS (1981).

### Step 3: Select Landscape Indicators

Landscape indicators are the actual measures used to estimate the synoptic indices; either a single indicator or combination of indicators can be used. Selecting indicators requires balance between accuracy and cost. Major considerations are discussed below.

Selection of landscape indicators, which depends on data availability, should not begin until goals are defined (Step 1) and the relevant environmental variables are identified (Step 2). In order to evaluate the adequacy of an assessment (Step 4.5), it is important to keep the goals and environmental variables distinct from the trade-offs that occur because of data limitations. If data availability is considered too early on, real-world limitations begin to dominate the process before the goals and

environmental variables are articulated. Goal setting, defining synoptic indices, and selecting landscape indicators should occur iteratively and not simultaneously.

### **Step 3.1 – Survey Data and Existing Methods**

Contact various federal and state agencies having jurisdiction over the study area to determine what kind of environmental data are available; for smaller study areas, include county agencies. Other sources could be university experts and state and university libraries. The survey should include both mapped and tabular information available for the entire assessment area. (Examples of data that can be used for the various synoptic indices appear in Appendix D; sources for the data appear in Appendix E). As part of the survey, the technical analyst should also note the following types of information, which will be necessary for assessing data adequacy (Step 3.2):

- The purpose of the database and the type of information it contains;
- The methods used in collecting, measuring, and analyzing the data;
- Examples of how the data have been used, especially if reported as case studies;
- Known problems or limitations;
- Data format, e.g., hard copy or computer compatible;
- Availability of documentation, both for data collection and quality assurance procedures and, if appropriate, file formats for computerized databases;
- Procedure needed to acquire data, including cost.

The survey need not be limited to databases. Various existing methods and techniques can also be used to estimate indices. For example, the USGS collects discharge data at various sampling locations on many streams and rivers. Annual water resources data reports for each state provide summaries of these data; they are also entered into the WATSTORE database (see Appendix E). Unfortunately, monitoring stations are not typically at the locations needed for the synoptic assessment, e.g., at the lowest downstream point of the subunit. The technical analyst would have to select an indicator appropriate for estimating discharge at that location.

One possibility is to use regression equations published by most state USGS offices for estimating discharge using watershed characteristics. For example, variables for regression equations developed for eastern Mississippi include watershed area, channel slope, and mainstem channel length (Landers and Wilson 1991). Alternatively, mathematical models can estimate many variables; e.g., SCS's TR-55 (SCS 1986) and the USDA Agricultural Research Service's AGNPS model (Young et al. 1987) estimate peak discharge and agricultural nonpoint source pollution, respectively, from factors

such as topography, precipitation, land use, and soils. The technical analyst can determine whether appropriate methods are available through a literature review, by conferring with regional experts, or both.

### **Step 3.2 – Assess Data Adequacy**

Adequacy of existing data depends on several factors, including the degree to which an indicator based on the data represents the index and the quality of the data relative to the management objectives (Table 3.6). The following example illustrates the difference between these factors: For a synoptic index of peak discharge, two possible indicators are runoff volume as calculated by the "curve number" technique (SCS 1986) and discharge estimates produced by the USGS regression methods, discussed above. For the former, the physical quantity being estimated (volume) is different from the variable of interest (peak rate of discharge or volume/time). There is a relationship between runoff and peak discharge, but the two variables are not identical. However, the estimate of runoff could be accurate if based on high quality data. Conversely, an indicator based on the USGS regression represents the same physical quantity defined by the index, yet it could be unacceptable if calculated using poor quality data. Both of these issues must be taken into account. If an indicator that is physically different from the index is being considered, the resource specialist or technical analyst must determine whether the indicator represents a reasonable first-order approximation to the actual index and whether the use of that indicator is contingent upon any unreasonable assumptions (Step 3.5).

Potential indicator data should be evaluated according to a set of criteria (e.g., Table 3.6). The technical analyst must also consider extra effort required to translate the data into the format needed for the assessment. For example, data found in reports might require entry into a database. It is especially important to consider the extra effort required for processing mapped data. Do not assume that more detail is better until you consider the additional cost. For example, the use of 1:250,000 scale STATSGO soil maps, if available, may be much more appropriate for statewide synoptic assessments than 1:20,000 scale county soil survey maps because greater effort would be required to analyze the more detailed maps.

### **Step 3.3 – Evaluate Costs of Better Data**

The technical analyst should assess the time and cost of obtaining better data. Identifying the types of data needed and the associated costs for producing results of various confidence levels is useful. For example, how much would the highest quality, most up-to-date information cost? What would be the gain in accuracy if the budget were increased by \$10,000 or if two extra months were available for the assessment? These considerations would allow existing information to be compared.

**Table 3.6. Example of objectives and related questions for defining landscape indicators for synoptic indices.**

Objectives	Technical Questions
Determine how well the indicator represents the index:	<p>Do comparable data exist for the entire study area or are there gaps that would limit intraregional comparison?</p> <p>Do standardized data exist for the appropriate time period, e.g., the past ten years, the entire year, or by season?</p> <p>Are data at the appropriate spatial scale or are there major scale differences between data sources?</p> <p>Are the classification systems used for wetlands and other landscape variables compatible? For example, the USFWS National Wetland Inventory maps, SCS soils maps and USGS Land Use/Land Cover maps classify wetlands according to different criteria.</p>
Assess the quality of existing data:	<p>What is the source of the data, e.g., agency or university?</p> <p>Can the originator (person or agency responsible for data collection) be contacted?</p> <p>When, where and how often were the data collected?</p> <p>What methods were used for the data collection?</p> <p>Was the data collection associated with a Quality Assurance program? If so, what information is available on the precision, accuracy, representativeness, comparability and completeness of the data?</p> <p>Are there assumptions, limitations or caveats to consider in using the database?</p> <p>What are the time, personnel and cost constraints of obtaining better data?</p>
Determine level of confidence in the data:	<p>What are the common assumptions between indicators and indices?</p> <p>What evidence would violate these assumptions?</p> <p>How should the weighing of variables be adjusted to compensate?</p>

### **Step 3.4 – Compare and Select Indicators**

Given the adequacy of available data (Step 3.2) and the cost of obtaining better information (Step 3.3), the resource specialist and technical analyst can select a suite of indicators that best balances the level of accuracy needed to satisfy management objectives (Step 1.3) within existing constraints (Step 1.4). These choices are an optimal solution, given the existing opportunities and constraints.

### **Step 3.5 – Describe Indicator Assumptions**

Once indicators have been selected, the resource specialist and the technical analyst should carefully determine which assumptions must hold if the indicator is to represent the synoptic index adequately (in this case, "adequately" is defined relative to the need for accuracy, as stated in Step 1.3). It is important for these assumptions to be stated explicitly, so they can be revisited later in the assessment to determine whether the assumptions were violated (Step 4.5). This information will also be included as part of the assessment documentation (Step 5.2). Examples of assumptions that can affect the outcome of an analysis are:

- The USGS regression estimates for peak discharge are often developed using data from watersheds that are not heavily urbanized, channelized, or

dammed (e.g., Landers and Wilson 1991); in other words, these regressions are meant to represent "pristine" conditions. Use of regressions developed in this manner would include the implicit assumption that none of the watersheds has undergone significant hydrologic modification.

- Use of area as an indicator for wetland function assumes that function or capacity per unit area is similar for all wetlands or, if it varies, that wetlands having different unit area responses are similarly distributed between landscape subunits. The use of area as an indicator of a sink function further assumes that all wetlands receive import from a source or, if not, that the spatial relationship between wetlands and sources is similar between landscape subunits.
- The use of hydric soil area as an indicator of historical wetland area assumes that (a) wetland soil retains its hydric characteristics after drainage or conversion, (b) hydric soils are properly mapped, and (c) more permanently flooded wetlands, which could appear on SCS maps as water and not hydric soils, are either insignificant in an area or are distributed in such a way that bias is uniform across all subunits.

### **Step 3.6 – Finalize Subunit Selection**

After selecting the final indicators, the resource analyst should reconsider subunits in light of the type of data available. For example, at first the analyst may select watersheds for subunits in Step 2.7 but later find that most data were based on county units. The analyst must then decide whether to prorate the county data to watershed units (see Appendix F) or to use counties as landscape subunits. This will depend on overall project goals and on whether the assumptions necessary for prorating hold true.

### **Step 3.7 – Conduct Pre-Analysis Review**

Before conducting the assessment, the analyst should ask management and technical experts to review the overall management objectives, the synoptic indices that were defined, and the selected landscape indicators. The experts should, in particular, consider the appropriateness of the indicators with respect to objectives and constraints, and also review indicator assumptions for any evidence of violations. If violations are found, data may need to be adjusted or discarded, and alternate indicators considered.

## **Step 4: Conduct Assessment**

Once landscape indicators have been defined and assumptions have been explicitly identified, maps and data can be obtained from the appropriate sources. The technical analyst can begin the process of producing the synoptic maps.

### **Step 4.1 – Plan Quality Assurance/Quality Control**

Data for a synoptic assessment typically come from multiple sources (e.g., state and federal agencies, universities, and non-profit organizations) and come in a variety of formats, including mapped data, tabular data from reports, and computerized databases. Because reliability of the final product depends on quality control of data processing, a set of protocols should be developed for determining and maintaining data quality. The technical analyst should begin this step even before data are received, using information obtained during the data survey phase (Step 3.1).

Protocols should be developed for designing the database and for screening, archiving, and documenting the data. For example, protocols developed for data screening should identify questionable data based on an understanding of expected values and obvious outliers: A value of 100 centimeters per year for average precipitation would be questionable for a state in the

arid southwest, and a peak discharge of only 100 cubic meters per second would obviously be too low for a major river. Percentages should add up to 100, and areas for component land uses should add up to total area. Protocols should also be developed for any variables to be measured, e.g., map measurements, and should include criteria for assessing accuracy, precision, completeness, representativeness, and comparability (EPA 1989).

In addition to the initial information collected during the data survey (Step 3.1), data documentation should include descriptions of the protocols, database design, and archiving formats. This information should be included as part of the assessment documentation (Step 5.2).

### **Step 4.2 – Perform Map Measurements**

Much of the information used in a synoptic assessment is derived from maps. Examples of information and sources include: wetland area and number of wetland types from NWI maps, hydric soil area from county soil surveys, elevations and stream channel lengths from USGS topographic maps, and non-wetland land use from USGS Land Use/Land Cover (LULC) maps.

Two types of measurements are often made from maps: area and length. If the map is in digital format, a GIS can be used to generate these measurements. If a GIS is not available, the features can be planimetered or estimated using a dot grid. These three techniques are discussed in Appendix G.

If data reported for one type of spatial unit are to be prorated to another type of unit, joint areas must be calculated to serve as weighting factors. For example, if population data reported by county need to be adjusted to watershed subunits, the percent of the county lying in a particular watershed must be determined from an overlay of the two different areas (see Appendix F).

Error or bias can be introduced in map measurement through inadequate technician training, differences in accuracy between analysts, and defects or improper calibration of equipment. If maps are digitized for analysis in a GIS, compare hard copies of the digitized maps to the originals for accuracy. Also perform a quality control check for all map measurements by having a different analyst repeat 5% to 10% of the measurements to establish an error level. A discrepancy of more than 5% between analysts might be considered unacceptable. If the target is not met, a more comprehensive check is necessary.

The technical analyst must keep in mind the difference between *accuracy of map measurement* and *overall map accuracy*. A map can be measured very accurately, but still have unacceptable overall accuracy if the map itself contains errors. For example, a map produced through photo-interpretation of aerial photography

might contain significant classification errors if the photo-interpreter is inexperienced. A good discussion of data quality and errors in mapping is found in Burrough (1986).

### Step 4.3 – Analyze Data

A number of calculations could be required to produce an index value for each landscape subunit from the various data sources. Common analyses might include:

- **Calculating Channel Slope**—USGS discharge regressions often include channel slope as a variable. This slope is defined as the difference between the elevation of points located at 85% and 10% of the mainstream channel length. This difference is divided by the channel distance between the two points, i.e., 75% of the channel length (Appendix H).
- **Prorating Areas**—As discussed in Step 4.3, data must be prorated if an indicator is to be calculated for one type of unit based on data reported for a different type of subunit. Many types of data are typically reported by county, e.g., population statistics, agricultural data, soil characteristics data, and endangered species statistics; if the synoptic subunits are not counties, these data must be prorated using the weightings generated in Step 4.2.
- **305b Water Quality Summaries**—Under Section 305b of the Clean Water Act, states are required to report the extent to which their waters are meeting water quality standards. These 305b reports list, by stream segment or type of water body, whether a sampled segment fully supports, partially supports, or does not support (non-supporting) the “designated use” of that segment (for example, a stream can be designated as swimmable or fishable). If the segment is not fully supporting, the report lists the category of pollutant impacting the waters, e.g., point or nonpoint. The percentage of assessed streams that fully support state designated uses could be employed as an indicator of overall water quality. To produce such an indicator, the stream segments within each subunit must be identified and the relevant data summarized for that subunit. Note that the quality of state 305b reports varies by state. The analyst should also be aware of how the data were collected.

Final index estimates are produced by completing any other necessary calculations and converting to standard units, e.g., from English to metric. However, caution must be exercised when using regression equations. For example, the USGS regression equations for Mississippi (Landers and Wilson 1991) estimate peak discharge in  $\text{ft}^3/\text{sec}$ , using area ( $\text{mi}^2$ ), channel length (mi), and slope ( $\text{ft}/\text{mi}$ ); using metric units for area, channel length, and slope would be incorrect, since the regression equation was based on those English units. If metric units were desired, discharge should first be calculated in  $\text{ft}^3/\text{sec}$  using the English units, and then

converted to  $\text{m}^3/\text{sec}$ . This indicator of hydrologic input could then be combined with an indicator of capacity to produce an estimate of hydrologic function. Additional examples of index estimation are provided in the case studies (Chapter 4).

After index values are calculated for each subunit, the subunits can be ranked by numerical values. For example, in an assessment of 50 subunits, the subunit with the highest value could be given a rank of 1 for that index, and the subunit with the lowest value given a rank of 50. Statistical packages such as SAS® (SAS Institute, Inc. 1988) can perform these calculations automatically. Rankings for each index should be included as part of the database.

The last step in analyzing the data is to perform a complete data quality check on the final database. For any calculations performed by computer, the analyst should recalculate a sample by hand to assure that the algorithms were programmed properly and that the output is accurate.

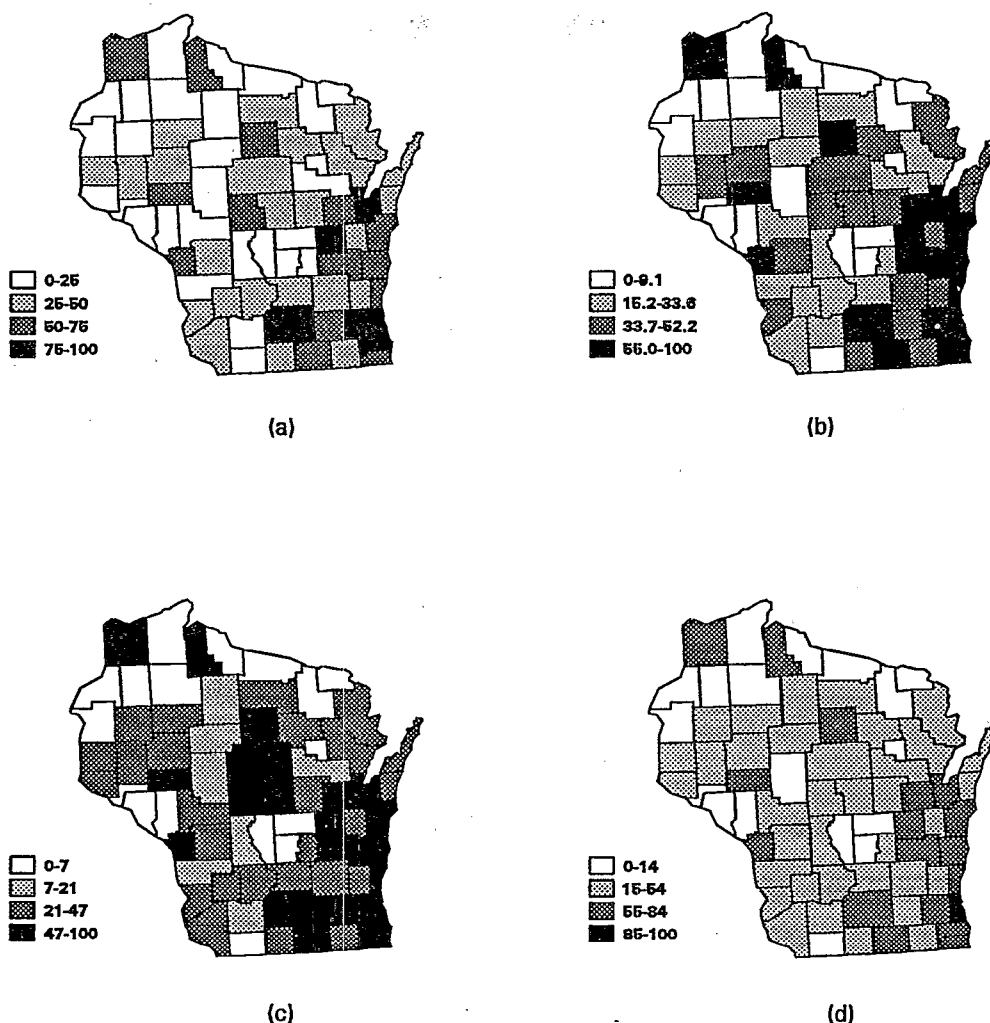
### Step 4.4 – Produce Maps

The final synoptic maps can be produced by a computer mapping package, such as a GIS, or manually if resources are extremely limited or if no automated system is available. A GIS is recommended because it offers easy storage and manipulation of data and allows interim products to be used in later analyses. A GIS also gives the technical analyst greater flexibility to experiment with different display formats.

If a GIS is used, two different databases are typically required: one of the digital boundaries of the study area and its subunits and one of the index values that will be assigned to the subunits. Boundaries for all U.S. states, counties, and USGS accounting units have been digitized and are available at low cost in various formats (see LULC entry, Appendix E). If digital boundary data are not available, hand digitization may be necessary. This could be cost prohibitive if the study area includes a large number of highly detailed polygons, but the benefits of producing computer-generated maps often outweigh the digitizing costs. In some instances, sufficient accuracy may be achieved at even lower cost by using electronic scanners that digitize maps automatically.

The index values and rankings for each subunit must also be entered into the GIS. The method of accomplishing this and the amount of effort required will depend on the particular database-GIS combination. Many GIS packages provide routines for loading information from commonly used commercial databases.

Once the data are in the GIS, map production can begin. We recommend that the technical analyst produce component maps for each index if the index represents a combination of data sources. For example, if the

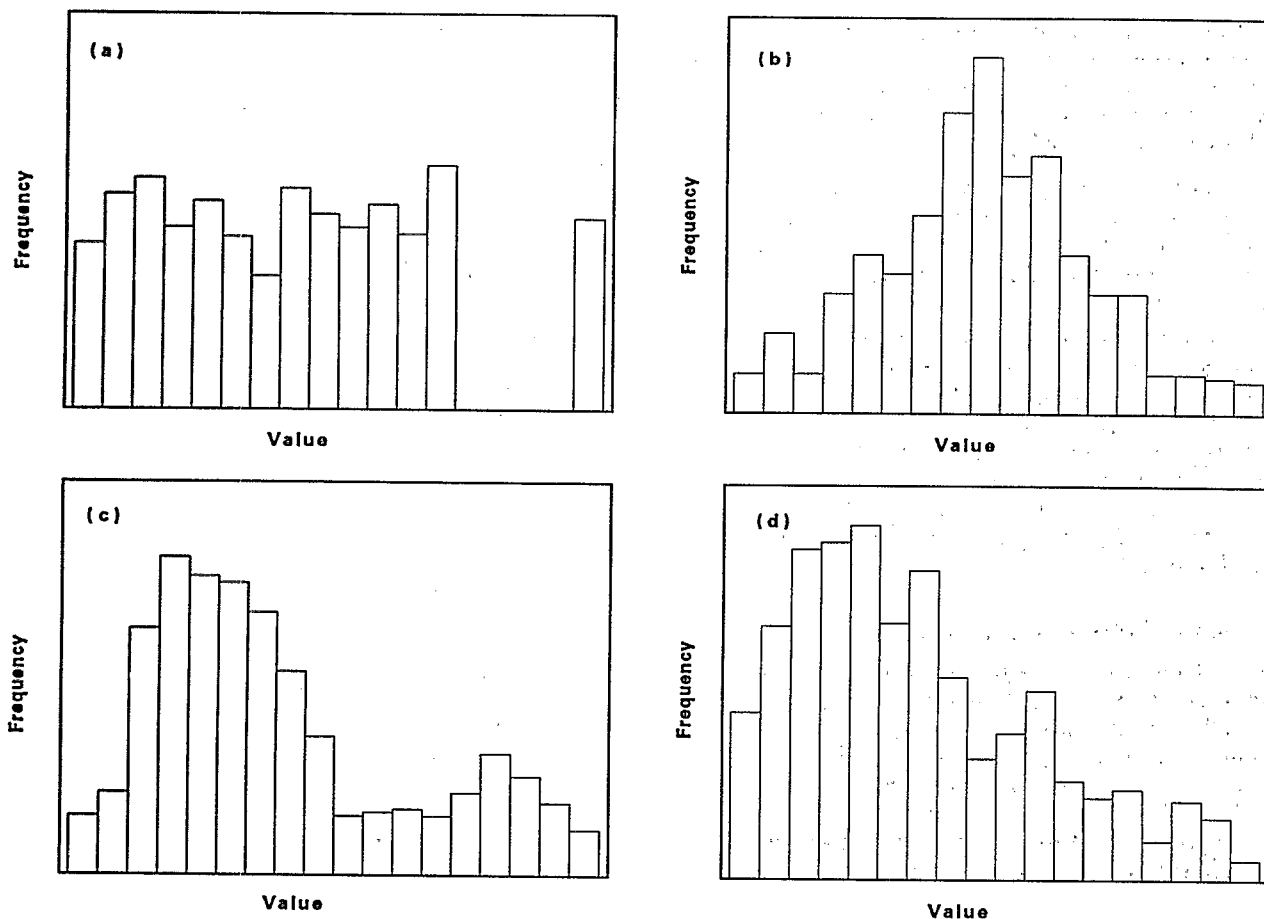


**Figure 3.1.** Illustration of maps using different class intervals to represent the same data: (a) equal intervals based on the data range; (b) intervals based on quartiles; (c) intervals increasing at constant rate; and (d) intervals based on the frequency distribution (adapted from Robinson et al. 1984).

USGS regressions are being used in Mississippi for peak discharge, then component maps of area, channel length, and slope should also be produced. This would allow the technical analyst and resource specialist to examine the data and determine whether the resulting spatial relationships are reasonable.

One of the most important decisions in the map production phase is how to display the data. At a minimum, the map should include the index value for each subunit. However, to promote interpretation, the data are typically aggregated into classes, or intervals. Ideally, class boundaries should reflect actual thresholds of function or value, e.g., patch sizes below which wildlife use drops precipitously or stream size above which local urban flooding is known to occur. Because such technically specific information

is often unavailable, common alternatives are to divide the range of numeric values into equal intervals, or assign an equal number of subunits to each interval based on rankings (e.g., quartiles). The visual appearance of a given set of results can vary greatly, depending on how intervals are selected (Figure 3.1). The choice of class intervals is one of the more important decisions in the entire process because the synoptic maps will be the assessment's most visible outcome. People can easily reach erroneous conclusions if the map they are examining contains improperly displayed data. Perhaps the best way to design the intervals for map display is to first create a histogram or frequency curve showing the distribution of the numerical data (Figure 3.2). This will allow the analyst to detect any natural clumpings and also reveal



**Figure 3.2.** Different possible data distributions: (a) uniform with outlier, (b) normal, (c) bimodal, and (d) negative binomial.

common patterns such as normal or logarithmic distributions. Many standard texts on cartography, such as Robinson et al. (1984), include discussions on display of mapped data.

Once the appropriate intervals have been selected, the technical analyst considers options for displaying the range of values, e.g., color, shading, or hatching. Color, although more expensive, gives the greatest contrast and flexibility and should be considered if slide presentations will be made. Document production is less expensive if gray shadings are used; however, the analyst should select shades that provide enough contrast to be distinguished after photocopying.

#### **Step 4.5 – Assess Accuracy**

Throughout the course of the assessment, the technical analyst and resource specialist should look for evidence that any of the assumptions stated in Step 3.5 have been violated and consider the effects this would have on the

assessment's accuracy. If the assumptions were violated for some units, it might be possible to adjust the index values. For example:

- Selection of an indicator for peak discharge could have been based on the assumption that subunits were not significantly regulated by dams. If a subunit is found to have a large dam or other major regulation, peak discharge would be significantly lower than the discharge that would occur naturally. The index value for that subunit could then be re-assigned to the lowest category.
- To calculate wetland loss, the indicator for current wetland area could have been derived from USGS LULC maps if digital NWI wetland maps were not available. In cross-checking the classification, the analyst might have found that some areas classified as seasonally flooded riverine wetlands by NWI are classified on the LULC maps as deciduous forest, i.e., non-wetland. This underestimate of wetland area would cause an overestimate of historic wetland loss. These data may be adequate for relative comparisons of wetland loss if the proportion of deciduous forest

is similar in all subunits. Even if some subunits are much more dominated by deciduous forest than others, the analyst might be able to derive a correction factor to adjust the subunits, based on the percent of riparian land cover.

If the indices cannot be adjusted in such a fashion, the analyst may need to discard the data for the landscape subunits in which violations occurred. In some cases, the analyst might determine that the indicator is unsuitable for the required level of accuracy.

Throughout the entire assessment process, the technical analyst must consider the quality and accuracy of data sources to determine the overall quality of the final products. Unfortunately, no formal process for weighing the various factors exists. Ultimately, the technical analyst and resource specialist must use their own judgment and familiarity with the data to determine whether the synoptic results meet the stated needs (Step 1.3).

#### ***Step 4.6 – Conduct Post-Analysis Review***

The assessment team should again seek technical experts' review comments following completion of the data analysis and synthesis. This information will assist the team in deriving conclusions and suggesting ways the results can be used. Because there is no method for quantitatively assessing the accuracy of results, this step and the pre-analysis review (Step 3.7) are essential to assure that results are adequate for the intended use.

### **Step 5: Prepare Synoptic Reports**

The last step in the assessment is to report how the information was derived and how it can be used. Two different documents are appropriate: a report for the manager and resource specialist (a user's guide) and a detailed reporting of procedures to serve as a record of the complete assessment process (assessment documentation). Draft versions of these documents could also be included as part of the post-analysis review (Step 4.6).

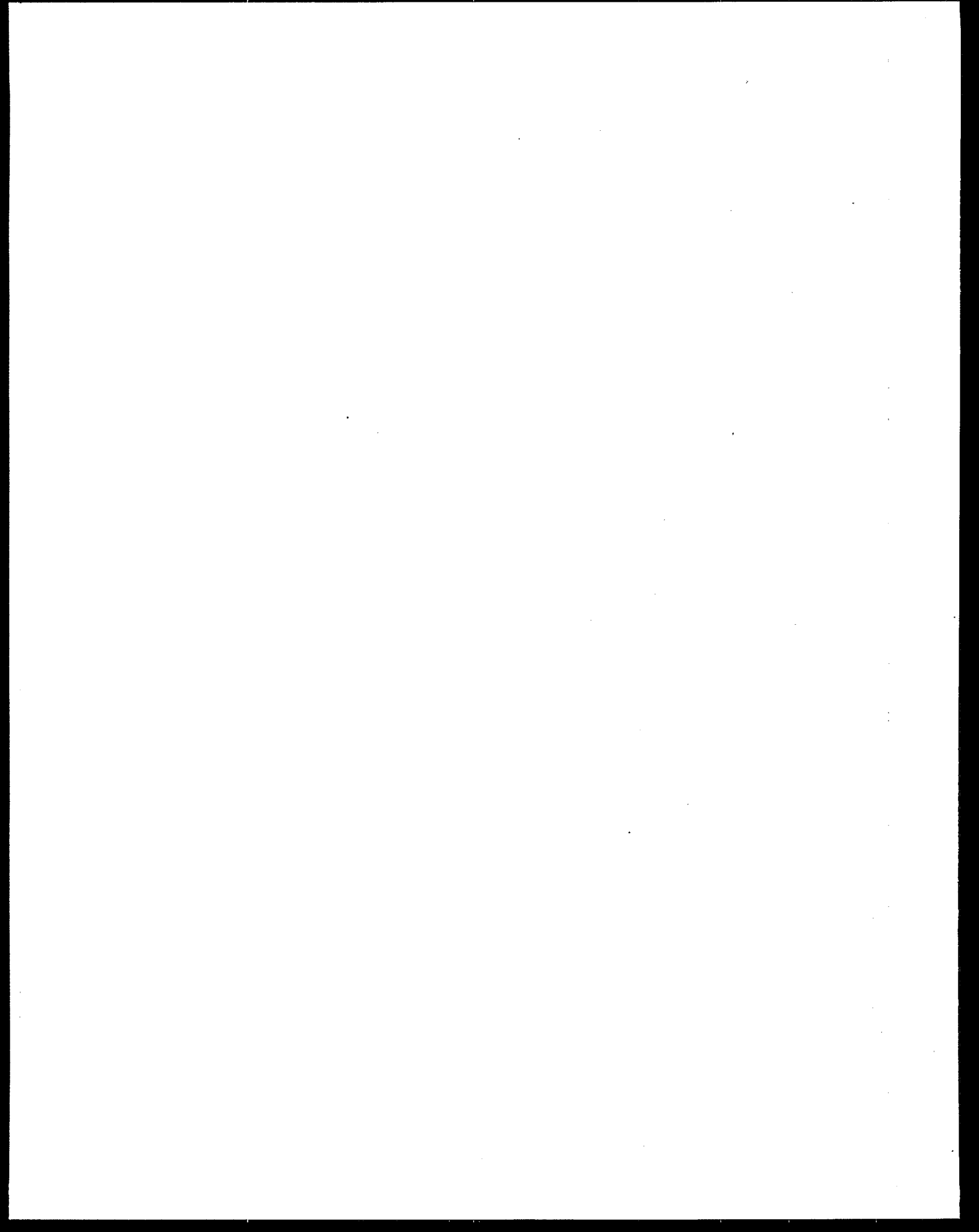
#### ***Step 5.1 – Prepare User's Guide***

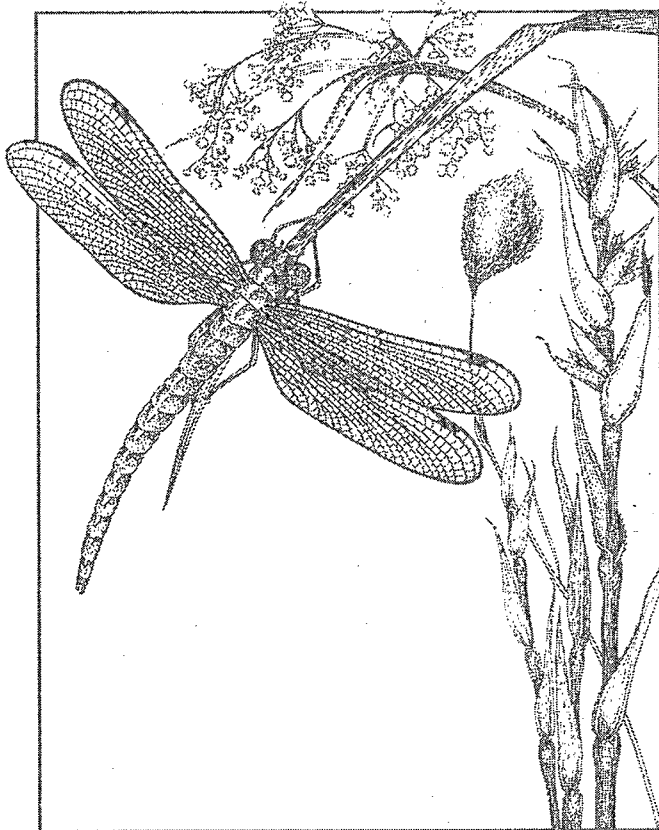
This report should focus on the results of the assessment and how the results can be used to meet the original objectives. It might include protocols and illustrations of how the synoptic maps can be used in 404 permit reviews and should include any important caveats and assumptions as well as the overall level of accuracy. In particular, the user's guide should make clear that final numeric values are relative rankings, and should be treated as such. For example, if a subunit is ranked lowest of six for habitat functions, this does not necessarily mean the subunit lacks habitat or that its habitat is insignificant. It means it has lower habitat function, relative to the other subunits. Similarly, a relatively high subunit ranking for wetland replacement potential does not necessarily mean all wetland losses in that subunit can be easily replaced.

The intended audience for this report includes resource specialists who are involved in decision-making or planning, as well as resource agencies, scientists, and the public.

#### ***Step 5.2 – Prepare Assessment Documentation***

Each synoptic assessment should include, for internal use or distribution to interested parties, complete documentation of how the assessment was conducted, including the objectives, constraints, rationale for index definition and indicator selection, assumptions related to the indicators, and detailed descriptions of the procedures used in measuring and analyzing the data. Any problems encountered should also be described. The report should carefully document the sources and quality of the various data sets and describe where and how the data are archived. It also should include an overall assessment of data quality and recommendations on how the assessment could be improved in the future. This document is a detailed record of the assessment process, and could be valuable if procedures are forgotten, challenged (e.g., through litigation), or if the assessment is updated.





## Chapter 4 Case Studies

This chapter presents four case studies as hypothetical examples of how a synoptic assessment could be used. It illustrates both project-specific applications and regional comparisons.

The management question for project-specific applications focuses on a specific, preselected subunit, e.g., a watershed or ecoregion. The objective could be to determine whether the subunit meets selected criteria, to develop broad goals for the subunit, or to see whether any "red flags" exist for that subunit relevant to a particular management objective. An example would be using a synoptic assessment to determine whether a proposed discharge of fill material is located within an area already at risk when compared to other areas.

For regional comparisons, the management objective is to determine which subunits within a region best meet a specific criteria; for example, subunits could be screened for their restoration potential. In this case the management objective is given, but the geographic locations meeting the criteria are unknown.

Each of the following case studies is designed to (1) provide the reader with an illustration of how results from a synoptic assessment could be used to support a specific management objective, (2) give examples of the kind of information that could be used as landscape indicators, and (3) identify and discuss technical issues. The first case study is purposely kept simple; complexity is added in later examples.

We preface the case studies with one major caveat: these four examples are based on pilot studies conducted as part of the development of the synoptic approach (e.g., Abbruzzese et al. 1990a, 1990b). We made no attempt to focus on real management problems because the method was developmental. Also, one of our specific objectives was to demonstrate that a synoptic assessment could be conducted using information available for most of the country. Where possible, we used the simplest combination rules—no normalization or weighting—because we were developing the method, not applying it. *The maps and data presented do not necessarily include the most appropriate indices or indicators for the management issue being illustrated.* This is why we refer to these as *hypothetical* examples.

In particular, we did not follow all five steps for conducting a synoptic assessment (Table 3.1); our experience with these pilots led to the final development and articulation of these five steps. The four examples presented in this chapter are not true case studies and do not document an actual application of the approach. The reader should keep the hypothetical nature of these examples in mind.

## Pearl River Basin

The subject of the first case study is the Pearl River Basin, a 22,600 km<sup>2</sup> region in southern Mississippi and Louisiana (Figure 4.1). The focus is a project-specific management goal: the use of a synoptic assessment in 404 permit review. Functional loss and landscape input are introduced in this example. We illustrate differences between landscape and subunit boundaries by discussing the dependence of hydrologic function on cumulative area.

### Management Goal

The goal of this hypothetical application is to provide 404 permit reviewers with information about cumulative impacts within the Pearl River Basin for inclusion in the review process. Two management scenarios will be considered: wetland loss from conversion and the effects of that loss on hydrologic function.

### Wetland Types<sup>1</sup>

Bottomland hardwood forests are the dominant type of inland wetland within the basin. Freshwater, brackish, and saline marshes are found within the coastal area.

### Landscape Boundary and Subunits

The Pearl River Basin forms a natural watershed boundary. Climate patterns produced by the Gulf of Mexico are significant forcing functions for the southern coastal area. The basin's five USGS cataloging units (Figure 4.1) were used as subunits; they range in size from 3,160 to 6,450 km<sup>2</sup> (Seaber et al. 1984).

### Natural Setting

The prevailing climate of the study area is humid subtropical with rain occurring throughout the year (Trewartha 1957). The 130-150 cm of annual precipitation is the only source of runoff in the basin; discharge from the Pearl enters the Gulf of Mexico. Naturally occurring environmental disturbances include hurricanes, tornados, and flooding.

The Pearl River is bordered by the Pascagoula, Tombigbee, and Biloxi river basins to the east, by the Gulf of Mexico to the south, and by the Mississippi River Basin to the west and north. The Pearl River Basin has low relief, with peak elevations of about 120 m occurring in headwater areas. Valleys are steep and narrow at the head, but they grade to level and wide in lower reaches (USDA 1983); streams meander considerably in the lower valley. Loess or silt soils, formed under forest vegetation, dominate the drainage except in the coastal area (USDA 1983). Many of the soils are subject to erosion when disturbed.

Southern mixed forest originally dominated the drainage, with cordgrass prairie vegetation in the coastal area and oak-savanna in the northwest edge (Kuchler 1985). Current vegetation patterns reflect land use: oak-hickory-pine forests occur with a mixture of pasture and hay cropping in the upland areas, and oak-gum-cypress forests mixed with agricultural land dominate the valley (USGS 1967).

### Wetland Functions

Hydrologic, water quality, and habitat functions are all important in the basin. Among the hydrologic functions, the potential role of wetlands in attenuating peak flow is the focus of the synoptic indices. This role is particularly noteworthy because floodplains are populated and several major cities lie within the basin.

The basin's wetland forests, marshes, and lakes provide habitat for many species of plants and animals. Mink, muskrat, and beaver inhabit riparian and wetland areas. Wild turkey, whitetail deer, and raccoon use both wetland and upland areas. Migrating ducks and geese feed and rest in the region. Common fish species include largemouth bass, crappie, bluegill, and various species of catfish (Lowe and Cooley 1981).

### Significant Impacts

Conversion of wetlands for agriculture has been a major economic activity in the basin. Pasture and hay area is about twice that of croplands; soybeans are the dominant crop. Agricultural activities contribute to nonpoint source pollution in the form of suspended sediments, nitrogen, and phosphorous (Gosselink et al. 1990a). Softwood forestry has also been important to the economy. Bottomland hardwood forests have been converted to loblolly pine in conjunction with "bedding," i.e., mounding soil in areas subject to flooding to provide a drier environment for pine.

Sand and gravel mining occurs within current and former river channels of the lower basin; this contributes to channel instability and water turbidity. Although the basin has not been extensively modified hydrologically compared to neighboring river basins in the Gulf Coastal Plain, at least 290 km of streams have been channelized, and the river is impounded above Jackson, below Bogalusa, and west of Picayune (USFWS 1981).

<sup>1</sup>Information on wetland types, natural setting, wetland functions, and significant impacts was not usually used because the original objective of the assessments was methods development. We include this information as part of the four case studies to illustrate the kind of information that could be incorporated into an actual assessment.



**Figure 4.1.** The Pearl River Basin in south-central Mississippi and southeastern Louisiana and the five subunits. Subunits are USGS cataloging units.

## Synoptic Indices

For the first scenario, we define the percentage of historical wetland area that has been converted as our specific index of functional loss:

$$\%LOSS = [(AREA_H - AREA_C) / AREA_H] \times 100$$

Equation 4.1

where %LOSS is the percentage of lost wetland area,  $AREA_H$  is the historical wetland area, and  $AREA_C$  is the current wetland area.

In the second management scenario, we are specifically concerned with the cumulative effect this loss may have had on the hydrologic function of wetlands. We assume that loss of hydrologic function will be greatest in areas with high hydrologic input and high rates of wetland loss. We use peak discharge for a 50-year flood event as an estimate of hydrologic input because flood control along the main channel is an important hydrologic function of Pearl River wetlands. Our loss of hydrologic function index is therefore defined as follows:

$$LOSS_H = Q_{50} \times \%LOSS$$

Equation 4.2

where  $LOSS_H$  is the index for loss of hydrologic function,  $Q_{50}$  is the peak discharge for a 50-year flood, and %LOSS is defined in Equation 4.1. This is a simple index and does not account for wetland influence attributable to position within a subunit or to hydrologic regime. Such factors can influence greatly the cumulative wetland capacity to moderate peak flows. Also, note that we do not normalize or weight either variable; we assume instead a first-order proportionality.

In a real application for cumulative impacts, the resource specialist conducting the assessment could decide to focus specifically on impacts to bottomland hardwood forests and could include degradation.

Indices would also be needed for loss of bottomland hardwood function due to impacts of farming, timber harvest, and sand and gravel mining. The analyst could include indices for water quality and habitat function as well as future risk. The latter is included in regulatory definitions of cumulative impacts; see Chapter 1. Illustrations of these indices appear in later case studies.

## Landscape Indicators

Table 4.1 summarizes the landscape indicators used for the components of the synoptic indices defined in Equations 4.1 and 4.2. The use of the indicators for LOSS is based on several assumptions: (1) USGS land-use classification of wetlands and SCS classification of hydric soils agree with generally accepted criteria, (2) 1:250,000 scale maps represent current wetland area adequately, (3) Hydric soils can be used to estimate historical wetland extent, and (4) Hydrologic loss is proportional to the loss of wetland area regardless of where in the subunit the loss occurred.

These assumptions are violated in certain instances. Some of the areas adjoining lakes and estuaries are defined as wetlands by USGS, but are classified as open water by SCS. In addition, coastal wetlands lost to open water through subsidence are not accounted for using this method. These sources of error result in an inaccurate depiction of net wetland gain. On the other hand, some areas commonly considered wetlands are not classified as such by USGS maps; in particular, seasonally flooded riverine wetlands are sometimes classified as deciduous forests. In addition, 1:250,000 USGS maps omit small wetland patches. These sources of error would result in an underestimate of current wetland area, causing an overestimate of historic loss. However, this indicator of loss should be adequate for relative comparisons as long as classification errors are consistent between subunits.

Table 4.1. Landscape indicators for the Pearl River Basin case study.

Index Component	Indicator
$AREA_H$ (historic wetland area)	Area of hydric soils, estimated with dot grid from county and parish soil surveys; hydric soils identified from SCS (1987)
$AREA_C$ (current wetland area)	Area of wetland land cover, estimated with dot grid from 1:250,000 USGS LULC maps
$Q_{50}$ (peak discharge for 50-yr flood)	Estimated from USGS regression equations (Landers and Wilson 1991), based on watershed drainage area (A), mainstem channel length (L), and channel slope (S)
A (watershed drainage area)	Defined for USGS cataloging units in Seaber et al. (1984)
L (mainstem channel length)	Measured with planimeter from 1:250,000 USGS topography maps
S (channel slope)	Calculated as the slope between points that are 10% and 85% of the mainstem channel length (Landers and Wilson 1991); mainstem channel length as above, and elevation estimated from USGS 1:250,000 topography maps

Other indicators of loss could be used. These might include percent change in bottomland forest types if data from forest surveys (e.g., McWilliams and Rosson 1990) are considered adequate for the assessment subunits.

For  $LOSS_H$ , the use of  $Q_{50}$  (the 50-year flood event) as an indicator requires using USGS regression equations (Landers and Wilson 1991). This adds the assumption that watershed hydrology has not been significantly altered. The Pearl River Basin does contain a major structural modification, the Ross Barnett Dam near Jackson. However, this dam functions primarily as a reservoir and would have minimal impact on larger floods (personal communication, P. Turnipseed, USGS, Jackson, Miss.). We therefore chose a 50-year flood event in order to minimize this effect. Use of the USGS regression method also assumes that the area is unaffected by tides, which would decrease the rate of discharge but increase flood stage. Use of the regression method further assumes that channelization has no significant effect on discharge or that the effect is similar between subunits. An alternative would have been to use a hydrologic model such as TR-55 (SCS 1986) to calculate peak discharge, which would take into account damming and channelization.

Measurements of watershed drainage area, mainstem channel length, and channel slope are required to calculate discharge for the Pearl River subunits. However, it is important to differentiate between drainage area and subunit (cataloging unit) area because discharge is a cumulative phenomenon. Subunit 1 is a closed hydrologic unit and receives no water input except rain. The discharge from Subunit 1 is therefore dependent on the area of Subunit 1 only. However, Subunit 2 is not a closed watershed; besides local precipitation, it receives downstream import from Subunit 1. The combined area of Subunits 1 and 2 is used to calculate discharge for Subunit 2. Similarly, the discharge for Subunit 4 is dependent on the area of the entire Pearl River Basin (Appendix H).

Mainstem channel length is also cumulative; it is defined as the length of the main channel from the point of discharge to the drainage divide. The channel length used to calculate discharge for Subunit 4 is the combined lengths of Subunits 1, 2, 3, and 4; the length of Subunit 5 would *not* be included in this particular calculation because it is not part of the main channel (see Appendix H). In situations where a political boundary defines the study area, the analysis must similarly consider landscape factors outside of the study area for such a cumulative phenomenon; this is further discussed in the Louisiana case study and Appendix H.

### Map Interpretation

The relative ranking of cataloging units in the Pearl River Basin for cumulative wetland loss is shown in Figure 4.2. Subunit 3 has the highest relative wetland

loss, followed by Subunits 2, 5, 1, and 4. If a permit were being reviewed for a project in Subunit 4, this particular analysis would indicate that cumulative impacts are of lesser concern. The permit decision would be based solely on site-specific evaluation. If the proposed discharge were located within Subunit 3, however, the high level of wetland loss would raise an additional issue to be considered along with other information. The assumption is that the cumulative loss of wetland area within a subunit reduces valued wetland functions such as flood control.

If a site assessment indicated that local impacts would be significant, this plus the cumulative impacts could provide sufficient reason for modifying or denying the permit. Regardless of the local impact, additional compensatory mitigation might be required for the project because this subunit had already experienced a high rate of wetland loss.

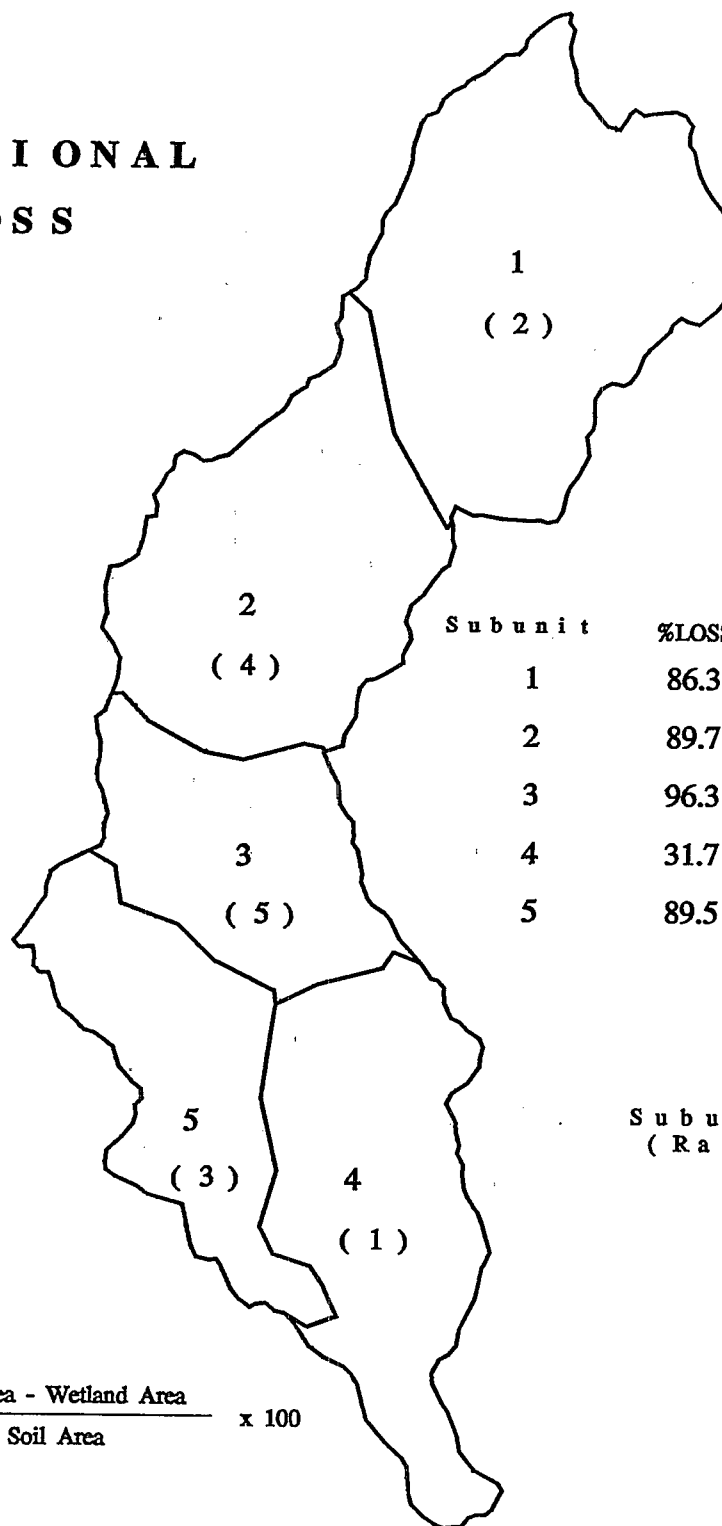
Given that the basin is a flood-prone area, the resource manager might be most concerned with loss of hydrologic function. The subunit experiencing the greatest wetland loss need not have experienced the greatest loss of hydrologic function, since that subunit could have a smaller flood potential. The second scenario incorporates hydrologic input as a weighting factor to focus on this particular function. Consider a permit request for gravel mining along the main channel in Subunit 2 (Figure 4.3). The reviewer might determine that additional wetland alteration would exacerbate flooding, since this subunit has a high relative ranking for loss of hydrologic function. This information could strengthen the basis for negotiating on-site mitigation aimed specifically at reducing the risk of increased flooding as a condition of the permit. At a minimum, the reviewer could use this information to require the applicant to demonstrate that increased flooding is *not* a relevant consideration in the particular permit decision.

In this example, both  $Q_{50}$  and %LOSS had values that varied by a factor of three (2,151 to 6,417 m<sup>3</sup>/s for  $Q_{50}$  and 32 to 96% for %LOSS). Both would contribute similarly to the range of  $LOSS_H$ . For a landscape where the mainstem varied from small streams to major rivers,  $Q_{50}$  could vary by orders of magnitude and dominate the trends in  $LOSS_H$ . In such a case, weighting factors could be used to give the wetland-dependent variable %LOSS greater weight, or both variables could be normalized.

## State of Louisiana

The Louisiana case study provides a second example of a project-specific application; in this instance, we use synoptic results to help define restoration goals and to determine whether any "red flags" exist for a restoration project. To do this, we introduce restoration potential and wetland function as synoptic indices. We also

# FUNCTIONAL LOSS



Subunit	%LOSS	Rank
1	86.3	2
2	89.7	4
3	96.3	5
4	31.7	1
5	89.5	3

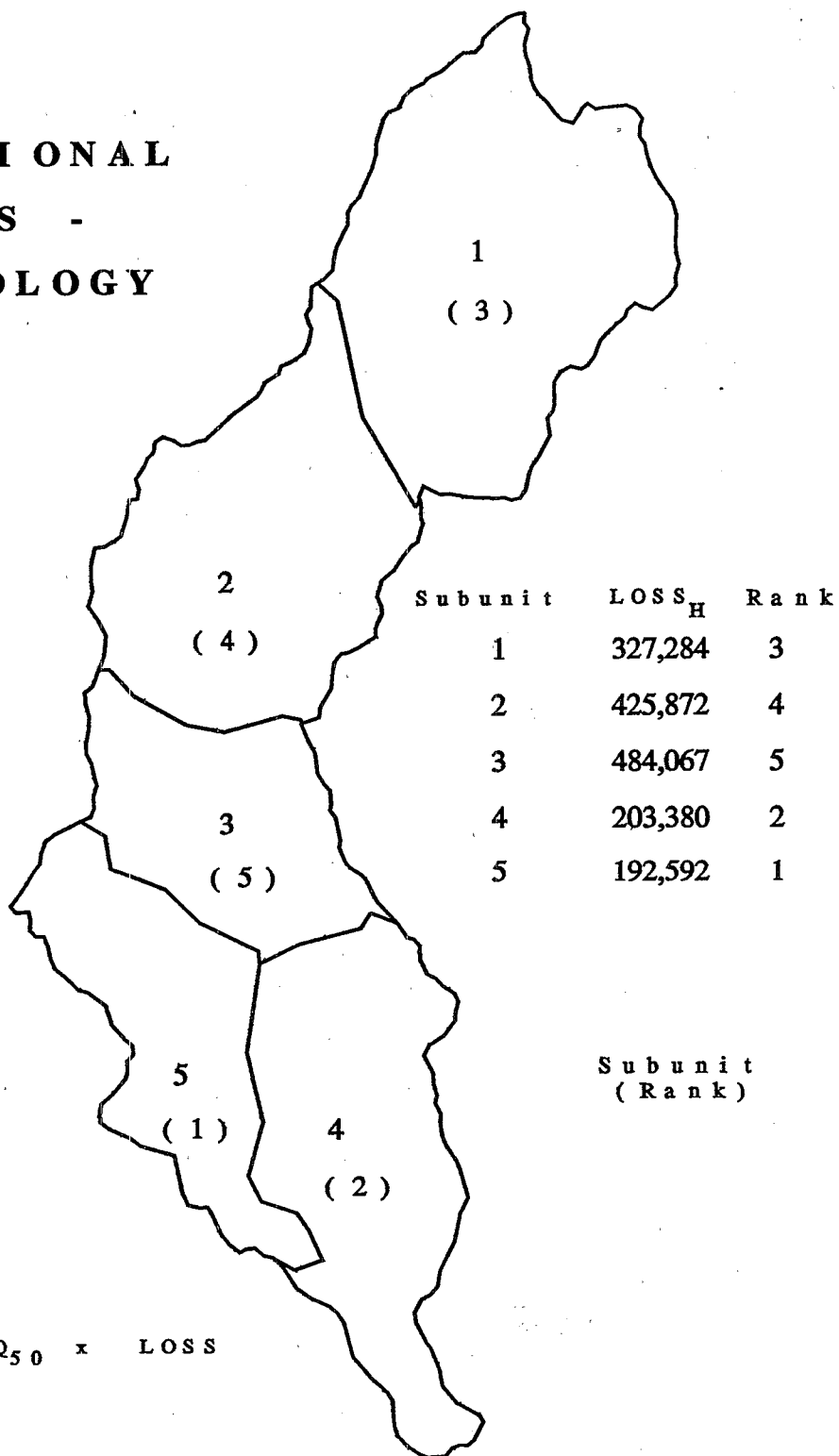
Subunit  
(Rank)

$$\%LOSS = \frac{\text{Hydric Soil Area} - \text{Wetland Area}}{\text{Hydric Soil Area}} \times 100$$

**Figure 4.2.** Functional loss for the Pearl River Basin. Within each subunit, the upper value is the subunit number and the lower, parenthetical value is the rank. The variables included in the equation for %LOSS represent the landscape indicators, not the components of the synoptic index (Equation 4.1).

# FUNCTIONAL LOSS - HYDROLOGY

$$LOSS_H = Q_{50} \times LOSS$$



**Figure 4.3** Loss of hydrologic function for the Pearl River Basin. Within each subunit, the upper value is the subunit number and the lower, parenthetical value is the rank. The variables included in the equation for  $LOSS_H$  represent the landscape indicators, not the components of the synoptic index (Equation 4.2).

discuss difficulties associated with determining hydrologic input when a study area is defined by political, rather than hydrologic, boundaries.

### **Management Goal**

The management goal is to produce synoptic maps that can be used to identify limitations and set specific goals for restoration projects being proposed for compensatory mitigation. The sustainability of a restored wetland is dependent on landscape condition as well as on site characteristics and wetland type (Leibowitz et al. 1992). A synoptic assessment can provide landscape information that allows subunits to be evaluated rapidly for potential environmental problems, and it can help identify landscape functions that would benefit from restoration.

### **Wetland Types**

Louisiana encompasses many wetlands; more than 12,000 km<sup>2</sup> of inland wetlands (freshwater marshes and bottomland hardwood swamps) and 12,000 km<sup>2</sup> of coastal wetlands (swamps and freshwater, brackish, and saline marshes) exist within the state (LDEQ 1988). Approximately 25% of the coastal wetlands in the contiguous United States are found in Louisiana (Alexander et al. 1986).

### **Landscape Boundary and Subunits**

The state is bordered by Arkansas to the north, the Sabine River and Texas to the west, the Mississippi River and the state of Mississippi to the northeast, the Pearl River to the southeast, and the Gulf of Mexico to the south. Because the Mississippi River drains a majority of the United States, the state's hydrologic boundary includes much of the nation.

Water Management Units defined by the Louisiana Department of Environmental Quality are used for landscape subunits. These are modifications of the USGS cataloging units for the state; 124 subunits are included (Figure 4.4).

### **Natural Setting**

Principal factors that influence the state's climate are subtropical latitude, proximity to the Gulf of Mexico, and northerly continental fronts (Gosselink 1984). As much as 160 cm of precipitation falls annually (Conner and Day 1987). Hurricanes and tropical storms occur between July and December and are natural environmental disturbances that cause coastal erosion (Boyd and Penland 1981; Chabreck and Palmisano 1973). With a maximum elevation of 160 meters in the northwest hills, the state has little topographic relief; the landscape gently slopes from the north to the southern coast.

The most important factor that has shaped Louisiana's landscape is the combined Mississippi River system, which drains two-thirds of the continental United States. As a result of coastal deposition the river's sediment supply has formed a broad plain of overlapping deltas (Coleman 1988). Sediment deposition through overbank flooding and erosional cutting by the river has similarly built the Mississippi alluvial valley. Sedimentation by the river and its shifting between deposition sites over thousands of years are critical processes for the construction and maintenance of the state's coastal and alluvial (bottomland hardwoods) wetlands.

### **Wetland Functions**

The hydrologic, water quality, and habitat functions of Louisiana wetlands are important for the entire state. These wetlands constitute one of the nation's most productive environments and they provide habitat for hundreds of bird and mammal species. Two migratory bird routes cross the state and provide wintering grounds for a quarter of the nation's puddle ducks and more than half of the geese found in the Mississippi Flyway. Coastal marshes support a variety of furbearers, including nutria, coyote, muskrat, racoon, mink, red and gray fox, otter, bobcat, opossum, skunk, and beaver; this resource is valued at \$25 million annually. Commercial and sport fisheries important to the state's economy are also wetland dependent: commercial landings of fish and shellfish ranked first in the nation in 1984.

### **Significant Impacts**

Human alteration of the Mississippi River system has been extensive and includes three major impacts: (1) a 51% reduction in the river's suspended sediment levels between 1953 and 1962, primarily through construction of upstream locks and dams (Kesel 1989); (2) construction of a control structure that limits flow down the Atchafalaya River to 30% of total discharge, which prevents the system from switching to this tributary; and (3) the construction of a flood-control levee along the lower Mississippi, which prevents overbank flooding. Direct impacts to Louisiana wetlands include conversion of coastal marsh to open water through construction of oil and gas canals and pipelines and conversion of bottomland hardwoods by logging and agricultural drainage.

### **Synoptic Indices**

Two management scenarios are presented here. The first examines wetland restoration from the perspective of landscape replacement potential, i.e., the ability of the landscape to contribute to wetland maintenance. The resulting indices can be used to evaluate the feasibility

or sustainability of planned restoration projects. For this particular application, we chose three separate factors relevant to the state's inland wetlands: soils, hydrologic integrity, and water quality.

The first index for replacement potential considers the proportion of non-wetland hydric soils, e.g., soils in former wetlands converted to agricultural land. Replacement potential should be greater for hydric soils because they retain certain wetland characteristics and are located where natural factors favor wetland formation. Thus non-wetland hydric soils are good candidates for restoration. The specific index is given as

$$\text{REPLACE}_S = (\text{AREA}_H - \text{AREA}_W) / \text{AREA}_H$$

Equation 4.3

where  $\text{REPLACE}_S$  is the replacement potential with respect to soil conditions,  $\text{AREA}_H$  is the area of hydric soils, and  $\text{AREA}_W$  is the area of current wetlands. Note that this is similar to the index used for loss of wetland area (%LOSS) in the Pearl River case study (Equation 4.1): the more wetlands that have been converted, the greater the number of potential restoration sites.

Since hydrology is critical to wetlands, we assume that long-term replacement of wetland functions will be more difficult in an area where natural hydrology has been altered; thus we include an index based on the degree of hydrologic integrity:

$$\text{REPLACE}_H = \text{WATER}_N / (\text{WATER}_N + \text{WATER}_M)$$

Equation 4.4

where  $\text{REPLACE}_H$  is the replacement potential with respect to hydrologic integrity,  $\text{WATER}_N$  is the amount of naturally occurring waters, and  $\text{WATER}_M$  is the amount of hydrologically modified waters.

Finally, restoration can be more difficult in an area that is stressed by pollutant exposure; thus we include an index that represents overall water quality:

$$\text{REPLACE}_{WQ} = \text{WATER}_U / (\text{WATER}_U + \text{WATER}_P)$$

Equation 4.5

where  $\text{REPLACE}_{WQ}$  is the replacement potential with respect to water quality,  $\text{WATER}_U$  is the amount of unpolluted waters, and  $\text{WATER}_P$  is the amount of polluted waters.

These indices do not account for several factors important to estimating replacement potential, such as presence of hazardous substances, local climate, and land usage. If data on these or other important factors are available, specific indices could be developed for them.

To help determine restoration goals, the second scenario provides indices of wetland function for hydrology, water quality, and habitat. The index for hydrologic

function ( $\text{FUNCTION}_{HYD}$ ) combines wetland capacity ( $\text{CAPACITY}_{HYD}$ ) with hydrologic input:

$$\text{FUNCTION}_{HYD} = \text{CAPACITY}_{HYD} \times 7Q_{10}$$

Equation 4.6

The variable for hydrologic input,  $7Q_{10}$ , is defined as the lowest 7-day mean discharge for a 10-year recurrence interval; in other words, this represents a 10-year drought. The contribution of wetlands to maintaining base flow is assumed to be more critical in areas where  $7Q_{10}$  values are low.

The next index is a measure of relative wetland function with respect to water quality. The index combines wetland capacity (the ability of wetlands to promote landscape function through processing of pollutants) with pollutant input (the opportunity for wetlands to contribute to landscape function):

$$\text{FUNCTION}_{WQ} = \text{CAPACITY}_{WQ} \times \text{INPUT}_{WQ}$$

Equation 4.7

where  $\text{FUNCTION}_{WQ}$  is an index of pollution reduction actually occurring,  $\text{CAPACITY}_{WQ}$  is the capacity of the wetland to remove or otherwise transform pollutants, and  $\text{INPUT}_{WQ}$  is the pollutant loading rate.

The index for habitat function,  $\text{FUNCTION}_{HAB}$ , is a measure of function relative to wetland-dependent species. This function is not dependent on landscape inputs and is defined as the density of wetlands within a subunit:

$$\text{FUNCTION}_{HAB} = \text{AREA}_W / A$$

Equation 4.8

where  $\text{FUNCTION}_{HAB}$  is the habitat function,  $\text{AREA}_W$  is current wetland area, and  $A$  is subunit area.

### Landscape Indicators

Table 4.2 contains a summary of the indicators for the Louisiana case study. Below we discuss some of the assumptions and issues related to these data.

In the first scenario, the indicators for the three replacement potential indices are based on the following assumptions: (1) Soils mapped as hydric are wetland substrate and exist in landscapes with adequate and appropriately timed sources of water that can sustain wetland processes; (2) The major hydrologic impacts that affect the sustainability of wetlands are damming and channelization; both have similar overall effects on replacement potential, and both are adequately estimated by dot counts; and (3) Water quality data from state 305b reports represent an accurate and unbiased sample of natural water quality as it pertains to wetland stress. Because the indicators for replacement potential

**Table 4.2. Landscape indicators for the Louisiana case study.**

Index Component	Indicator
AREA <sub>H</sub> (hydric soil area)	Area of hydric soils, estimated with dot grid from parish soil surveys; hydric soils identified from SCS (1987)
AREA <sub>W</sub> (current wetland area)	Area of wetland land cover, estimated by GIS from digital 1:250,000 USGS LULC maps
WATER <sub>N</sub> (naturally occurring waters)	Number of dots on hydrologically unmodified waters from 1:250,000 USGS topographic maps
WATER <sub>M</sub> (hydrologically modified)	Number of dots on dammed or channelized waters from 1:250,000 USGS topographic maps
WATER <sub>U</sub> (unpolluted waters)	Length of streams listed as "fully supporting" designated uses in 305b report (LDEQ 1988)
WATER <sub>P</sub> (polluted waters)	Length of streams listed as "partially supporting" or "non-supporting" designated uses in 305b reports (LDEQ 1988)
CAPACITY <sub>HYD</sub> (hydrologic capacity)	Area of wetland cover, estimated by GIS from digital 1:250,000 USGS LULC maps
7Q <sub>10</sub> (7-day low discharge for 10-yr drought)	Estimated using several different methods, based on Lee (1985a); see text
CAPACITY <sub>WQ</sub> (water quality capacity)	Area of wetland cover, estimated by GIS from digital 1:250,000 USGS LULC maps
INPUT <sub>WQ</sub> (loading rate of pollutants)	Defined as the percent of polluted waters: $WATER_P / (WATER_P + WATER_U)$ ; indicators as above
A (watershed area)	Watershed area, estimated by GIS from digital 1:250,000 USGS LULC maps

with respect to soil include those used earlier for %LOSS (compare Equation 4.1 with Equation 4.3 and Table 4.1 with Table 4.2), the earlier assumptions also hold for REPLACE<sub>S</sub>.

For wetland functions, the 7-day low flow was estimated using several methods based on Lee (1985a); these are discussed in more detail below. Assumptions for functional indicators are as follows: (1) Wetlands contribute to baseflow and this contribution is more significant in areas with smaller 10-year low flows, i.e., those more susceptible to drought; (2) The proportion of streams classified as not fully supporting designated uses such as "public water supply" or "fish and wildlife propagation" is indicative of pollutant loadings; and (3) Wetland function for hydrology, water quality, and habitat is dependent on wetland area as mapped by USGS land-use maps. Since the indicator for landscape input of pollutants is the complement of the indicator used for water quality replacement potential (See Table 4.2 and Equation 4.4), those assumptions also hold.

In this case study we introduce a technical problem related to study area boundaries. Because regulatory jurisdiction is rarely defined by environmental criteria, the boundary for a study will typically not be a natural watershed as it was for the Pearl River Basin. In cases where portions of a subunit are outside of the study area, the analyst must consider hydrologic input from upstream tributaries. Louisiana is such a case because most of the flow for the Mississippi and

Red rivers is derived from import into the state. The USGS regression equations provide a relatively simple, standardized technique for estimating discharge; however, these equations are not appropriate for rivers with large watersheds, which are typically excluded from statistical analyses. Even for smaller watersheds, it can be difficult to obtain appropriate and comparable data for areas that lie outside of a state boundary.

Given these limitations, we used several different methods for estimating 7Q<sub>10</sub> based on a USGS report (Lee 1985a). For subunits having a gage station on the mainstem channel near the bottom of the subunit, we used actual 7Q<sub>10</sub> values if they were defined; 37 of the 124 subunits met the criterion. Values for two additional subunits were derived from graphs of 7Q<sub>10</sub> versus the drainage area of those two subunits (Lee 1985a).

For subunits without suitable gage stations, regression equations based on watershed area, precipitation, and channel slope were used if total watershed area was not more than 1,360 km<sup>2</sup> and if the watershed was not within a region of the state for which 7Q<sub>10</sub> was undefinable (Lee 1985a). The latter included the entire coast, which is subject to tidal influence, and portions of the Atchafalaya Basin, where channels have been modified by man and are interconnected. Ten additional subunits met these criteria, and low flow values were calculated using the regressions. Watershed area for these subunits was obtained by GIS from 1:250,000 USGS LULC maps; note that for

subunits where a portion of the watershed is outside the study area (e.g., a portion of the watershed for Subunit 705 is in Mississippi), the area of this outside portion must also be estimated. Precipitation was calculated by digitizing precipitation contours and prorating them to watershed units (Appendix F); channel slope was calculated in the same manner as in the Pearl River example.

Two additional subunits were located in a region of the state dominated by low flow values of zero; thus a zero value was assigned to these units. Low flow for the remaining 72 subunits — more than half of the state's subunits — is undefined, either because the subunit was located in an undefined portion of the state or because the subunit area was greater than 1,360 km<sup>2</sup>. This clearly illustrates the difficulty in attempting to define discharge for study subunits.

### **Map Interpretation**

Assume that a wetland restoration project has been proposed for compensatory mitigation and that the site is to be located on a parcel of land in Subunit 805 (Figure 4.5). To identify potential problems, the permit reviewer would first examine the synoptic maps to evaluate the subunit's relative replacement potential.

The maps for hydrologic integrity (Figure 4.6) and water quality (Figure 4.7) suggest that hydrology is relatively unimpaired and that water quality problems are not likely to cause stress. However, the relatively low proportion of non-wetland hydric soils (Figure 4.5) raises a red flag; overall, this subunit might not be suitable for wetland restoration projects. The permit reviewer should scrutinize the proposed site more carefully to determine the likelihood of successful restoration. This information could also be the basis for negotiating a project design that specifically addresses any soil problems, e.g., the applicant might be required to supply an appropriate substrate for the site.

If the decision is made to restore a wetland at the site, the three wetland function maps (Figures 4.8-4.10) can be used to help define restoration goals. For example, a function rated as low might be naturally unsuited to that area or unnecessary because of low landscape input, while a function with a high rating is already at an acceptable level; functions with intermediate ratings might benefit most from restoration. The map for hydrology (Figure 4.8) indicates intermediate levels of that function for Subunit 805, which suggests that wetlands might help alleviate low flows. In comparison, the map for water quality (Figure 4.9) shows low function; water quality improvement would be unnecessary in this area because pollutant loadings are low. Habitat function also ranks somewhat low (Figure 4.10), possibly indicating naturally low habitat function. Thus the reviewer might

initially focus on hydrologic function (base flow) as a goal for the site. The information from the synoptic maps can therefore be used as a screening tool; however, these initial findings should be confirmed with a site-specific evaluation, especially to assure that the restored wetland was designed in such a manner as to reduce low flow. The degree to which wetlands contribute to base flow is still unresolved (see Chapter 7). We do not mean to imply that wetlands do contribute to base flow in this region. This example merely illustrates how this information would be used if that were the case.

Unlike the Pearl River case study, the subunits in this case study were ranked and mapped based on quartiles. The Pearl River Basin has only five subunits, and an ordinal ranking of the units is easily understood. In a study area with as many units as Louisiana, grouping by quartiles conveniently depicts the relative rankings.

## **State of Washington**

In the next two case studies, we illustrate how synoptic assessments can be used for regional comparisons. We use results for the state of Washington to illustrate how this kind of information could support the development of a State Wetland Conservation Plan. We also introduce value and future risk as synoptic indices and demonstrate the use of weighting factors for combining components of an index.

### **Management Goal**

The purpose of the assessment is to provide information on future risk of valued habitat loss to identify habitat areas for protection as part of the development of a State Wetland Conservation Plan. In particular, habitat that supports rare, threatened, or endangered species is the value of interest in this case.

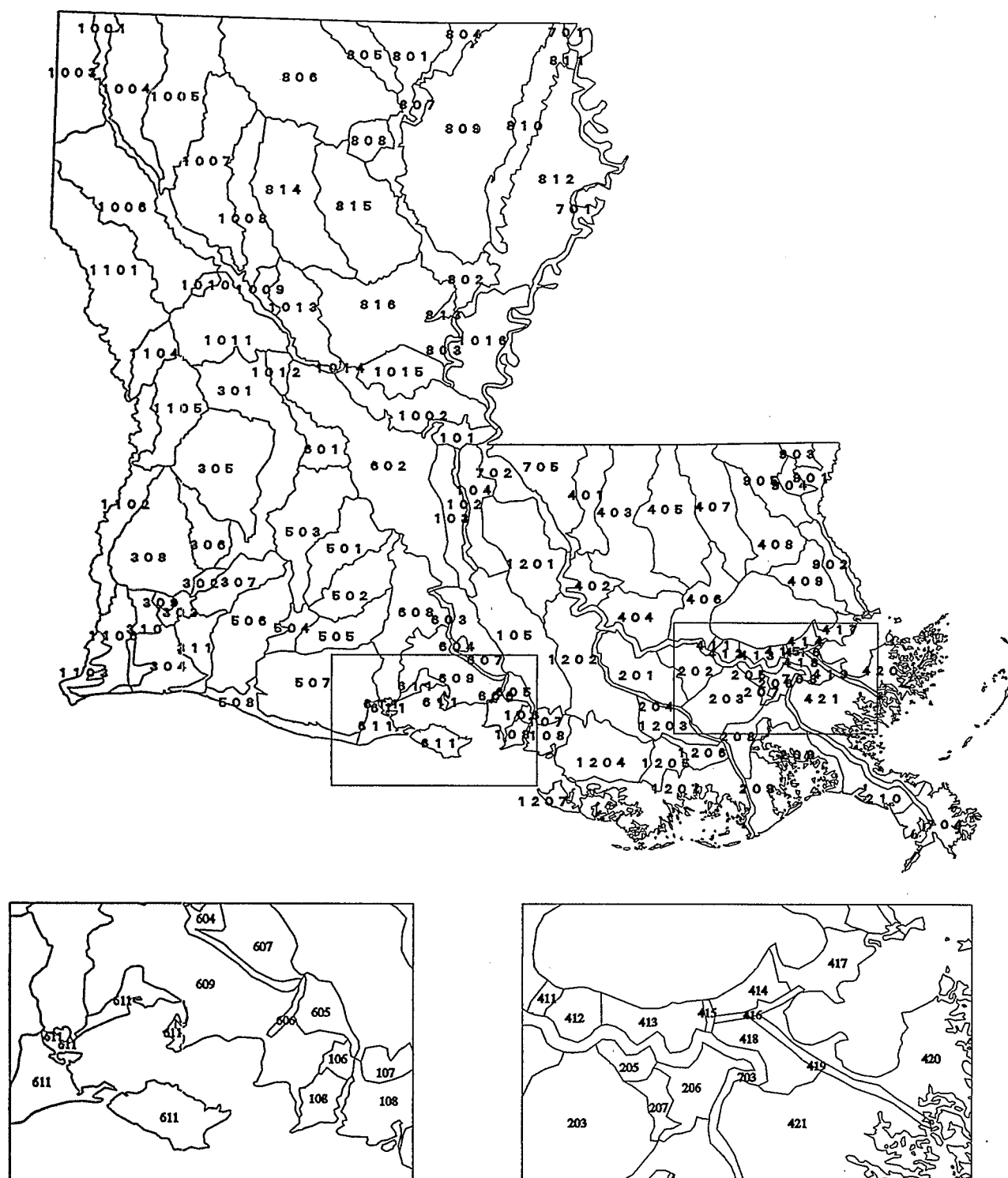
### **Wetland Types**

Washington contains a diversity of wetland types. These can be grouped according to the four regions in which they are found: the coastal plain, the Puget lowlands, the mountains, and the Columbia Basin (Winter 1990).

Within the coastal region, estuaries and salt marshes predominate. Freshwater emergent marshes, bogs, and freshwater swamps occur in the Puget lowlands. The primary wetland types in the northern mountains are kettlehole depressions and wet meadows; in other mountain regions, freshwater emergent and riparian wetlands are more abundant. Vernal pools, playas, and wet areas are found along intermittent streams in the arid east (Canning and Stevens 1989).

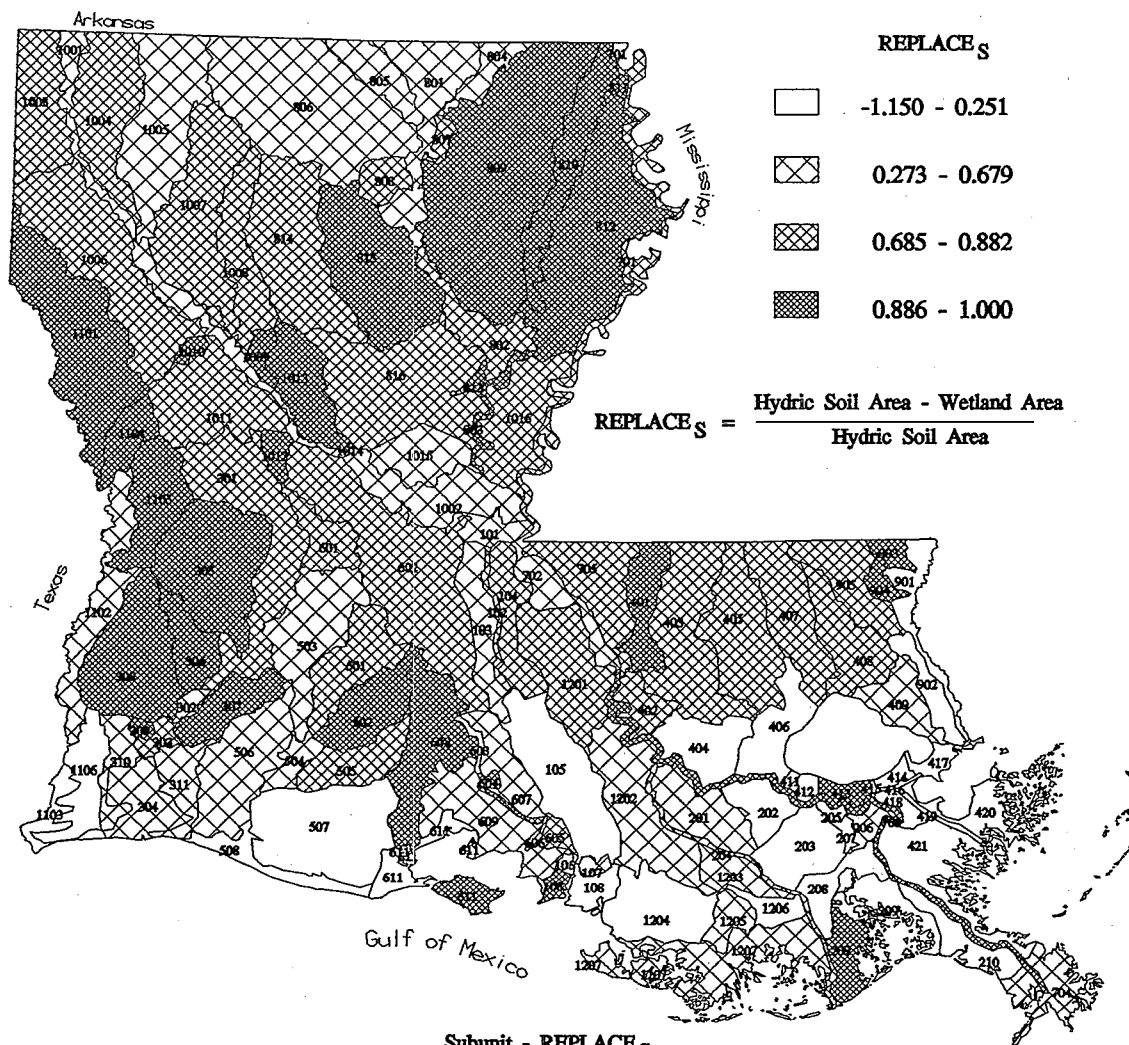
# LOUISIANA SUBUNIT INDEX

## WATER MANAGEMENT UNITS



**Figure 4.4.** The State of Louisiana and the 124 subunits. Subunits are Water Management Units as defined by the Louisiana Department of Environmental Quality.

# REPLACEMENT POTENTIAL - SOILS

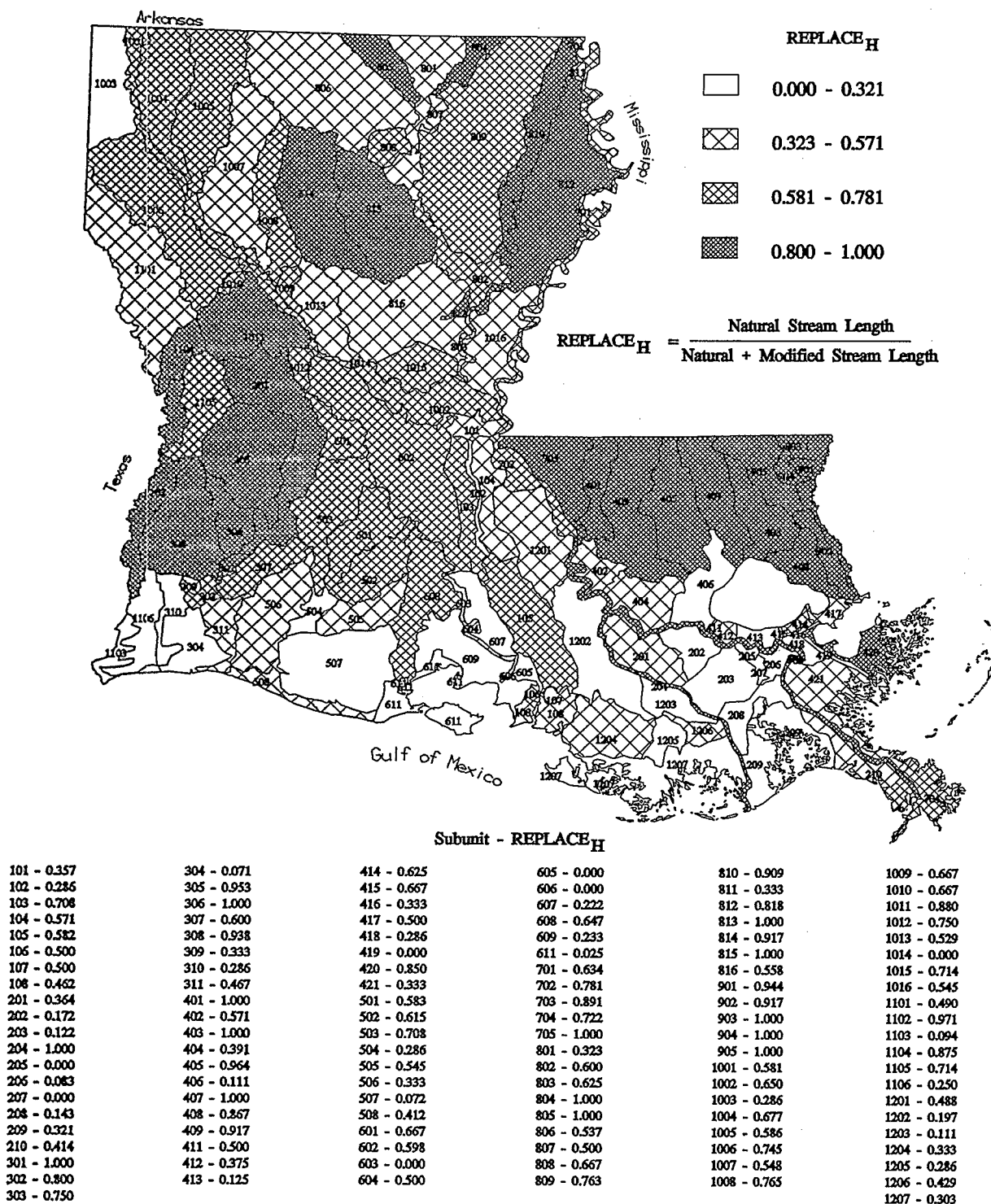


## Subunit - $REPLACES$

101 - 0.437	304 - 0.369	414 - 1.120	605 - 0.779	810 - 0.997	1009 - 0.900
102 - 0.865	305 - 0.898	415 - 0.000	606 - 0.602	811 - 0.948	1010 - 0.992
103 - 0.586	306 - 0.980	416 - 1.100	607 - 0.570	812 - 0.904	1011 - 0.773
104 - 0.771	307 - 0.896	417 - 1.290	608 - 0.934	813 - 0.980	1012 - 0.926
105 - 1.030	308 - 0.966	418 - 2.150	609 - 0.273	814 - 0.790	1013 - 0.922
106 - 0.214	309 - 0.968	419 - 1.730	611 - 1.010	815 - 0.931	1014 - 0.968
107 - 0.571	310 - 0.679	420 - 1.250	701 - 0.795	816 - 0.767	1015 - 0.314
108 - 0.099	311 - 0.406	421 - 1.580	702 - 0.447	901 - 1.140	1016 - 0.767
201 - 0.280	401 - 0.977	501 - 0.841	703 - 0.897	902 - 1.250	1101 - 0.898
202 - 0.098	402 - 0.846	502 - 0.936	704 - 0.362	903 - 0.997	1102 - 0.581
203 - 0.251	403 - 0.847	503 - 0.634	705 - 0.861	904 - 0.977	1103 - 1.080
204 - 0.787	404 - 0.018	504 - 0.640	801 - 0.481	905 - 0.854	1104 - 0.992
205 - 1.270	405 - 0.791	505 - 0.870	802 - 0.878	1001 - 0.674	1105 - 0.933
206 - 0.328	406 - 0.090	506 - 0.539	803 - 0.910	1002 - 0.644	1106 - 0.043
207 - 1.680	407 - 0.768	507 - 0.069	804 - 0.487	1003 - 0.856	1201 - 0.836
208 - 1.160	408 - 0.882	508 - 1.520	805 - 0.604	1004 - 0.743	1202 - 0.566
209 - 0.086	409 - 0.615	601 - 0.859	806 - 0.508	1005 - 0.542	1203 - 0.506
210 - 0.184	411 - 1.030	602 - 0.886	807 - 0.780	1006 - 0.870	1204 - 0.073
301 - 0.685	412 - 1.020	603 - 0.000	808 - 0.863	1007 - 0.746	1205 - 0.327
302 - 0.573	413 - 0.948	604 - 0.982	809 - 0.944	1008 - 0.843	1206 - 0.207
303 - 0.770					1207 - 0.337

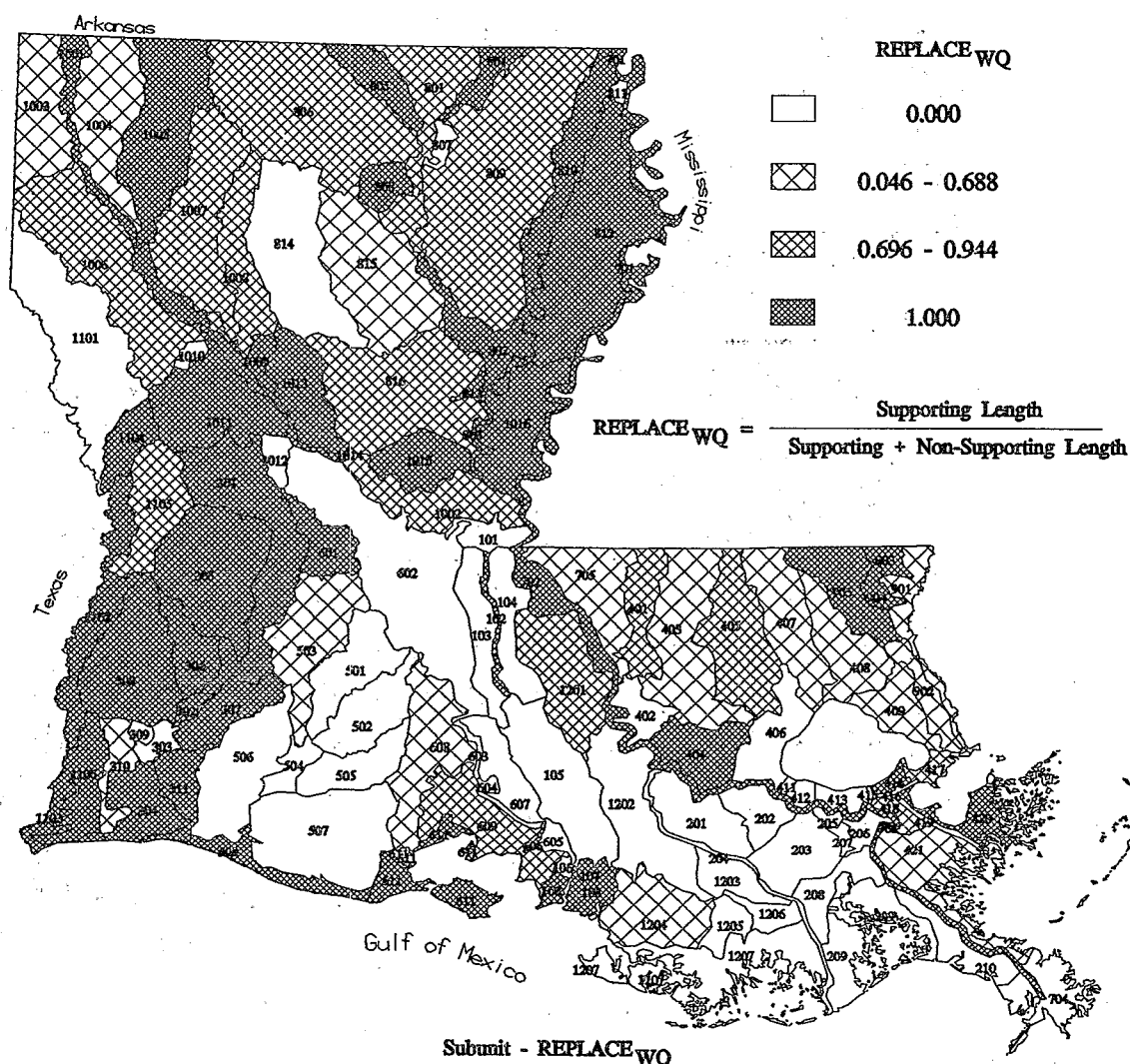
**Figure 4.5.** Replacement potential with respect to soils for Louisiana. Darker hatching corresponds to higher replacement potential. The variables included in the equation for  $REPLACES$  represent the landscape indicators, not components of the synoptic index (Equation 4.3).

# REPLACEMENT POTENTIAL - HYDROLOGY



**Figure 4.6.** Replacement potential with respect to hydrologic integrity for Louisiana. Darker hatching corresponds to higher replacement potential. The variables included in the equation for REPLACE<sub>H</sub> represent the landscape indicators, not components of the synoptic index (Equation 4.4).

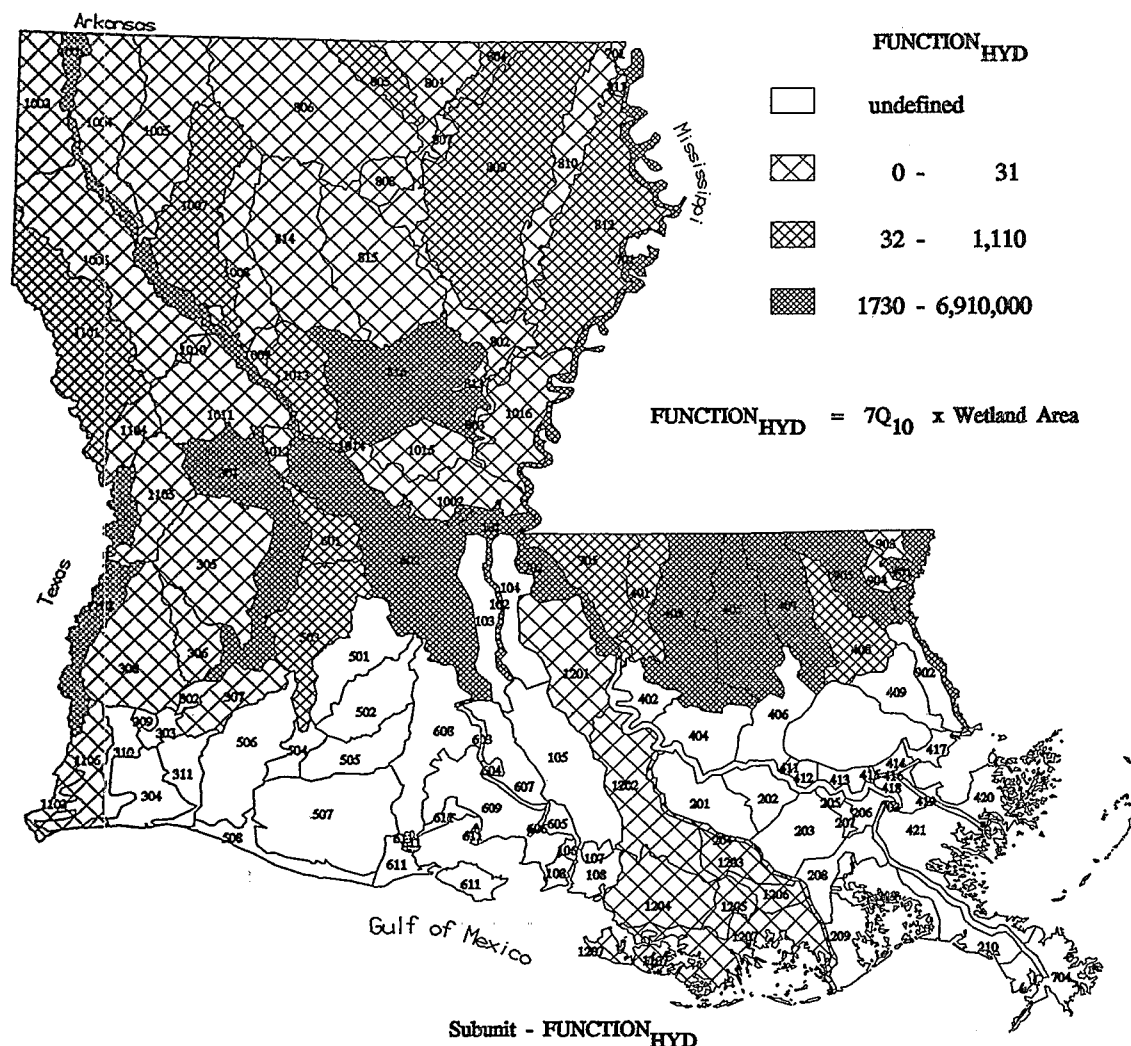
## REPLACEMENT POTENTIAL - WATER QUALITY



101 - 0.000	304 - 1.000	414 - 1.000	605 - 0.000	810 - 1.000	1009 - 1.000
102 - 1.000	305 - 1.000	415 - 0.000	606 - 1.000	811 - 0.000	1010 - 0.000
103 - 0.000	306 - 1.000	416 - 0.000	607 - 0.000	812 - 1.000	1011 - 1.000
104 - 0.000	307 - 1.000	417 - 0.786	608 - 0.156	813 - 1.000	1012 - 0.000
105 - 0.000	308 - 1.000	418 - 0.696	609 - 0.791	814 - 0.000	1013 - 1.000
106 - 0.000	309 - 0.000	419 - 0.000	611 - 1.000	815 - 0.423	1014 - 0.000
107 - 1.000	310 - 0.444	420 - 1.000	701 - 1.000	816 - 0.944	1015 - 1.000
108 - 1.000	311 - 1.000	421 - 0.500	702 - 1.000	901 - 0.460	1016 - 1.000
201 - 0.000	401 - 0.813	501 - 0.000	703 - 1.000	902 - 0.688	1101 - 0.000
202 - 0.000	402 - 0.000	502 - 0.000	704 - 0.000	903 - 1.000	1102 - 1.000
203 - 0.000	403 - 0.556	503 - 0.058	705 - 0.437	904 - 1.000	1103 - 1.000
204 - 0.000	404 - 1.000	504 - 0.000	801 - 0.944	905 - 1.000	1104 - 1.000
205 - 0.000	405 - 0.925	505 - 0.000	802 - 1.000	1001 - 1.000	1105 - 0.815
206 - 0.000	406 - 0.000	506 - 0.000	803 - 1.000	1002 - 0.824	1106 - 1.000
207 - 0.000	407 - 0.491	507 - 0.000	804 - 1.000	1003 - 0.582	1201 - 0.916
208 - 0.000	408 - 0.309	508 - 1.000	805 - 1.000	1004 - 0.637	1202 - 0.000
209 - 0.000	409 - 0.046	601 - 1.000	806 - 0.897	1005 - 1.000	1203 - 0.000
210 - 0.000	411 - 0.000	602 - 0.000	807 - 0.000	1006 - 0.821	1204 - 0.106
301 - 1.000	412 - 0.000	603 - 0.000	808 - 1.000	1007 - 0.720	1205 - 0.000
302 - 1.000	413 - 0.000	604 - 0.000	809 - 0.867	1008 - 0.941	1206 - 0.000
303 - 0.000					1207 - 0.000

**Figure 4.7.** Replacement potential with respect to water quality for Louisiana. Darker hatching corresponds to higher replacement potential. The variables included in the equation for REPLACE<sub>WQ</sub> represent the landscape indicators, not components of the synoptic index (Equation 4.5).

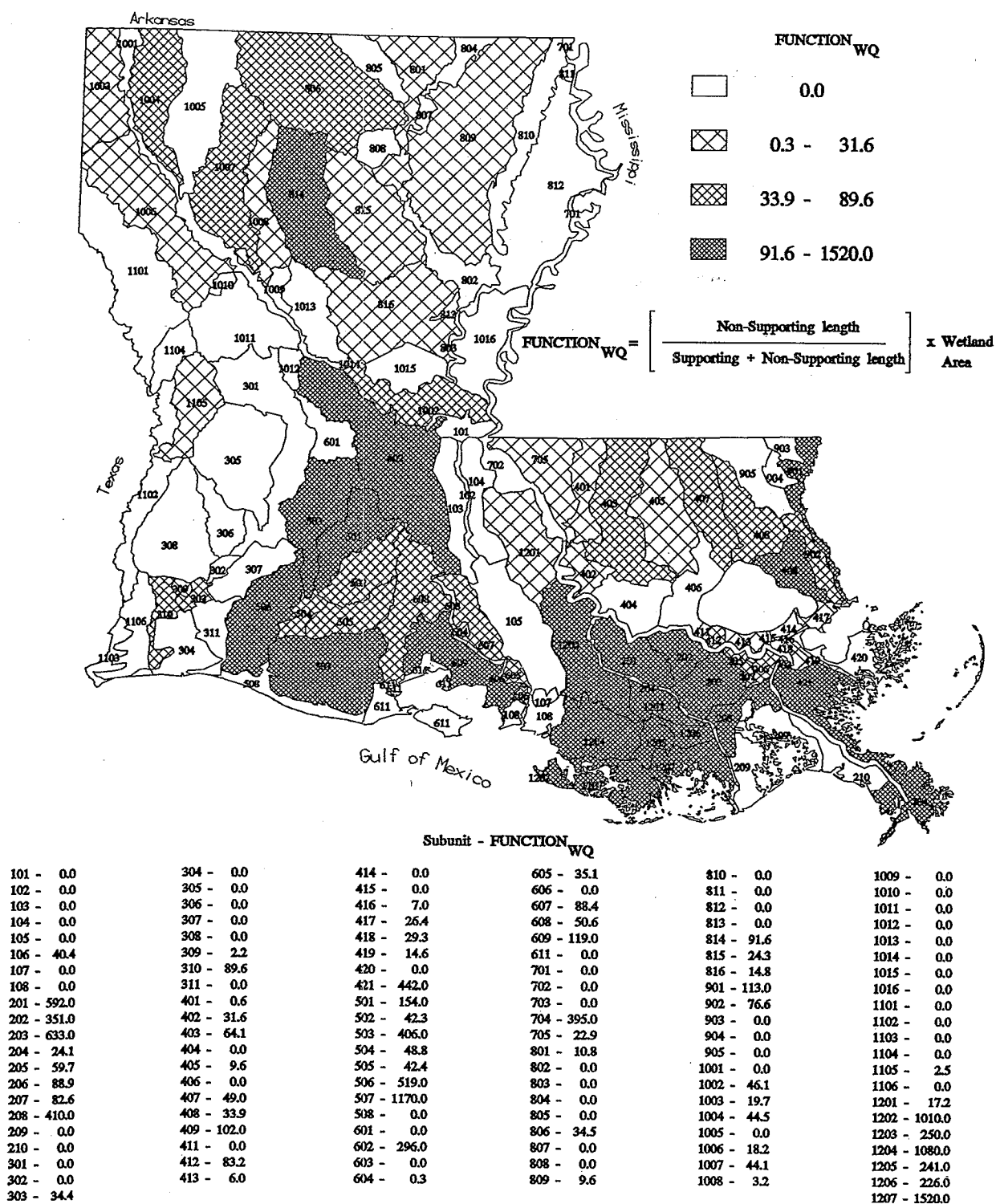
# HYDROLOGIC FUNCTION



101 - 710,000	304 - undefined	414 - undefined	605 - undefined	810 - undefined	1009 - 5
102 - 106,000	305 - undefined	415 - undefined	606 - undefined	811 - 5	1010 - undefined
103 - undefined	306 - 6	416 - undefined	607 - undefined	812 - 172	1011 - undefined
104 - undefined	307 - 15	417 - undefined	608 - undefined	813 - undefined	1012 - 8
105 - undefined	308 - 3	418 - undefined	609 - undefined	814 - 5	1013 - 439
106 - undefined	309 - undefined	419 - undefined	611 - undefined	815 - 24	1014 - undefined
107 - undefined	310 - undefined	420 - undefined	701 - 4,920,000	816 - 1,730	1015 - undefined
108 - undefined	311 - undefined	421 - undefined	702 - 6,910,000	901 - 115,000	1016 - undefined
201 - undefined	401 - 33	501 - undefined	703 - undefined	902 - undefined	1101 - 1,110
202 - undefined	402 - undefined	502 - undefined	704 - undefined	903 - 3	1102 - 35,600
203 - undefined	403 - 12,400	503 - 61	705 - 544	904 - 7	1103 - undefined
204 - 533	404 - undefined	504 - undefined	801 - undefined	905 - 6,810	1104 - 1
205 - undefined	405 - 2,720	505 - undefined	802 - undefined	1001 - 51,700	1105 - undefined
206 - undefined	406 - undefined	506 - undefined	803 - undefined	1002 - undefined	1106 - undefined
207 - undefined	407 - 7,740	507 - undefined	804 - 39	1003 - 21	1201 - undefined
208 - undefined	408 - 527	508 - undefined	805 - 41	1004 - undefined	1202 - undefined
209 - undefined	409 - undefined	601 - 574	806 - undefined	1005 - undefined	1203 - undefined
210 - undefined	411 - undefined	602 - 8,220	807 - undefined	1006 - undefined	1204 - undefined
301 - 17,500	412 - undefined	603 - undefined	808 - 32	1007 - 298	1205 - undefined
302 - undefined	413 - undefined	604 - undefined	809 - 388	1008 - 31	1206 - undefined
303 - undefined					1207 - undefined

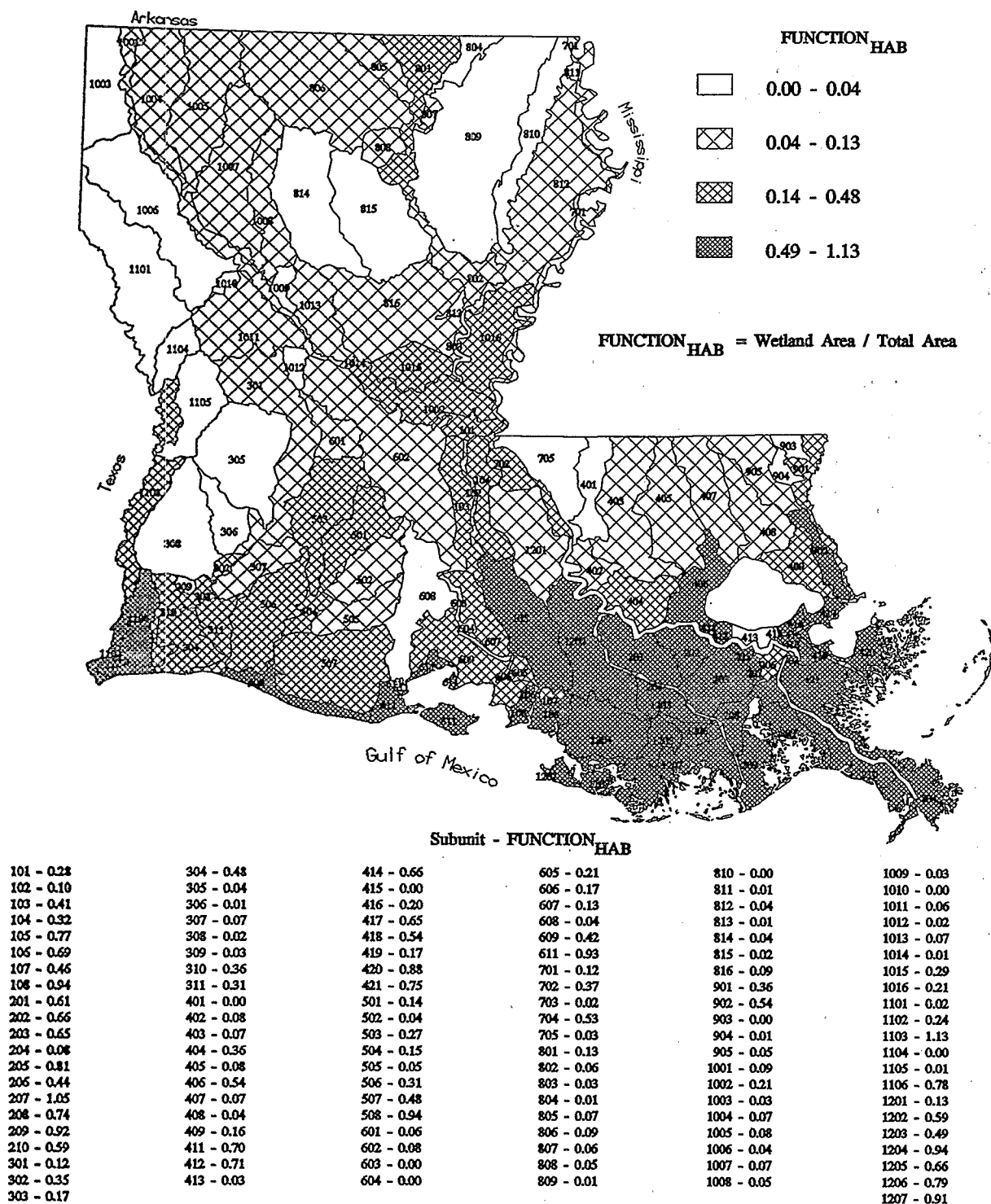
**Figure 4.8.** Hydrologic function for Louisiana. Darker hatching corresponds to higher hydrologic function. The variables included in the equation for FUNCTION<sub>HYD</sub> represent the landscape indicators, not components of the synoptic index (Equation 4.6).

# WATER QUALITY FUNCTION



**Figure 4.9.** Water quality function for Louisiana. Darker hatching corresponds to higher water quality function. The variables included in the equation for FUNCTION<sub>WQ</sub> represent the landscape indicators, not components of the synoptic index (Equation 4.7).

# HABITAT FUNCTION



**Figure 4.10.** Habitat function for Louisiana. Darker hatching corresponds to higher habitat function. The variables included in the equation for  $FUNCTION_{HAB}$  represent the landscape indicators, not components of the synoptic index (Equation 4.8).

## **Landscape Boundary and Subunits**

Washington is bordered on the north by the Olympic Mountains and Canada; on the northwest by Puget Sound; on the west by the Pacific Ocean; on the east by the Blue Mountains, the northern Rockies, and Idaho; and on the south by the Columbia River and Oregon. Subunits were defined using the state's 62 Water Resource Inventory Areas, which are based on natural drainages (Figure 4.11).

## **Natural Setting**

Climate and geomorphology are the most important determinants of wetland location and type in the state. Washington is divided by the Cascade Range into two distinct climatic regions: The west has a mild, wet, maritime climate, and the east has an arid continental climate. Precipitation ranges from 18 cm east of the Cascades to as much as 640 cm for the Olympic Mountains (Cummins et al. 1975).

Coastal and northwestern wetlands are influenced by high precipitation and cooler temperatures. Freeze and thaw cycles contribute to wetland formation in most of the alpine and subalpine regions.

In the Puget lowland, wetlands have developed on underlying gravel, silts, and clays deposited by Pleistocene glaciers (Franklin and Dyrness 1984). The large rivers of the lowlands periodically flood, creating wide floodplains with numerous riparian wetlands (Cummins et al. 1975).

Northern mountain wetlands were formed by receding glaciers that created kettlehole depressions, moraines, and outwash plains (Winter 1990).

Although low precipitation limits wetland density in eastern Washington, damaging floods caused by brief, intense thunderstorms occur during spring snow-

melt. Winds deposit loess soils from Canada in the Columbia Basin and create blowout depressions where playas and vernal pools form (Boling 1988).

## **Wetland Functions**

An estimated 359 of 414 wildlife species found in western Washington use wetland habitats during some season or part of their life cycle (Oakley et al. 1985). Washington wetlands play a major role in providing nesting and wintering grounds for the ducks, geese, and swans that use the Pacific Waterfowl Flyway. The ponds and potholes of central and eastern Washington produce one-half million ducks and geese annually and are essential for other wildlife in times of drought. Coastal wetlands provide critical habitat for millions of shorebirds, many species of game, and commercial species of fish and shellfish, which have an estimated value of \$1.1 billion annually.

## **Significant Impacts**

Loss of wetlands is the most important problem facing waterfowl and fur-bearing wildlife and is a limiting factor in maintaining wild anadromous fish populations (Canning and Stevens 1989). The variety of impacts that affects these wetlands corresponds to the diversity of regional land use. Coastal impacts include dredging for port development, filling for road construction and urban and industrial development, and drainage for agriculture.

Montane wetlands are less subject to conversion, but are impacted by vegetation removal, soil compaction, and sediment runoff from forestry, grazing, mining, and recreation.

Forestry and agriculture practices, filling for urban development, and pollution from increased urban stormwater runoff impact the Puget lowland wetlands.

**Table 4.3. Landscape indicators for the Washington case study.**

Index Component	Indicator
AREA <sub>c</sub> (current wetland area)	Area of wetland land cover, estimated with dot grid from 1:250,000 USGS LULC maps
ΔAGR (agricultural growth)	The percent annual change in agricultural area between 1972 and 1984, based on agricultural census data (U.S. Bureau of Census 1974, 1982a); prorated from county to subunit areas, and set to zero if subunit showed negative growth
A (subunit area)	Calculated by GIS from digitized subunits
ΔURB (urban growth)	The percent annual change in human population between 1970 and 1980, based on the U.S. Census (U.S. Bureau of Census 1972, 1982b); prorated from county to subunit areas, and set to zero if subunit showed negative growth
RF <sub>AGR</sub> (agricultural risk factor)	A factor of 87/95 is used, based on historical loss of national wetlands by agricultural conversion (Tiner 1984)
RF <sub>URB</sub> (urban risk factor)	A factor of 8/95 is used, based on historical loss of national wetlands by urban expansion (Tiner 1984)
RTE (number of rare, threatened, and endangered wetland-dependent species)	County RTE data from Washington Department of Wildlife (1990) and Washington Department of Natural Resources (1990), prorated to subunit areas (Appendix F)

Within the Columbia Basin, primary impacts are vegetation removal, trampling, nutrient loading from grazing, and excavation for energy development and mining (Canning and Stevens 1989).

### Synoptic Indices

The first index for this case study is habitat value. Because the management objective specifically focuses on rare, threatened, or endangered species, the index is weighted for subunits where these species occur:

$$\text{VALUE}_{\text{HAB}} = (\text{AREA}_C / A) \times \text{RTE}$$

Equation 4.9

where  $\text{VALUE}_{\text{HAB}}$  is the index for habitat value,  $\text{AREA}_C$  is current wetland area,  $A$  is the subunit area, and  $\text{RTE}$  is the number of rare, threatened, or endangered species within that subunit. The proportion of the state's rare, threatened, or endangered species occurring within the subunit could also be used as an index.  $\text{RTE}$  could have been divided by wetland density ( $\text{AREA}_C / A$ ) rather than multiplied; this is discussed further below.

The second index is future risk, which is based on a weighted estimate of agricultural and urban growth:

$$\text{RISK} = (\Delta\text{AGR} \times \text{RF}_{\text{AGR}}) + (\Delta\text{URB} \times \text{RF}_{\text{URB}})$$

Equation 4.10

where  $\text{RISK}$  is the synoptic risk index,  $\Delta\text{AGR}$  and  $\Delta\text{URB}$  are expected rates of agricultural and urban growth, respectively, and  $\text{RF}_{\text{AGR}}$  and  $\text{RF}_{\text{URB}}$  are risk factors for weighting the relative importance of these two impacts.

Finally, the third synoptic index is future loss of valued habitat with respect to rare, threatened, or endangered species ( $\text{LOSS}_F$ ). This index combines habitat value with future risk:

$$\text{LOSS}_F = \text{VALUE}_{\text{HAB}} \times \text{RISK}$$

Equation 4.11

### Landscape Indicators

Synoptic indicators for the Washington case study appear in Table 4.3. The use of rare, threatened, and endangered species assumes that the distribution of such species is uniform and that census taking is unbiased. These assumptions may not be entirely true because (1) census taking can be biased by more intense sampling of urban areas or accessible areas, e.g., near roads, and (2) prorating county rare, threatened, or endangered species data to subunit areas may be unrealistic, especially in counties with few species. For the latter, a better approach in a real application would be to map actual sighting data onto subunits, but these data are not always available.

More importantly, the index for habitat value assumes that it is dependent on the product of wetland density with the number of rare, threatened, or endangered species. This assumes that these species benefit from greater wetland densities; however, the most important wetlands for these species may be scarce wetlands (those that occur at low densities), in which case the density would be used as a divisor.

As an indicator of expected agricultural growth, we use the change in agricultural area from the most recent agricultural census data. Once this value was prorated, we then set any negative subunit values to zero because a loss of agricultural area would not necessarily equate to a gain of wetland area. For urban growth, we use human population as the indicator and calculate the value in a similar fashion.

The risk factors for weighting agricultural and urban growth are based on figures of 87% and 8% for nationwide historical loss of wetlands by agricultural conversion and urban expansion, respectively (Tiner 1984). Since we ignore the remaining 5%, the actual risk factors we use are 87/95 and 8/95 because this makes the sum of the factors one (Appendix H).

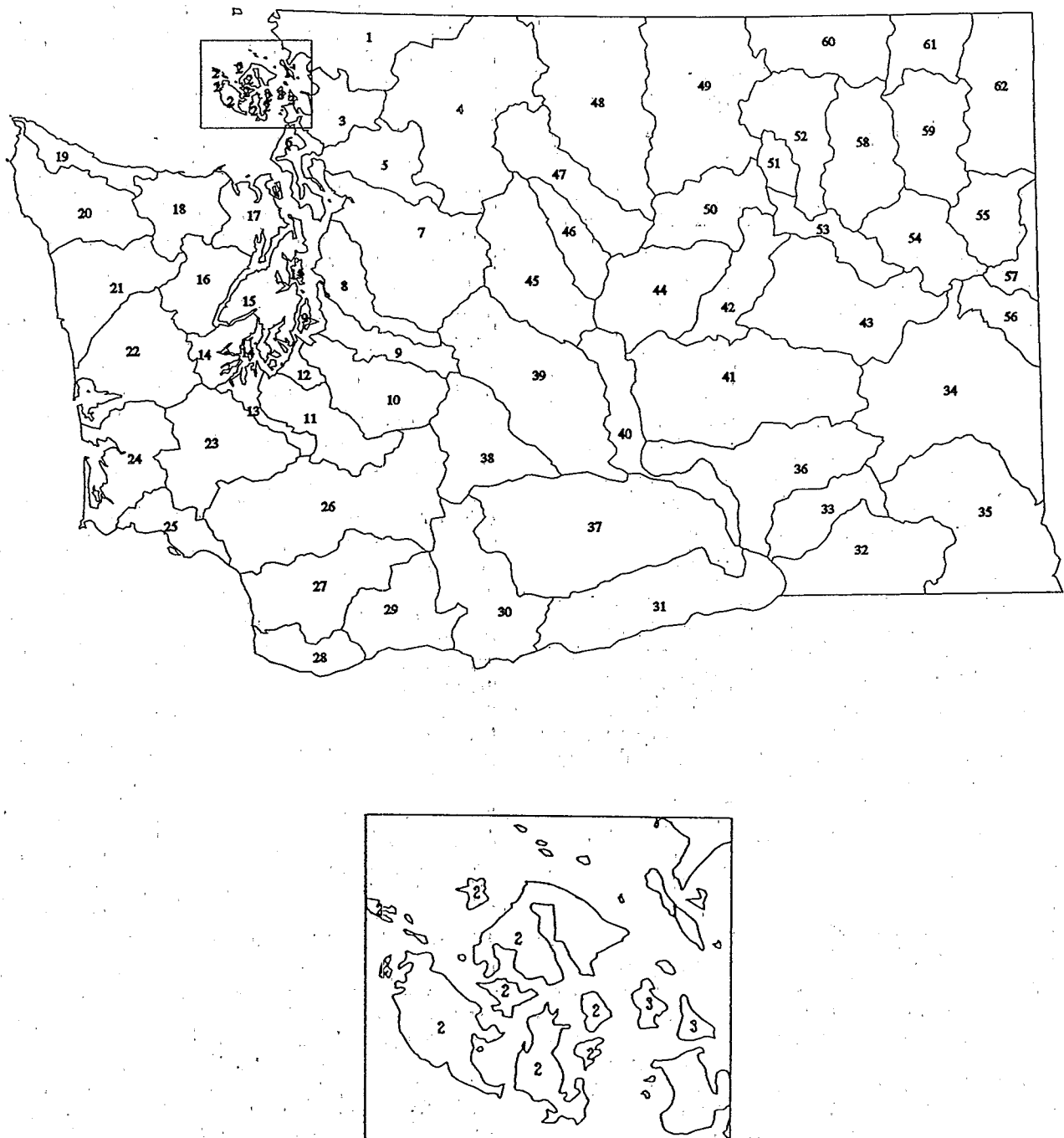
Use of the risk factor assumes that (1) agricultural and urban growth in the recent past are good indicators of their future growth, (2) future population growth rates are a good indicator of wetland loss from urban expansion, and (3) historical causes of national wetland loss will also be the important causes of future wetland loss in Washington. In addition, prorating county census data to subunits assumes that agriculture and population are uniformly distributed throughout the area. In some instances this is violated, especially where the populations of counties are clustered around large cities like Seattle. In a real application, data must be adjusted to account for this.

### Map Interpretation

The objective for this assessment is to provide information on future risk that can be used to identify habitat protection areas as part of a State Wetland Conservation Plan. The component maps of habitat value and future risk are shown in Figures 4.12 and 4.13 (class intervals for all Washington maps were selected by visual inspection and do not represent quartiles). Figure 4.13 provides planners with a quick overview of areas at risk from combined primary causes of wetland loss. If necessary for planning purposes, risk from agricultural conversion and urban expansion could be separated into two maps; this would indicate that risk from agricultural conversion is ubiquitous throughout the state, but population appears to be more of a threat in the Puget lowlands and along the coast. Combining habitat value and future risk, Figure 4.14 maps in darker hatching areas where future loss of habitat value is predicted to

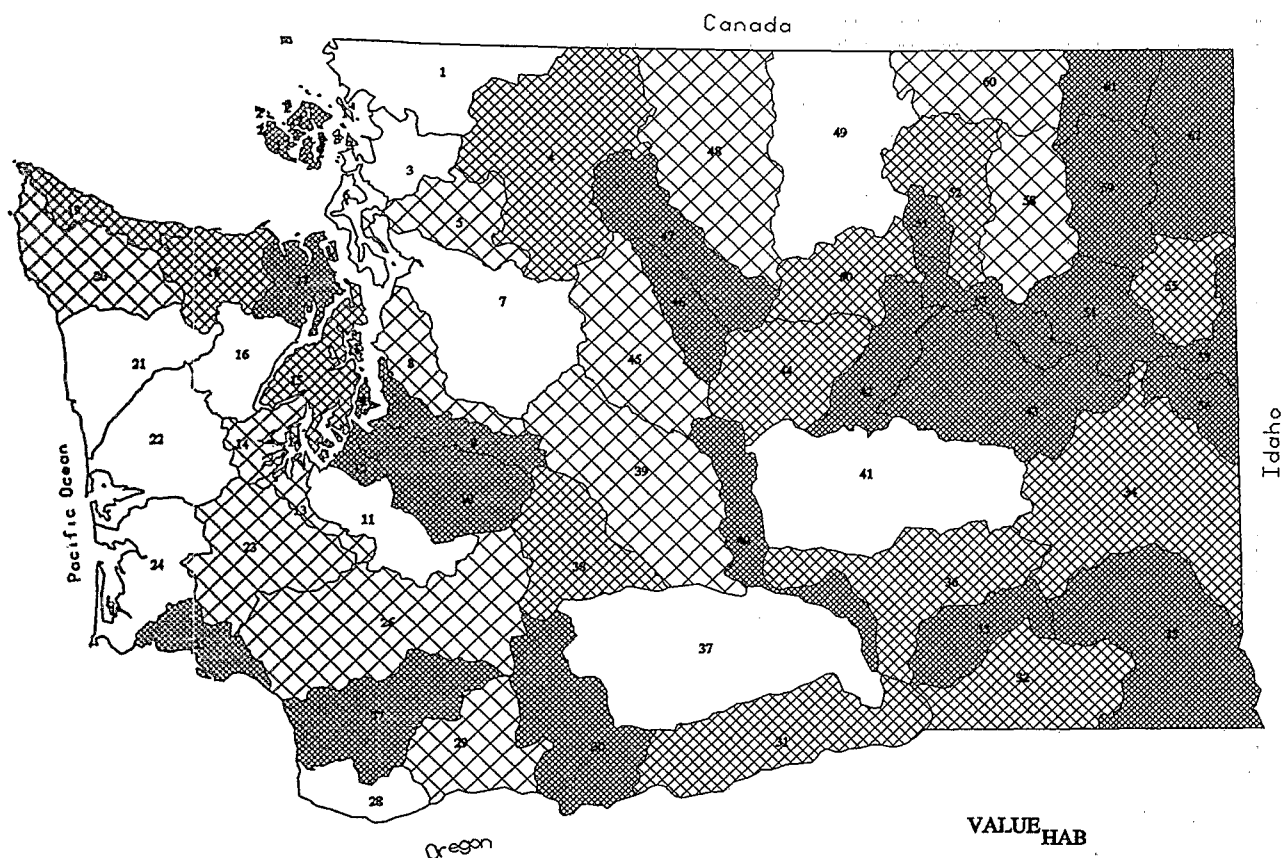
# WASHINGTON SUBUNIT INDEX

(Water Resource Inventory Areas)



**Figure 4.11.** The State of Washington and the 62 subunits. Subunits are Water Resource Inventory Areas.

# HABITAT VALUE



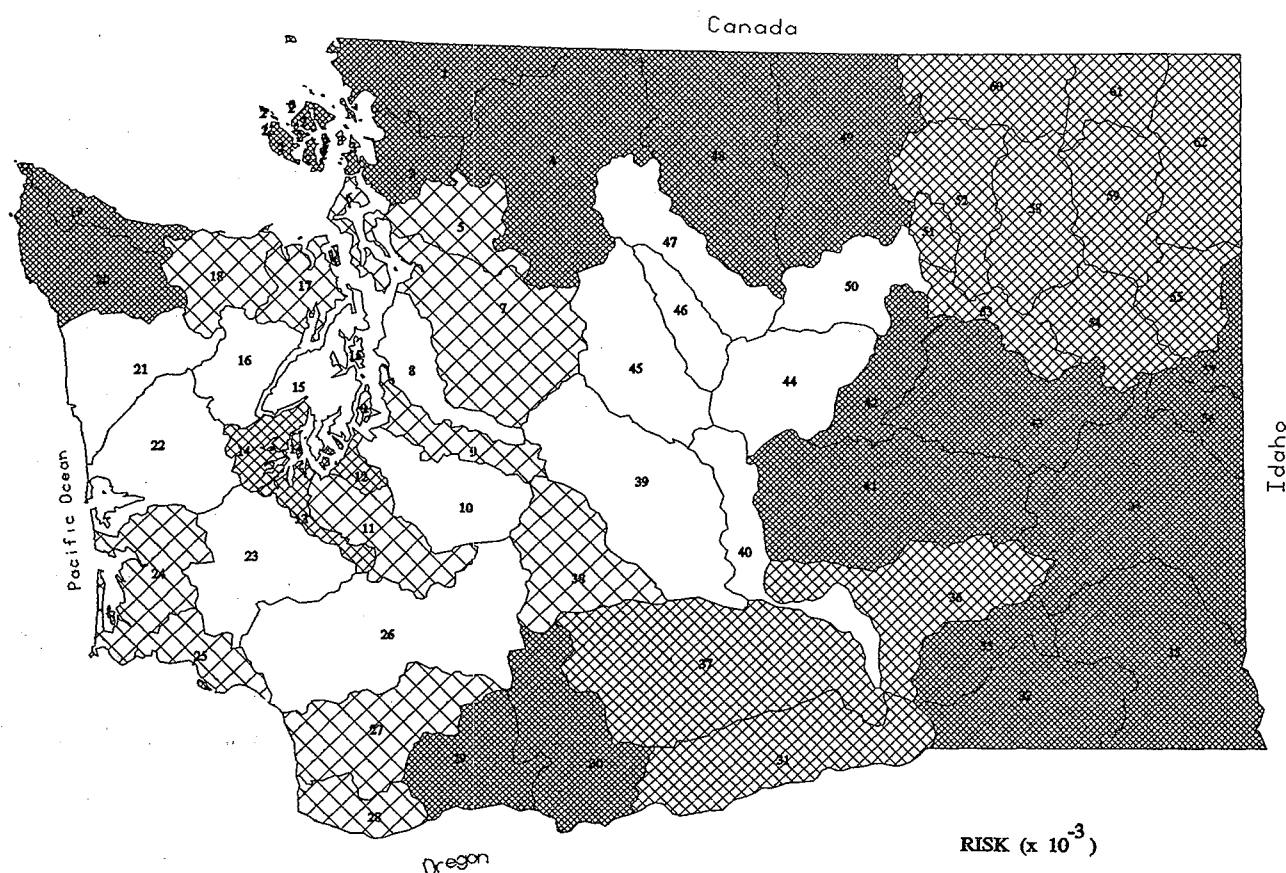
$$VALUE_{HAB} = \frac{\text{Wetland Area} \times \text{Number RTE Species}}{\text{Total Area}}$$

Subunit -  $VALUE_{HAB}$

1 - 0.081	12 - 0.000	22 - 0.145	32 - 0.010	42 - 0.000	52 - 0.008
2 - 0.000	13 - 0.046	23 - 0.029	33 - 0.000	43 - 0.000	53 - 0.000
3 - 0.302	14 - 0.050	24 - 0.157	34 - 0.010	44 - 0.009	54 - 0.000
4 - 0.005	15 - 0.013	25 - 0.000	35 - 0.000	45 - 0.035	55 - 0.015
5 - 0.037	16 - 0.061	26 - 0.024	36 - 0.011	46 - 0.000	56 - 0.000
6 - 0.088	17 - 0.000	27 - 0.000	37 - 0.130	47 - 0.000	57 - 0.000
7 - 0.060	18 - 0.009	28 - 0.226	38 - 0.013	48 - 0.025	58 - 0.029
8 - 0.043	19 - 0.013	29 - 0.022	39 - 0.052	49 - 0.108	59 - 0.000
9 - 0.000	20 - 0.032	30 - 0.000	40 - 0.000	50 - 0.016	60 - 0.030
10 - 0.000	21 - 0.137	31 - 0.011	41 - 0.120	51 - 0.000	61 - 0.000
11 - 0.071					62 - 0.000

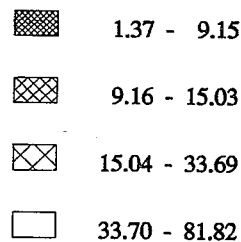
Figure 4.12. Habitat value for Washington. Darker hatching corresponds to higher habitat value. The variables included in the equation for  $VALUE_{HAB}$  represent the landscape indicator, not components of the synoptic index (Equation 4.9).

# FUTURE RISK



$$\text{RISK} = \% \text{ Weighted Annual Pop. Change} + \% \text{ Weighted Annual Agr. Change}$$

RISK ( $\times 10^{-3}$ )

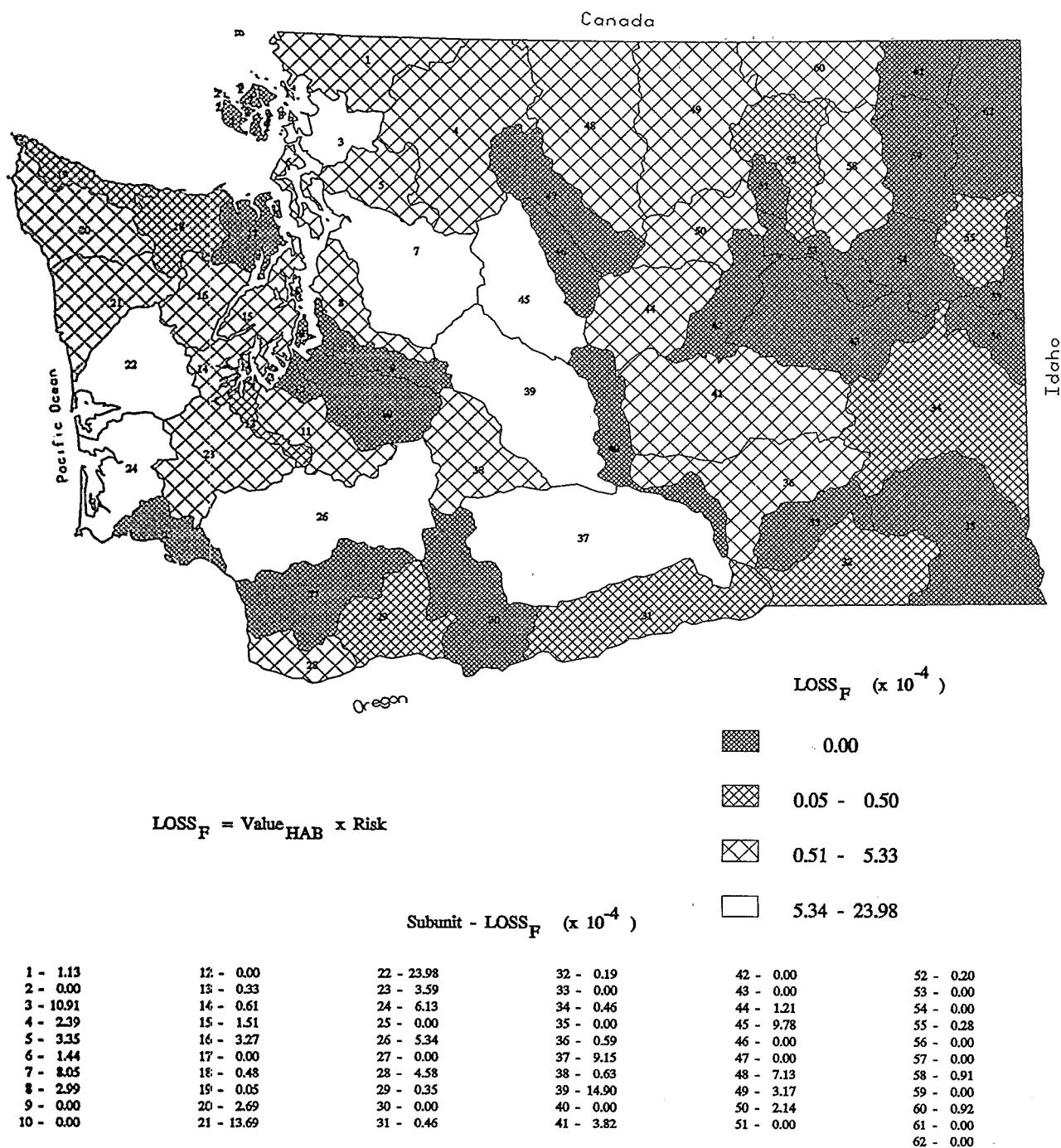


Subunit - RISK ( $\times 10^{-3}$ )

1 - 4.43	12 - 14.17	22 - 48.99	32 - 5.54	42 - 4.12	52 - 9.18
2 - 8.69	13 - 10.09	23 - 36.84	33 - 8.55	43 - 3.83	53 - 13.31
3 - 25.17	14 - 11.95	24 - 15.89	34 - 6.31	44 - 43.02	54 - 12.18
4 - 75.97	15 - 67.34	25 - 27.47	35 - 1.37	45 - 77.29	55 - 10.76
5 - 32.70	16 - 33.70	26 - 34.14	36 - 11.98	46 - 49.84	56 - 2.08
6 - 29.90	17 - 27.86	27 - 27.67	37 - 9.37	47 - 81.82	57 - 5.16
7 - 27.43	18 - 27.86	28 - 17.93	38 - 16.71	48 - 52.22	58 - 10.93
8 - 43.39	19 - 4.08	29 - 7.14	39 - 51.72	49 - 5.42	59 - 14.13
9 - 17.84	20 - 27.86	30 - 9.09	40 - 34.97	50 - 59.94	60 - 12.11
10 - 33.81	21 - 33.70	31 - 10.42	41 - 4.87	51 - 13.66	61 - 14.13
11 - 24.26					62 - 9.16

**Figure 4.13.** Future risk for Washington. Darker hatching corresponds to lower future risk. The variables included in the equation for RISK represent the landscape indicator, not components of the synoptic index (Equation 4.10).

## FUTURE RISK - HABITAT



**Figure 4.14.** Future risk of habitat loss for Washington. Darker hatching corresponds to lower future habitat loss. The variables included in the equation for  $LOSS_F$  represent the landscape indicator, not components of the synoptic index (Equation 4.11).

be low. This category includes subunits that have low risk, low habitat value, or both; note that future loss of value cannot occur in subunits that have low value.

As an alternative to defining future habitat loss as the product of value and risk (Equation 4.11), subunits could be numerically ranked and categories of future loss could be defined by specific criteria. The following example provides three possible categories:

- High future loss – subunits where habitat value and future risk are both ranked in the upper third (subunits 5, 16, 20-23, 26, 39, 45, and 48);
- Low future loss – subunits where habitat value and future risk are both ranked in the lower third (subunits 2, 30, 33, 35, 42, 43, 56, 57, 62);
- Intermediate future loss – the remaining 43 subunits.

Given these categories and the goal of identifying habitat protection areas, priority areas for conservation should be subunits in the first category because they represent areas with the greatest amount of habitat value subject to the greatest risk. Wetland managers might want to adopt county- or basin-wide conservation plans in these areas. Wetlands in the second category are of low function and are not at risk and therefore would be the lowest priority for habitat protection. Within the intermediate areas, protection is not an immediate necessity because areas either are not at risk or have low value; the state might adopt a "wait and see" attitude for subunits in the intermediate category until risks begin to change. However, conservation approaches might be important in these subunits on an ad-hoc basis in cases where high habitat value occurs locally.

## State of Illinois

While the previous three studies made use of data generally available throughout much of the United States, the Illinois case study illustrates the use of better information available in some areas. However, the data were obtained from an ongoing study that selected areas based on specific criteria; the entire state is not included.

## Management Goal

The objective in this example is to develop synoptic maps that can be used to rank subunits for restoration according to the potential for water quality improvements. Specifically, the resource manager is interested in identifying areas where riparian wetland restoration would provide the greatest benefit from reduced nitrogen levels to human water supply and to non-degraded fish communities.

## Wetland Types

Forested wetlands and wet meadows are the most common wetland types in Illinois. They generally occur in close association with river systems. Swamps occur in the southernmost portion of the state.

## Landscape Boundary and Subunits

Illinois is bordered by the Mississippi River to the west, the Ohio River to the southeast, the Wabash and White rivers to the east, and Lake Michigan to the northeast. The state has an area of 144,120 km<sup>2</sup> and encompasses 18 principal river basins, each with numerous tributaries. However, this case study addresses a subset of 90 subunits included in an investigation into the landscape function of Illinois wetlands that is being conducted by the Wetlands Research Program. USGS stream gage stations that met specific criteria on data availability and lack of hydrologic modifications or pollutant discharges were identified. Once the monitoring stations were selected, the boundary of their drainage area was determined from topographic maps. These subunits represent natural watersheds, each having a drainage area less than 3,750 km<sup>2</sup> (Figure 4.15).

## Natural Setting

Geologic and climatic factors are driving forces affecting wetlands that were formed by glaciers in northeast and east central Illinois and by rivers throughout the state (Bell 1981). Illinois is characterized by low relief, with elevations ranging from 90 to 300 m. The climate is humid continental with hot, moist summers and cold, drier winters. Annual precipitation averages between 80 and 120 cm and is concentrated in the summer months. Illinois is considered a "water excess" state: It is surrounded by freshwater, supports an impressive network of rivers, and has an abundance of groundwater (Neely and Heister 1987). Tornadoes, hailstorms, and flooding are naturally occurring environmental disturbances.

Wetlands are found along the banks of glacially formed lakes or depressions where water has accumulated. Wetlands are also created and controlled by the meandering and flooding of major river channels like the upper Mississippi and the Ohio (Bell 1981). The natural vegetation of the state is oak-savanna in the north, which changes to a mixture of bluestem prairie and oak-hickory forest in the central part of the state, and oak-hickory and cypress swamps in the south.

## Wetland Functions

The historic wetlands of Illinois provided habitat for many wetland-dependent species. The remaining wetlands are used by waterfowl for feeding, breeding, and resting areas. The swamps of southern Illinois support

**Table 4.4. Landscape indicators for the Illinois case study.**

Index Component	Indicator
CAPACITY <sub>RPN</sub> (water quality capacity of riparian wetlands)	Area of all wetlands within a stream buffer of 150 m (75 m per side); stream buffers defined by GIS from 1:100,000 USGS Digital Line Graph data and overlaid with wetland area from digital 1:24,000 National Wetland Inventory coverages
INPUT <sub>N</sub> (nitrogen loading rates into riparian wetlands)	Mean nitrate+nitrite loadings (mg/s) at USGS water quality stations for 1978-1987; calculated as the product of mean concentration (mg/l) and discharge (l/s)
HUMAN (human beneficiaries of water quality)	Human population in 1980, based on the U.S. Census (U.S. Bureau of Census 1982b); prorated from county to subunit areas
FISH (valued fish populations)	Fish Index of Biotic Integrity values based on state surveys (IEPA 1990)
AREA <sub>H</sub> (riparian hydric soil area)	Area of hydric soils within 150 m stream buffer (as defined above), estimated by GIS from digital soil association maps; associations classified as hydric based on whether component soil series were predominantly hydric, as identified by SCS (1987)
AREA <sub>W</sub> (current riparian wetland area)	Same as CAPACITY <sub>RPN</sub> above

stands of cypress and tupelo and a variety of endangered or threatened plants and animals. Marshes and wet prairies in northeastern Illinois provide habitat for several endangered birds. Bald eagles and river otters reside in wetlands along the Mississippi River. State-wide, wetlands provide habitat for 40% of the state's endangered plant and animal species.

### Significant Impacts

Activities associated with agriculture and livestock production, which account for more than 80% of the state's land use, have had the greatest impact on wetlands. Historically, 85% of Illinois wetlands have been destroyed (Dahl 1990); most of this loss has resulted from agricultural drainage. Conversion of wetlands to agriculture has the double effect of adding a nutrient source by replacing a nutrient sink. Stream channelization and trampling by livestock are other causes of degradation. Urban expansion is an increasingly significant cause of wetland loss, especially near the Chicago metropolitan area.

Agricultural runoff containing fertilizers, herbicides, and insecticides can degrade wetland water quality. Crop cultivation on slopes can cause sedimentation and increased water turbidity, especially in areas having loessal soils (Omernik et al. 1981). Oil and gas extraction and strip mining for coal also degrade water quality, especially in southern and western Illinois.

### Synoptic Indices

The first synoptic index defined for this case study is an index of water quality function. It specifically addresses the role of riparian wetlands in reducing nitrogen concentrations:

$$\text{FUNCTION}_{\text{WQ}} = \text{CAPACITY}_{\text{RPN}} \times \text{INPUT}_{\text{N}} \quad \text{Equation 4.12}$$

where FUNCTION<sub>WQ</sub> is the water quality function of riparian wetlands, CAPACITY<sub>RPN</sub> is the capacity of riparian wetlands with respect to nitrogen reduction, and INPUT<sub>N</sub> is the loading of nitrogen into these wetlands. Next, we define two indices of value based on the benefits of this water quality function for human water supplies, VALUE<sub>H</sub>, and for valued fish communities, VALUE<sub>F</sub>:

$$\text{VALUE}_{\text{H}} = \text{FUNCTION}_{\text{WQ}} \times \text{HUMAN} \quad \text{Equation 4.13}$$

$$\text{VALUE}_{\text{F}} = \text{FUNCTION}_{\text{WQ}} \times \text{FISH} \quad \text{Equation 4.14}$$

where HUMAN represents the human beneficiaries of this water quality function, and FISH represents populations of valued fish communities, i.e., those that have not been degraded by impacts.

For replacement potential, use the same index used in the Louisiana case study for soils (Equation 4.3) except that it is limited to riparian wetlands.

$$\text{REPLACE}_{\text{S}} = (\text{AREA}_{\text{H}} - \text{AREA}_{\text{W}}) / \text{AREA}_{\text{H}} \quad \text{Equation 4.15}$$

### Landscape Indicators

Table 4.4 contains a list of landscape indicators for the Illinois case study. Wetland areas were measured from 1:24,000 digital NWI maps instead of the 1:250,000 LULC maps used in the previous case studies. The NWI maps have a one-tenth hectare resolution and represent the best existing statewide digital wetland data. For the indicator of water quality function, we assumed that reduction in nitrogen loadings by existing wetlands is related to the product of riparian

wetland area, i.e., wetlands occurring within a 150 m river buffer (75 m per side), and stream nitrate+nitrite levels, as derived from USGS water quality monitoring data.

We estimated the value of water quality for human water supply by multiplying water quality function by 1980 population; this, therefore, assumes that the entire population of a subunit benefits from water quality improvement and that stream water is either the major source of water or is an adequate indicator of overall water quality. For fish, we used the Index of Biotic Integrity (IBI) to define non-degraded fish communities (IEPA 1990). The IBI is an index of fish species richness, composition, abundance, condition, and trophic composition (Karr 1981); high IBI values are associated with less degraded conditions.

The indicator for replacement potential was similar to that used in the Louisiana case study for determining non-wetland hydric soils (REPLACE<sub>s</sub>,

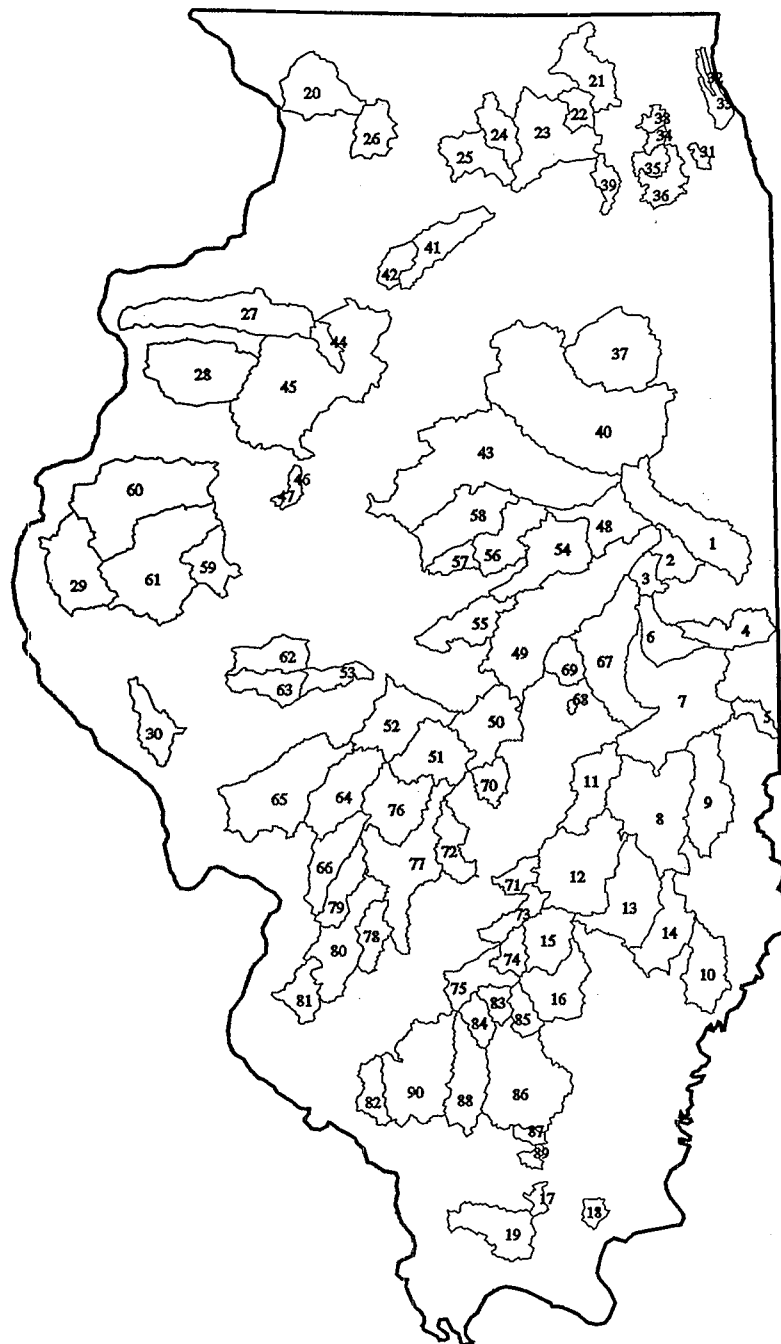
- Areas were limited to the riparian buffer,
- Wetland area was estimated using 1:24,000 NWI maps, and
- Area of hydric soils was based on a digital soil association map rather than on dot count estimates from soil series maps.

### **Map Interpretation**

Figure 4.16 shows water quality function with respect to riparian wetlands and nitrate+nitrite levels (class intervals for all Illinois maps were selected by visual inspection, as in the Washington case study). A planner could use this map to target restoration in subunits having intermediate water quality function, since these areas are already somewhat functional and could benefit from additional wetlands. However, those subunits might not be located where nitrogen reduction would be of greatest value. Thus the maps of value with respect to humans (Figure 4.17) and fish communities (Figure 4.18) can be used to optimize for both function and value. For example, human populations in the greater Chicago metropolitan area could benefit most from improved water quality (Figure 4.17).

The original management objective was to assign priority to subunits for wetland restoration; although the preceding maps identify areas that could benefit most from increased water quality function, the assessment does not take into account whether restoration would be successful. It is also important to screen the subunits for replacement potential, i.e., large proportions of non-wetland hydric soils (Figure 4.19). This map can then be compared to the water quality value maps to focus restoration efforts on watersheds where soil conditions are most favorable for establishment of wetlands. Given Figures 4.17-4.19, a planner could screen the state for subunits that best meet the management objectives. For example, units 1 and 58 would be good candidate areas for locating restoration projects.

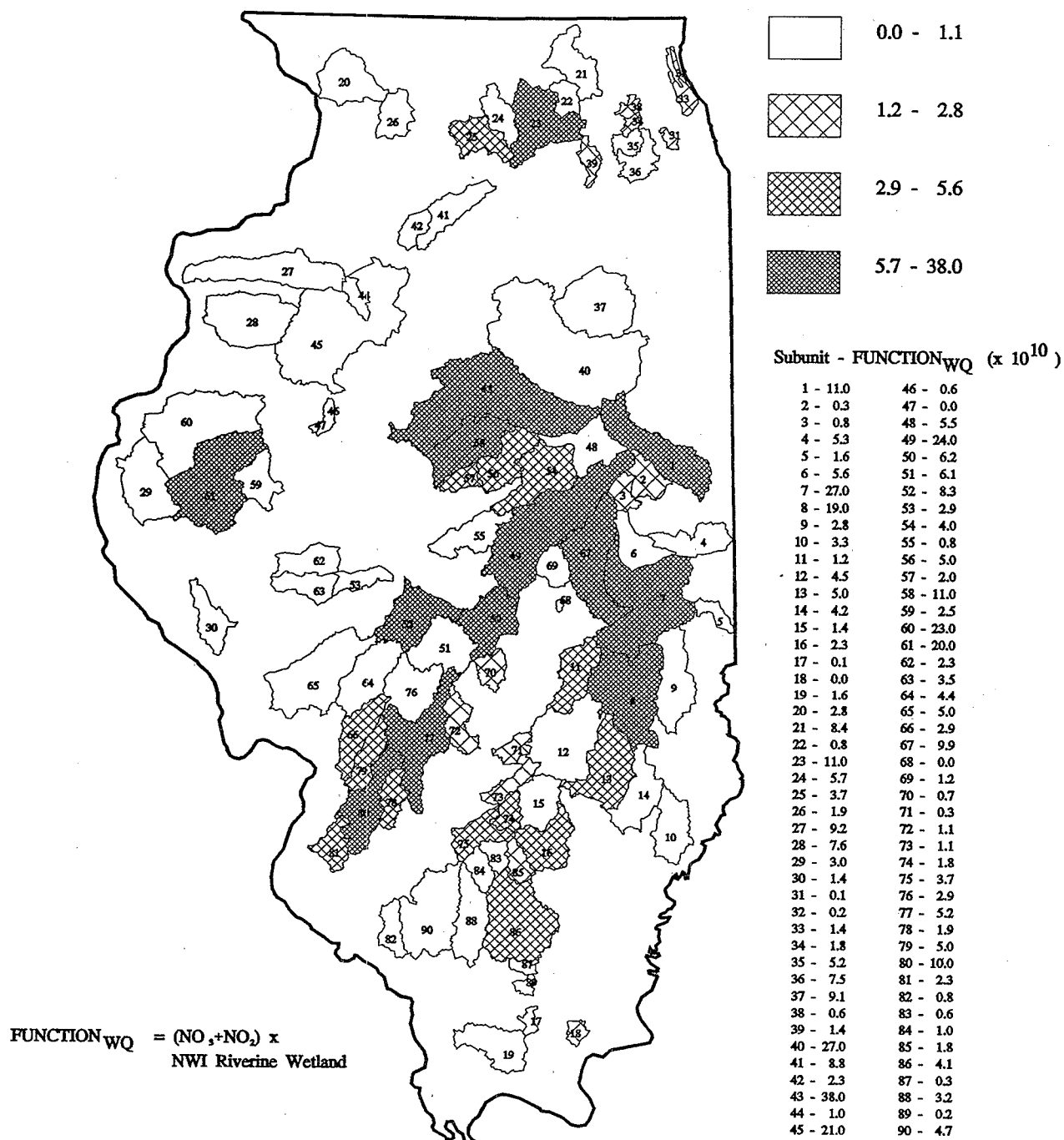
## ILLINOIS SUBUNIT INDEX (Natural Watersheds)



**Figure 4.15.** The State of Illinois and the 90 subunits. Subunits are natural watersheds defined around USGS gage stations.

# WATER QUALITY FUNCTION

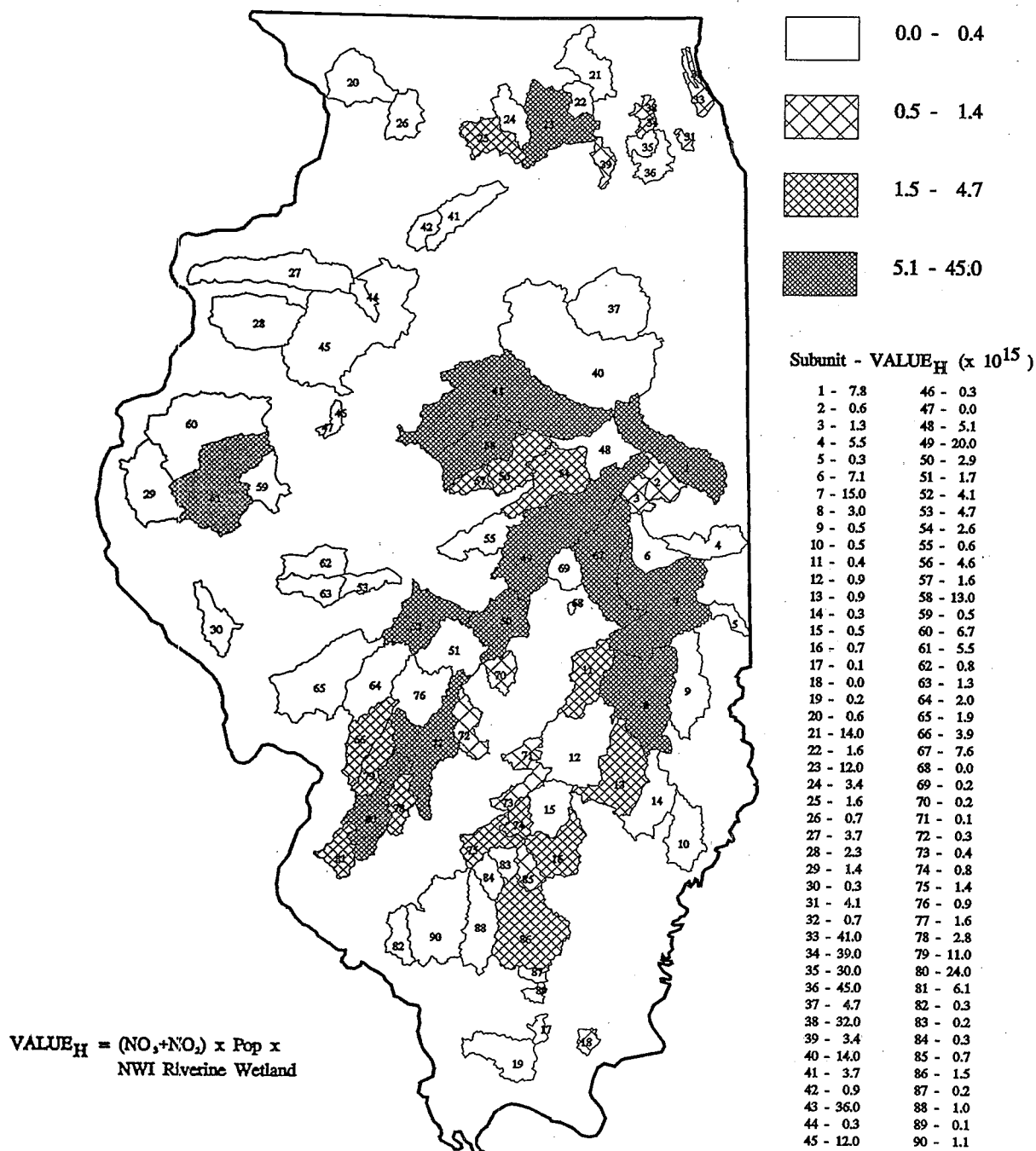
FUNCTION<sub>WQ</sub> ( $\times 10^{10}$ )



**Figure 4.16.** Water quality function for Illinois. Darker hatching corresponds to higher water quality function. The variables included in the equation for FUNCTION<sub>WQ</sub> represent the landscape indicator, not components of the synoptic index (Equation 4.2).

# WATER QUALITY VALUE - HUMAN POPULATION

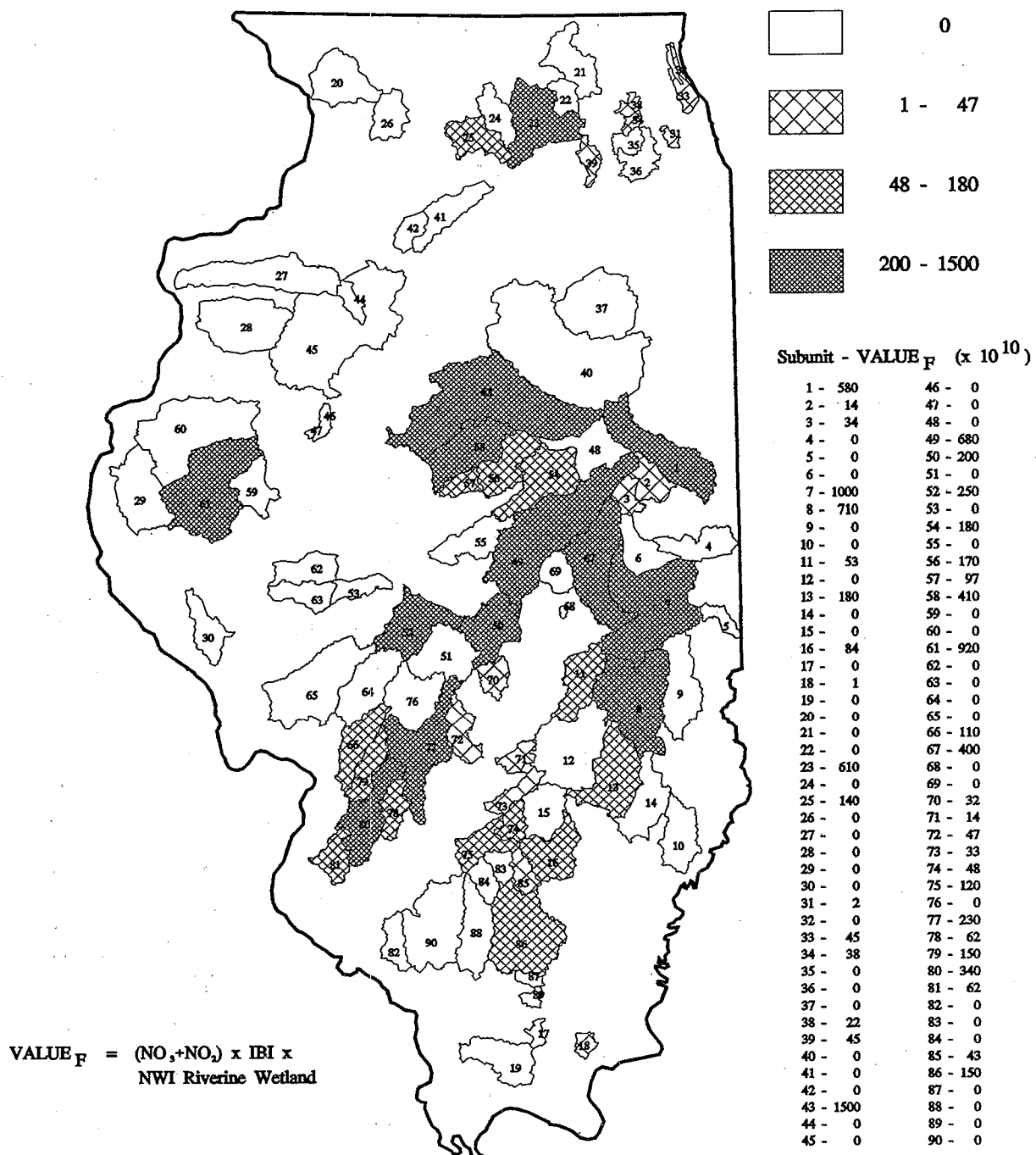
VALUE<sub>H</sub> (x 10<sup>15</sup>)



**Figure 4.17.** Water quality value with respect to humans for Illinois. Darker hatching corresponds to higher water quality value. The variables included in the equation for VALUE<sub>H</sub> represent the landscape indicator, not components of the synoptic index (Equation 4.13).

# WATER QUALITY VALUE - FISH

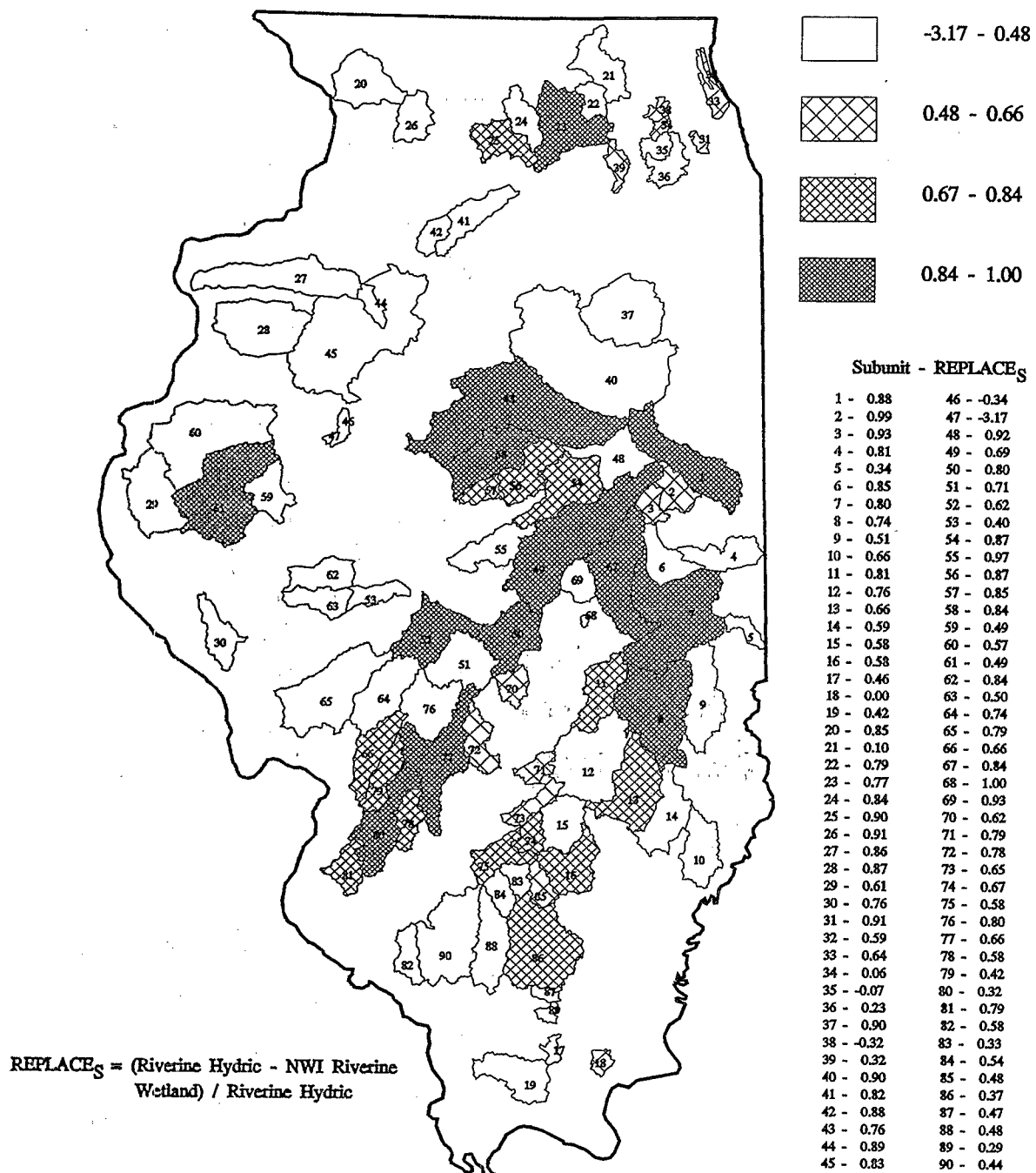
VALUE<sub>F</sub> (x 10<sup>10</sup>)



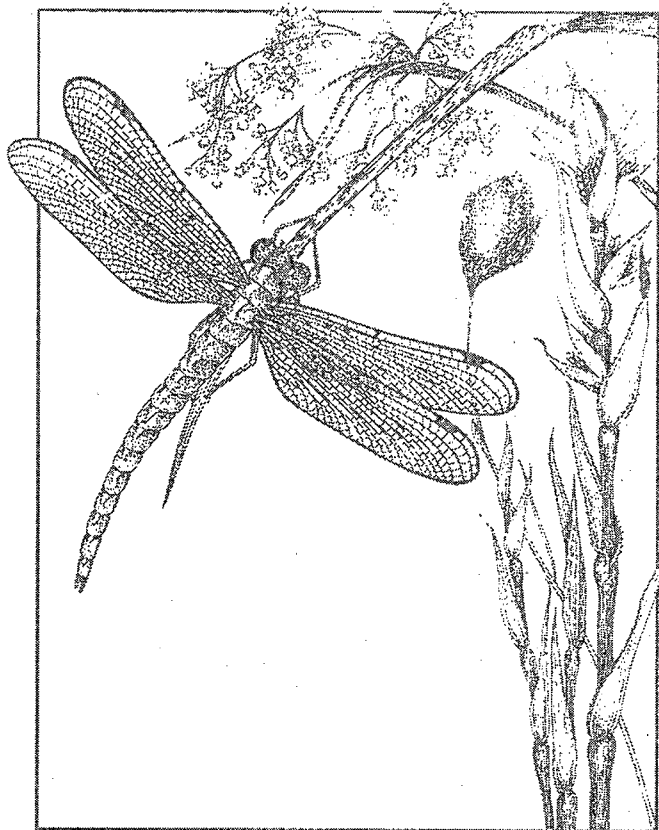
**Figure 4.18.** Water quality with respect to valued fish communities for Illinois. Darker hatching corresponds to higher water quality value. The variables included in the equation for VALUE<sub>F</sub> represent the landscape indicator, not components of the synoptic index (Equation 4.14).

# REPLACEMENT POTENTIAL - SOILS

REPLACE<sub>S</sub>



**Figure 4.19.** Replacement potential with regard to soils for Illinois. Darker hatching corresponds to higher replacement potential. The variables included in the equation for REPLACE<sub>S</sub> represent the landscape indicator, not components of the synoptic index (Equation 4.15).



## Chapter 5 Section 1 Summary

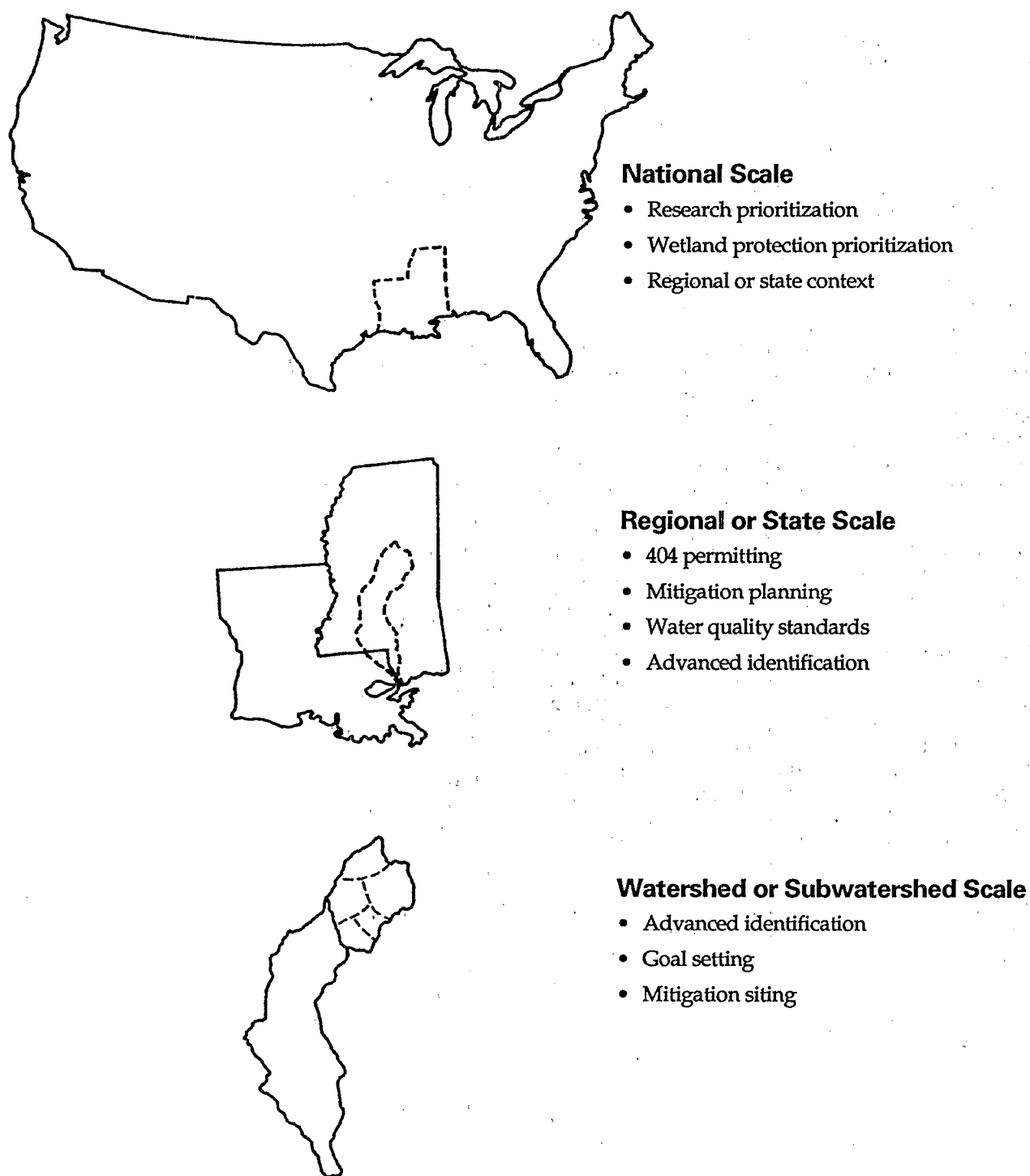
A synoptic assessment provides resource managers with a landscape context for both project-specific decisions and regional planning. Although designed for evaluating cumulative impacts to wetlands for 404 permit review, the approach has broader applications. For example, it could be used to augment a regional risk assessment, to help define regional priorities for protection and restoration as part of a State Wetland Conservation Plan, and to identify areas that would contribute most to water quality improvement as part of a watershed approach to reducing nonpoint source pollution. Although we have illustrated the approach mostly with statewide assessments, the synoptic approach could be applied to issues at different geographic scales (Figure 5.1), for example, to:

- Develop priorities for wetland protection and research at the national scale;
- Provide a landscape context for advance planning at regional or state scales; and
- Identify potential candidate areas for mitigation banking at the watershed scale.

The aspects of the synoptic approach that should make it most useful for resource managers are (1) an assessment can be completed within a year at relatively low cost; (2) flexibility in selection of indices and indicators allows an assessment to be customized to specific needs; and (3) results are presented in mapped format to facilitate their understanding and use.

The synoptic approach is not a fixed procedure that always uses the same data sources and produces a standard set of end products. Rather, a synoptic assessment is a creative process that relies heavily on the user to ensure that the final assessment is appropriate for the intended use. The two most critical steps in conducting a synoptic assessment are defining the synoptic indices and selecting the landscape indicators. The synoptic indices serve as the basis for comparing the characteristics of landscape subunits; they represent the actual functions, values, and impacts of concern to the manager. The resource specialist familiar with a particular landscape is responsible for defining the synoptic indices most relevant to the specific objectives. The landscape indicators used to estimate the synoptic indices are also specific to the particular assessment and are dependent on management objectives, the level of confidence required, and on constraints.

We note, however, that this report does not provide a specific, detailed procedure for choosing the indices, nor does it provide a scientifically tested list of landscape indicators with known confidence limits. Instead, the approach relies on best professional judgment (BPJ) for making these decisions. We often refer to the synoptic as a *framework*, since it provides professionals with an



**Figure 5.1.** Applications of synoptic assessments at various spatial scales.

ecologically-based structure that allows them to use BPJ to address landscape issues such as cumulative impacts. In fact, the simplest form of a synoptic assessment would be a workshop where a group of regional experts work through the steps in Chapter 3 using only BPJ, without any data.

Technical reviews of the proposed assessment (Step 3.7) and of final results (Step 4.6) are critical for evaluating the accuracy of an assessment. Ultimately, accuracy depends on (1) how well the indices reflect the actual environmental conditions, (2) the quality of the data being used, and (3) the degree to which assumptions concerning the use of indicators are valid. Evaluating the accuracy of an assessment is an important step in the overall process because accuracy determines the degree to which synoptic results can be incorporated into real decision making. Results from a simple assessment should be used only to provide broad background information, to serve as an initial screening tool, or to raise "red flags" requiring more intensive consideration. Using such results for critical or controversial decisions would be inappropriate unless the conclusions were validated with more detailed information. Management decisions can rely more heavily on the conclusions if better data with higher confidence levels are used.

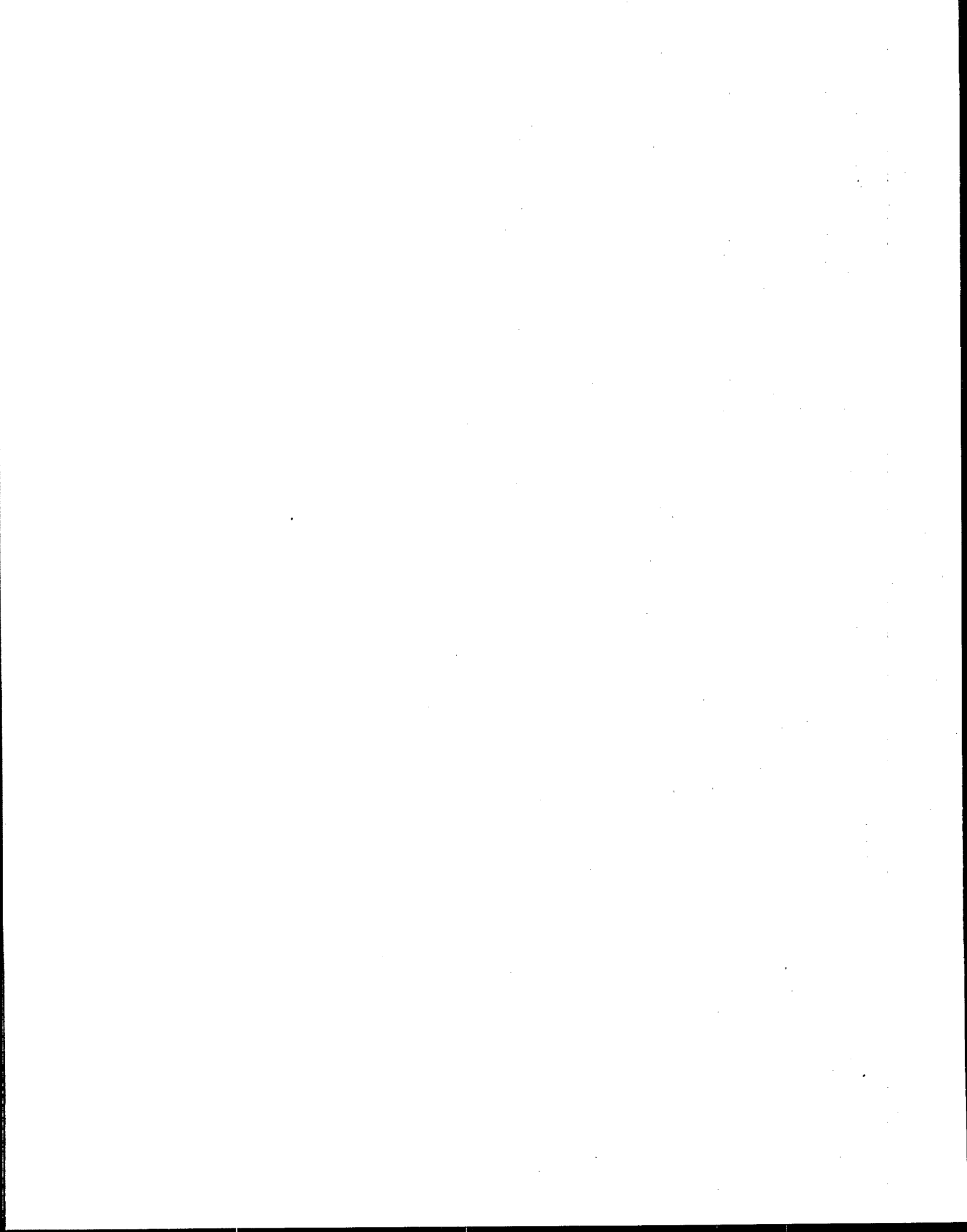
The synoptic approach is a compromise between the need for rigorous results and the need for timely information. Ideally it should be an iterative approach, with analysts updating the completed assessment when better indicators or more time to gather data become available. The approach is not a magic mirror that provides all the answers; it cannot be accomplished without the creative input of specialists who must determine how to characterize the landscape and select the appropriate indicators carefully. Common sense must be used when interpreting and applying the results of an assessment. Assuring that the results best fit needs and constraints is, therefore, the burden of the people conducting the

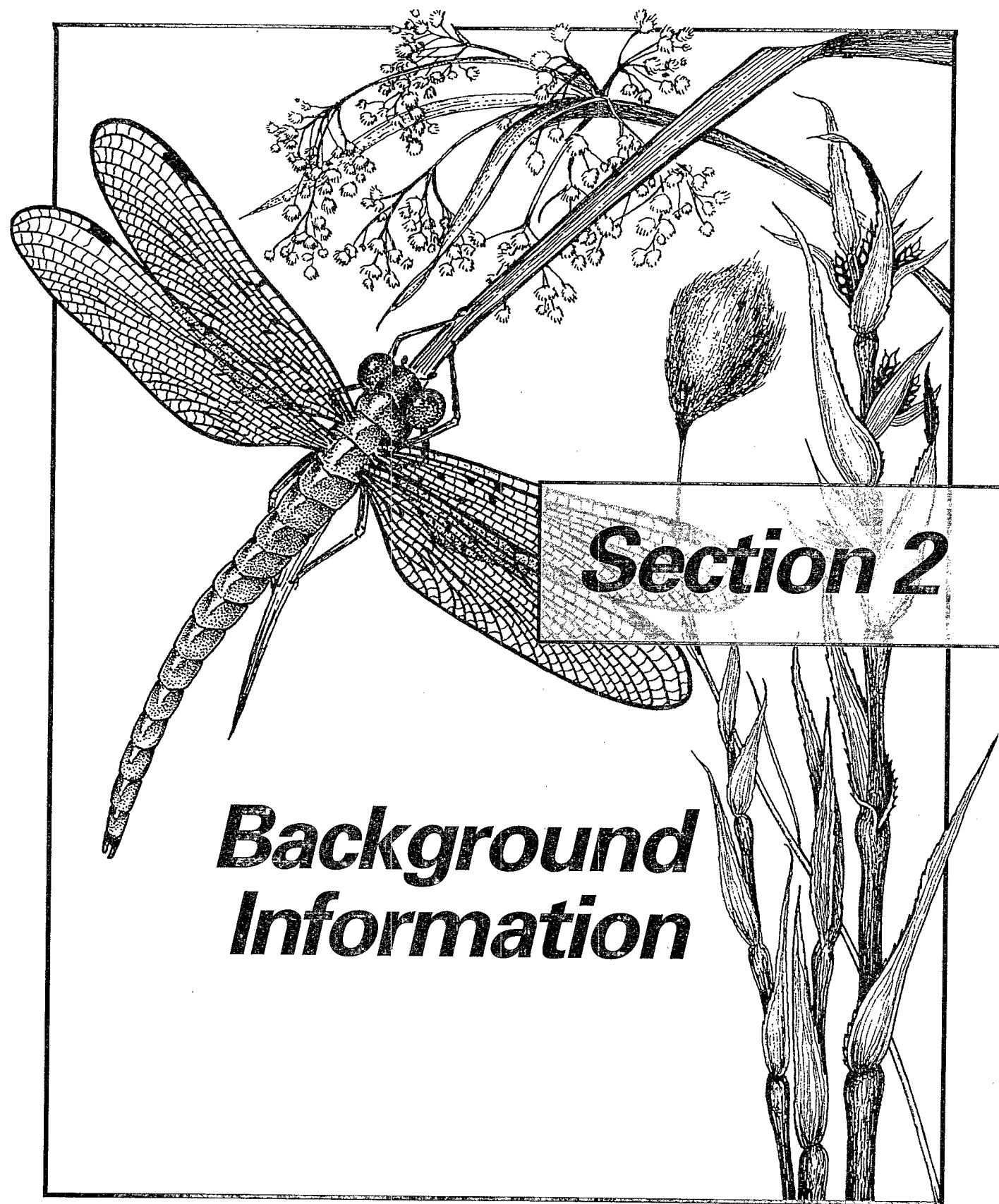
assessment. The usefulness of the information will ultimately depend upon their knowledge of the environmental processes relevant to particular management questions.

## Future Directions

In the future, we hope to see two improvements in the synoptic approach. First, as part of the WRP's five-year plan for 1992-1996 (Leibowitz et al. 1992), we will be developing regional synoptic handbooks for the prairie pothole region and for southeastern bottomland hardwood forests. These regional handbooks will follow several years of research that will include landscape studies; thus they will be based on validated models of regional landscape function and will include tested landscape indicators. These "second generation" products will take much of the BPJ out of the synoptic process and replace it with more rigorous information. These handbooks will also serve as prototypes for producing regional analyses.

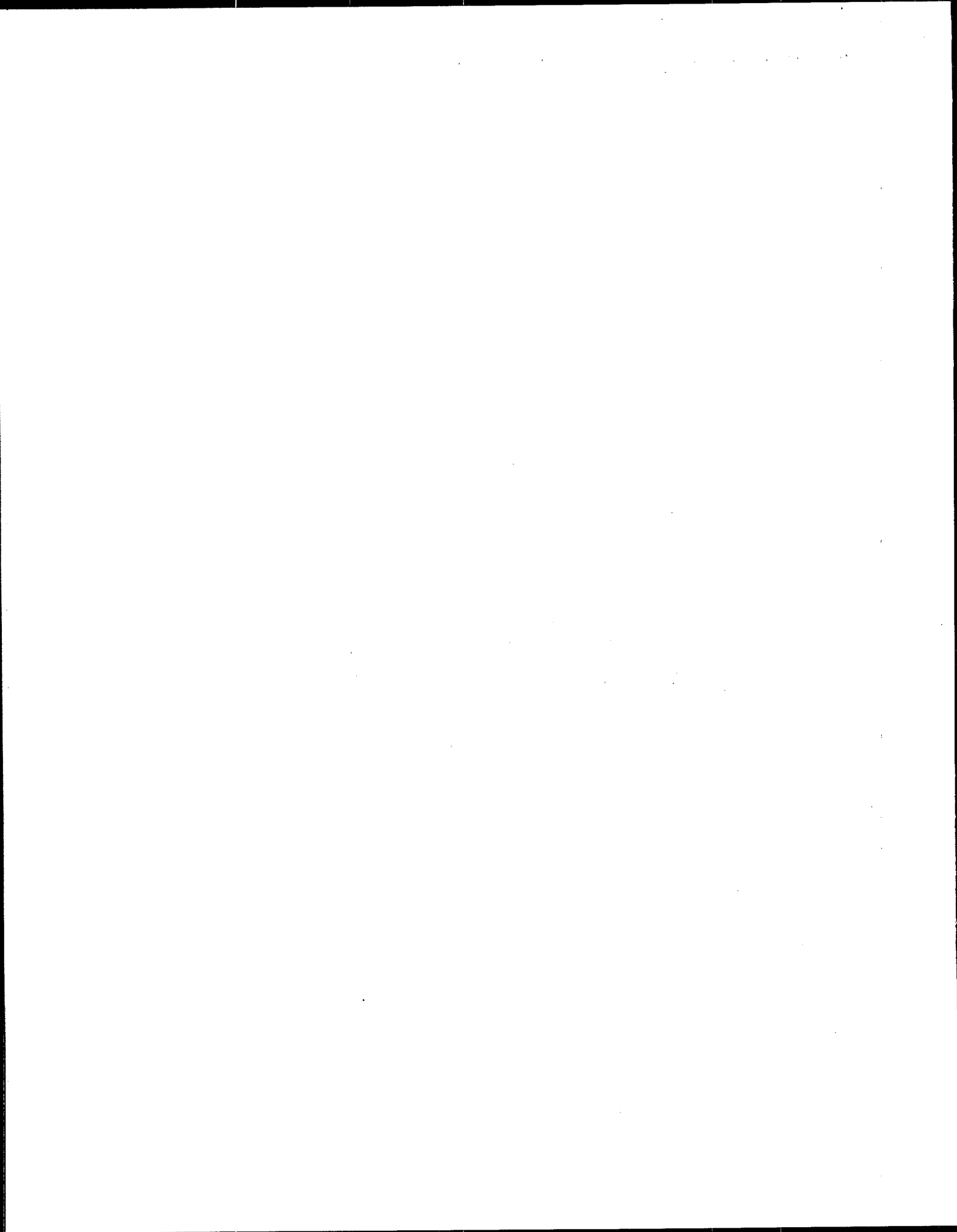
The second improvement we hope to see will rely on users who conduct their own synoptic assessments. We noted that the steps described in Chapter 3 resulted from the pilot studies that were the basis for the Chapter 4 case studies. At this time we have no real case study that explicitly followed these steps and demonstrates their use. In the future, we hope many people will produce their own synoptic assessments using these procedures, and that these assessments will act as true case studies to illustrate the approach. We also hope those who conduct synoptic assessments will contact us and share their successes and failures, so we can improve the method in the future. We have provided an information form (Appendix I) for any readers who want to be included on a mailing list for future products and who want to provide us with feedback about this report.

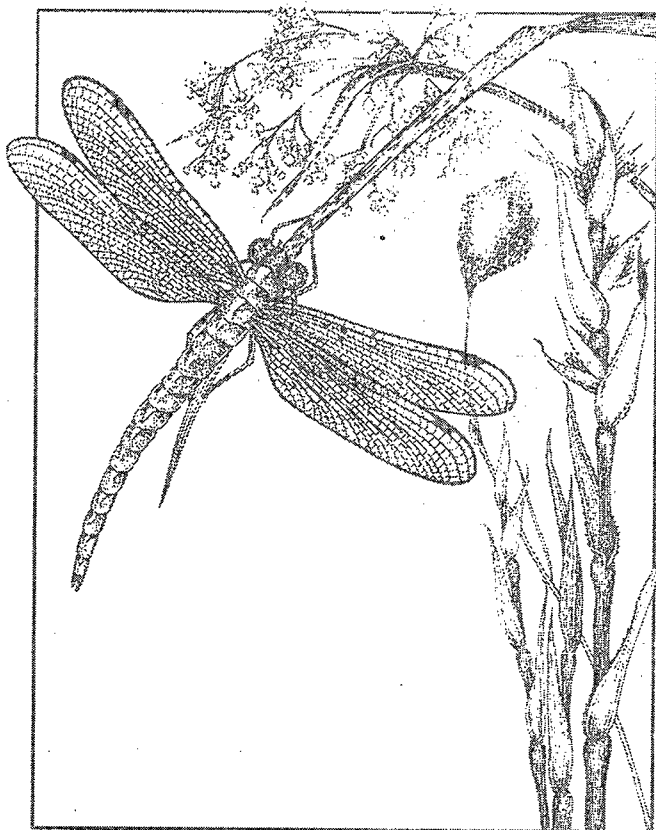




## ***Section 2***

# ***Background Information***





## Chapter 6 Ecological Response to Stress

The synoptic approach allows information on landscape condition to be included in decisions based on available information and limited resources. To achieve this, the synoptic indices were based on a simple landscape model (Chapter 2). In this chapter, we discuss additional information related to cumulative impacts but which is too detailed to be included in a synoptic assessment. This information could still be useful in formulating the synoptic indices. This chapter also introduces some of the relevant ecological literature for those interested in additional information.

We begin with several definitions. In Chapter 1, we introduced the terms "impact" and "effect" because they are found in regulations and literature on environmental assessment. Within ecological literature, however, a second terminology is more commonly used with reference to ecological stress; unfortunately, this second vocabulary is also inconsistently applied. For example, "stress" has been used to signify both cause and effect (Odum 1985). Because there appears to be no standard usage, we will adopt the following definitions (Figure 6.1):

- **Disturbance** — The action that causes a stress. This can also be referred to as a *stressor*.
- **Stress** — The immediate physical, chemical, and biological changes that result from the disturbance.
- **Response** — The long-term physical, chemical, and biological changes that indirectly result from a disturbance.

This terminology is not limited to actions caused by humans; stress caused by natural agents is also included here, e.g., damage from hurricanes or fires. We can redefine *impacts* as the subset of disturbances caused by people; *effects* are a combination of stress (direct effects) and response (indirect effects), and are similarly limited to changes resulting from human actions.

### Ecosystem Stability

One of the remarkable properties of natural ecosystems is their ability to persist over time in spite of disturbance and a changing environment. Disturbance occurs in many forms and at various spatial and temporal scales (Figure 6.2). Disturbances can affect individuals, groups of individuals, populations, ecosystems, and entire landscapes. A collection of papers discussing the effect of natural disturbance on various ecological communities is found in Pickett and White (1985a). Natural disturbances such as fire, flooding, and volcanism can be major factors in landscape development (Forman and Godron 1986; Pickett and White 1985b).

A significant body of ecological literature has been devoted to the subject of ecosystem stability in an attempt to provide a theoretical explanation for this



**Figure 6.1.** Example of a disturbance, stress, and response. The disturbance is dredging by the excavator (a), and hydrologic modification and compaction from spoil deposits are the stress (b). The response includes altered animal behavior (c) and other indirect effects, such as reduced productivity.

property (e.g., Holling 1973; Loucks 1970; MacArthur 1955; Margalef 1968; May 1974; Odum 1969; Odum et al. 1979; Rutledge et al. 1976; Ulanowicz 1979). Early ecological theory held that populations of competitors or predators and prey would approach a stable equilibrium point as the result of ecological diversity, in this case defined as the number of different pathways between species within a food web (MacArthur 1955). The argument was that the more paths there were for energy or nutrients to pass through a food web, the less the impact if any one pathway were lost. Given a disturbance, the community with the greatest diversity would return to equilibrium population levels most rapidly, thus minimizing variability. However, extensive analyses of population models by May (1974) led him to caution against the overly simplistic view that stability is an automatic consequence of diversity (or complexity, in his terminology).

Holling (1973) later argued that the emphasis placed on stability amounts to a static view of nature based on the concept of the stable equilibrium; in nature, populations are dynamic and often occur in transitional states. Nature as a stable equilibrium implies homogeneity. Holling contended that variability over space and time allows populations to respond to environmental disturbance because it permits a population to exist in low numbers and take advantage of opportunities for growth. He therefore distinguished between the ability of a system to resist disturbance and the ability of a system to return to the equilibrium state, given some disturbance. Although Holling referred to these two characteristics as resilience and stability, respectively, we shall use the more current terms *resistance* and *resilience* (Figure 6.3) (e.g., Forman and Godron 1986; Odum et al. 1987). A recent paper by Fisher and Grimm (1991) discusses resistance and resilience in stream ecosystems.

## Adaptations to Stress

Ecosystem stability is ultimately derived from adaptations by resident species. Adaptation can occur through many different mechanisms. We discuss below three factors that contribute to ecosystem resistance and resilience.

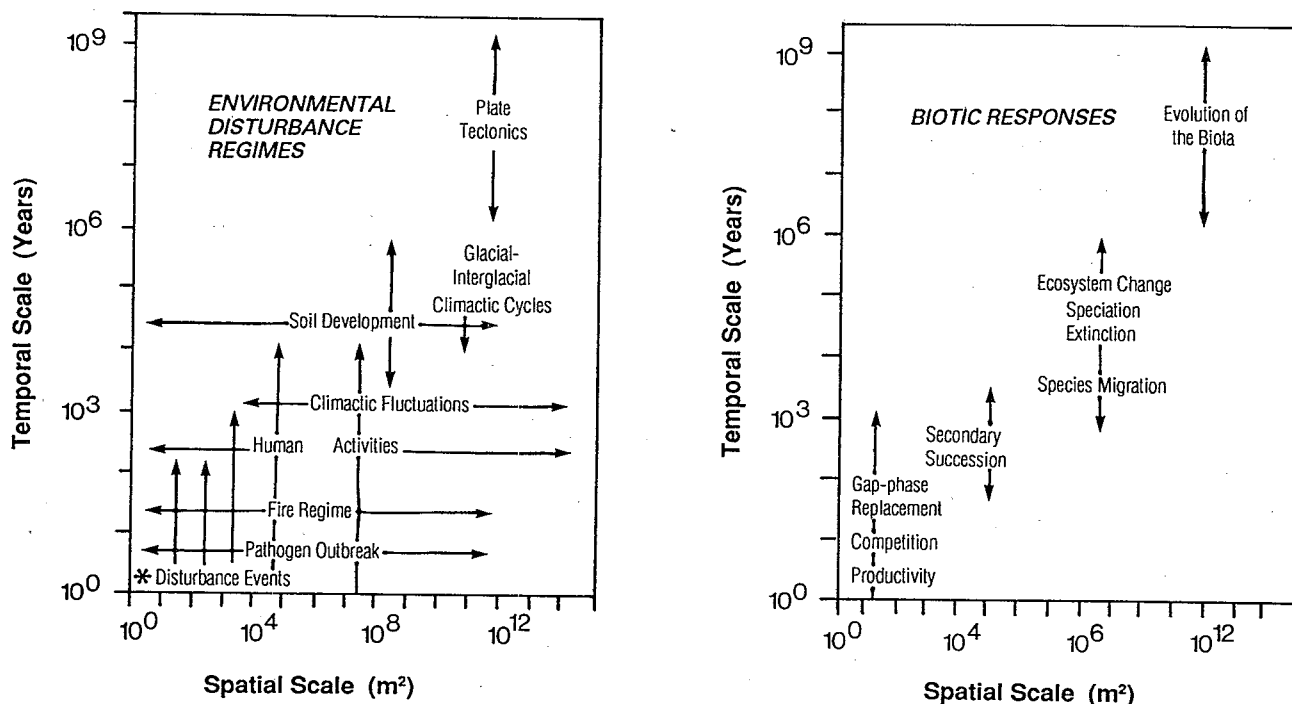
### Physiological Adaptations

By developing physiological adaptations, organisms can exist in a large number of stressful environments; they can adapt to extremes of temperature, pressure, oxidation, and desiccation. For example, pitch pine and shortleaf pine have adapted to fire by developing a thick bark and by evolving a mechanism that allows them to sprout new shoots if stressed by fire; thus revegetation can quickly take place after a fire (Robichaud and Buell 1983).

Halophytic ("salt loving") plants are another example of physiological adaptation. Halophytes have evolved a variety of mechanisms that allow them to avoid direct toxicity and dehydration due to salinity (the latter occurs because of the higher osmotic potential of the saltwater relative to the cell). For example, some plants are able to balance osmotic pressure while avoiding sodium toxicity by increasing the amount of potassium in the cell; other plants maintain osmotic pressure by producing glycerol. Still other halophytic adaptations include barriers that prevent salt entry, organs that excrete salt, and mechanisms that reduce water loss (and danger of dehydration) due to transpiration (Mitsch and Gosselink 1986).

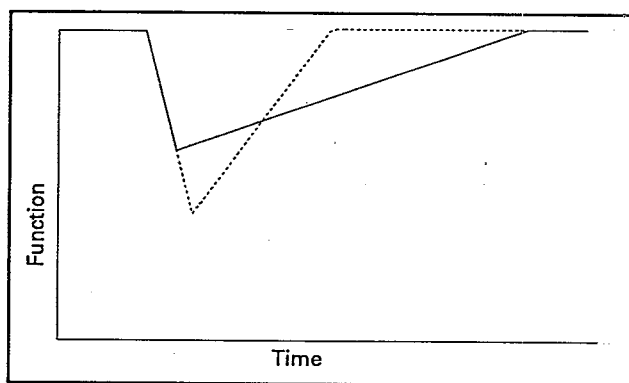
### Life History

In a stable setting, the amount of variability in environmental conditions is minimal, and a maximal amount of



**Figure 6.2.** Disturbance (a) and biotic responses (b) occur in many forms and at various spatial and temporal scales (adapted from Delcourt et al. 1983). \*Disturbance event examples include: wildlife, wind damage, clear cut, flood, and earthquake.

predictability allows populations to approach their carrying capacity (the maximum number the environment can support). Populations in climax ecosystems tend to be adapted for competitive ability and increased resource utilization (Ricklefs 1979). Other general characteristics of these populations, which are known as *K species*<sup>1</sup>, are slow development, large size, specialized resource use, delayed reproduction, and production of small numbers of seed. In an environment that



**Figure 6.3.** Ecosystem resistance and resilience. Graph shows the functional response of two ecosystems to a similar disturbance. The ecosystem represented by the solid line has higher resistance, since the same disturbance causes a smaller change in function. However, the ecosystem represented by the broken line has higher resilience, since the time for recovery to the original level of function is shorter.

experiences periodic disturbance, however, there is a maximal amount of variability, and a minimal amount of predictability; the population's ability to re-establish itself quickly is more important than competitive ability. Thus populations in successional ecosystems, known as *r species*<sup>2</sup>, tend to develop rapidly, have small body size, use a broader range of resources, reproduce early, and produce large numbers of seed.

Competition dominates in the climax community, leading to specialization for limited resources; the result is high interspecific diversity. Given the stability of this environment, the main reproductive strategy is to devote a maximum amount of energy per offspring by minimizing the amount of seed produced, giving the offspring a competitive advantage. In successional ecosystems, however, environmental uncertainty dominates over competition, creating the need to adapt to variability. Because the probability of survival is lower, a large number of offspring are produced, with minimal energy investment per offspring. High intraspecific diversity allows the species to adapt to the uncertainty that results from a wide range of conditions.

<sup>1</sup> The "K" represents the term used in population models to represent the carrying capacity of that population.

<sup>2</sup> The "r" represents the term used in population models to represent the intrinsic growth rate of the population, thus signifying high growth.

## Gene Banks

Development of physiological adaptations or r versus K characteristics in a species takes place over evolutionary time through natural selection of new genotypes produced by mutation or genetic recombination. Over shorter ecological times, this variability exists in the form of a "gene bank," which is the total collection of genes within an ecosystem or region. If a disturbance decimates a particular population that uses a specific resource, another population is often "waiting in the wings" to exploit that resource. In the prairie pothole region of North America, seed banks<sup>3</sup> containing vegetation adapted to various levels of flooding allow the potholes to adapt to wet/dry cycles (Kantrud et al. 1989). In this case, the in-place seed bank provides a source of biological diversity.

Gene banks represent a form of redundancy that contributes to ecosystem stability. *Redundancy*, a formal concept derived from information theory (Gatlin 1972; Shannon 1949; Shannon and Weaver 1963), is defined as the additional amount of information that must be added to a signal to assure transmission over a noisy channel without loss of information. In Chapter 1 we alluded to redundancy in discussing the effect a lost rivet would have on the airworthiness of a jet. In this case, redundancy is introduced by adding more rivets than would be necessary under perfect conditions. The "transmittal" of the jet through the "noisy channel" (air turbulence and wing stress) can occur without a loss of information (a crash), despite the occasional loss of a rivet.

In ecosystems, the signal transmission is the transfer of genes through reproduction, and the noisy channel is disturbance and other stresses that either cause mortality or interfere with reproduction (Margalef 1968). Ecosystems contain redundancy when functions can be performed in more than one way or when a reserve capacity of structure exists (Bormann 1987). The amount of ecosystem redundancy is one of the factors that determines the degree to which a given disturbance causes a loss of ecosystem function. For example, by providing a source of new plant material, a seed bank serves as a back-up system that buffers an ecosystem from disturbance. However, the bank itself can be altered by disturbance (Wisheu and Keddy 1991).

## Stress-Adapted Ecosystems

Although a disturbance such as fire is stressful to organisms and even entire populations, the effect at the ecosystem level need not be adverse if the ecosystem is adapted to that stress. Adaptation can take place if there has been sufficient time for adaptation to occur, and if the magnitude and frequency of the stress justify the physiological costs of adaptation.

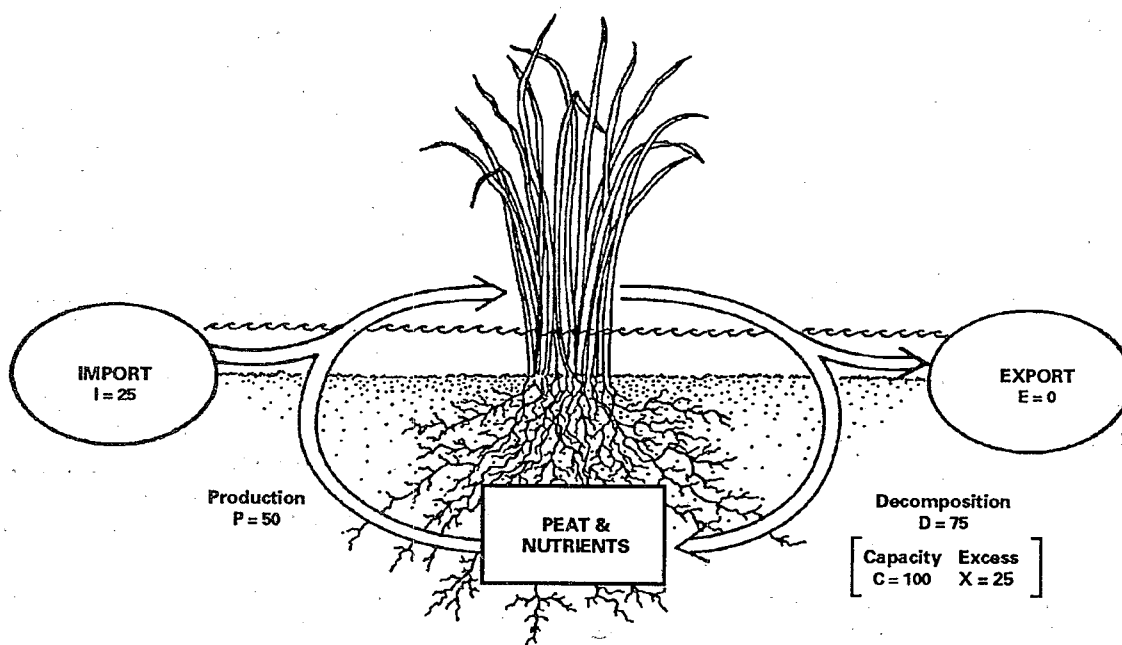
Ecosystems can be so well adapted to stress that the stress actually becomes critical to the sustainability of the system. The classic example is the fire-adapted, or fire-climax ecosystem. Fire is a natural component of the New Jersey pine barrens, where pine species are dominant and oak is subdominant (Robichaud and Buell 1983). The pine is able to maintain dominance because it is less easily damaged by fire and has evolved mechanisms that allow it to revegetate quickly afterwards. When people suppress fire, a layer of organic materials (mostly pine needles) builds up on the forest floor and eventually causes a shift in dominance from pine to oak, because oak seedlings are better established on this layer. This leads to the paradox that fire, which would normally be considered a stress, is in fact a forcing function necessary to the maintenance of the community, from the perspective of the pine forest. From this viewpoint, fire suppression is the stress.

As the preceding discussion demonstrates, stress cannot be thought of in an absolute, context-free sense at the level of the community or ecosystem; we cannot say whether fire is a stress without first considering whether it is a natural component of an ecosystem adapted to that stress. Barrett et al. (1976) define stress as "a perturbation applied to a system (a) which is foreign to that system or (b) which is natural to that system but applied at an excessive level." In general, we use the term stress throughout this document only when an adverse effect is implied.

## Effect of Disturbance on Ecosystem Function

Disturbance can affect processes and structure within an ecosystem or the outside forcing functions driving the ecosystem (Figure 2.1). Whether a disturbance causes a loss of ecosystem function depends on the degree of redundancy in the ecosystem. In particular, if the amount of material being removed or retained by a sink ecosystem is less than the assimilative capacity, then the ecosystem has an *excess capacity* to remove additional material; this is a form of redundancy that buffers ecosystem function from disturbance. Consider a simple steady-state ecosystem where import is equal to 25 units and production is equal to 50 units, for a total input of 75, and where decomposition capacity is equal to 100 units (Figure 6.4). In this case, there is an excess capacity of 25, since only 75 units are decomposed; export is equal to zero, since all input can be removed on-site. This excess capacity buffers the landscape from certain impacts; for example an impact that increases either import or production by as much as 25 units or decreases capacity by up to 25 units would not

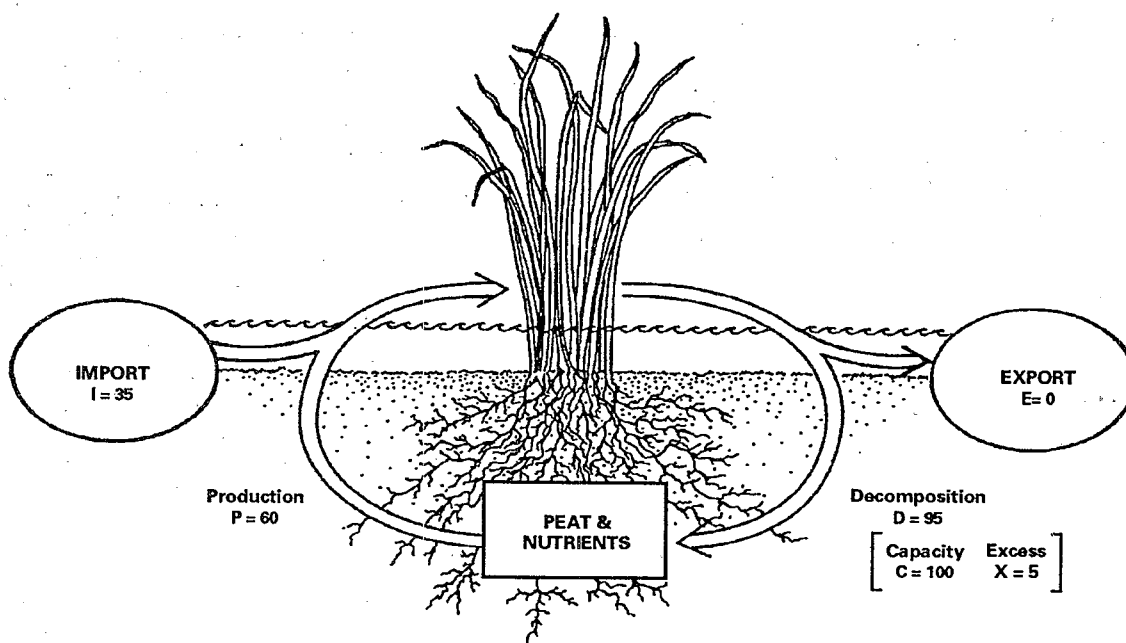
<sup>3</sup> A seed bank represents one specific type of gene bank, i.e., a collection of viable plant seed within the soil.



**Figure 6.4.** Simple steady-state ecosystem where excess capacity buffers function from disturbance. Total input (import plus production) is equal to 75 units, all of which is decomposed. Since decomposition capacity is 100, there is an excess capacity of 25 units.

affect export, and thus landscape flows (Figure 6.5). For the original ecosystem (Figure 6.4), an impact that reduced imports or production or that increased capacity would similarly have no effect outside the ecosystem, and would increase the excess capacity. Next, consider an ecosystem that could potentially function as a sink, because decomposition capacity exceeds production, but that receives no import. This

ecosystem also has excess capacity, and an impact that decreases capacity or increases production would have no effect on landscape flows, as long as capacity remains greater than on-site production. In these situations, the effect of a disturbance is limited to changes within the ecosystem because of excess capacity. From a landscape perspective, such a disturbance has no effect. However, loss of excess capacity does



**Figure 6.5.** Buffering of landscape effects in a disturbed ecosystem. Impacts to the original ecosystem (Figure 6.4) have increased import and production by 10 units each. Since there was an excess capacity of 25 units, the additional 20 units of input has no effect on exports. However, excess capacity is reduced.

limit the amount of additional material that the ecosystem could remove or retain in the future, if imports or production were to increase later.

## Mitigating Effects of Landscape on Disturbance

Landscape pattern plays an important role in determining ecosystem response to disturbance. Recognizing this role, Forman (1990) has proposed that management efforts be focused on the landscape mosaic rather than on the individual ecosystem. Below are several examples of how landscape characteristics can influence the effects of disturbance.

### *Landscape Elements as Conduits or Barriers to Disturbance*

In Chapter 2, we based our definitions of source and sink ecosystems upon the difference between imports and exports. In cases where import is exactly equal to export (including import and export both equal to zero), the ecosystem is neither a source nor a sink. Such an ecosystem can still play an important role as a conduit or barrier (Forman and Godron 1981). A *conduit* is an ecosystem that assists the movement of materials through different parts of the landscape by transferring imports between ecosystems without altering the amount of material. For example, hiking trails can function as conduits for plant species in Rocky Mountain National Park (Benninger-Truax et al. 1992). A *barrier* is an ecosystem that inhibits material movement by excluding imports from an ecosystem. Streams serve as barriers to organisms that are unable to swim or fly.

A disturbance is not simply a static event that affects a discrete area. Disturbances are often dynamic and can move through the landscape; examples include fire, floods, storms, and pest outbreaks. For each of these, a landscape element may act as a conduit or barrier to the movement of the disturbance through space. Stream channels not only act as conduits for floods, but they can also serve as conduits for debris flows (Swanson et al. 1992). In upstate New York, the thruway can act as a conduit for migration by the exotic purple loosestrife (*Lythrum salicaria* L.), which then invades adjacent wetlands (Wilcox 1989). Aquatic habitats, ridges, valleys, and patches of low flammability vegetation can all act as barriers to fire (Knight 1987). The position of conduits and barriers relative to a disturbance can determine the degree to which a particular ecosystem is affected by that disturbance.

### *Landscape Pattern of Sources and Sinks*

At the landscape level, a change in ecosystem function caused by disturbance has the effect of increasing or decreasing the amount of one or more materials that are

transferred between ecosystems. The degree to which this change affects material flows within the landscape depends on the spatial distribution of sources and sinks. We described earlier how an increase in import or production or a decrease in capacity would have no effect on landscape flows if sufficient excess capacity to buffer this change existed (Figures 6.4 and 6.5). Similarly, the effect of impacts to a source would be limited if a source ecosystem were directly coupled to a sink having a large excess capacity; a small increase in source flow would have no effect in this instance beyond the changes within the two ecosystems. In general, the tighter the coupling between sources and sinks and the greater the excess capacity, the more the landscape is buffered from such effects. As we noted previously, however, this would affect an ecosystem's ability to retain or remove additional materials *in the future*.

### *Recovery from Local Extinction*

Off-site gene banks represent a form of redundancy that can deter local population extinctions. Recolonization from surrounding patches is in some ways analogous to the colonization of newly created islands, and principles from the theory of island biogeography have been applied to the study of population maintenance within the landscape (Gosselink and Lee 1989; Harris 1984; MacArthur and Wilson 1967).

For plants, the amount of time it takes to recolonize an area depends on seed characteristics and the amount of seed produced. For example, seed weight, seasonal timing and duration of seed production, and method of dispersal (wind, birds, or mammals) are all factors in determining the re-establishment of woody plants following a disturbance (Canham and Marks 1985). In particular, the dispersal mode and the spatial arrangement of regional seed banks within the landscape can affect recovery after disturbance. For example, wind-dispersed seeds may tend to concentrate in the center of forest gaps, while seeds dispersed by animals may be more common at gap edges (Canham and Marks 1985). This phenomenon can affect not only the spatial pattern of the resulting vegetation but also whether a species becomes dominant in the ecosystem. The dispersal characteristics of a seed may themselves be partially determined by the different selection pressures that can result from landscape pattern (Manicacci et al. 1992).

Locally extinct animal populations similarly can be re-established through emigration from regional gene banks. For a particular species, a population can be defined as the collection of individuals inhabiting a particular patch (an irregularly shaped area embedded within a matrix of different structure). The *metapopulation* is the combined population of all the patches connected by the movement of individuals (Henderson et al. 1985; Merriam and Wegner 1992). If a local extinction occurs within one of those patches, the

metapopulation serves as a gene bank for recolonizing the area. Whether and how quickly a patch is recolonized following local extinction depends on the dispersal characteristics of the organism and the spatial arrangement of donor patches. The *travel distance* for a particular organism is the maximum distance it can travel in order to reach suitable habitat. Travel distance might be limited by the organism's storage of metabolic energy or by the organism's need to remain close to its breeding site. In general, the lower the body weight of the animal, the smaller the range (Harris 1984). The ability of a species to recolonize a patch that has experienced local extinction depends on the *patch distance*, or the distance between ecosystem patches. The location of barriers within the landscape, such as mountains, can further restrict recolonization from a regional gene bank.

It is interesting to note that a population living in a marginal ecosystem can be sustained over time, in spite of a death rate greater than the birth rate, as long as immigration from surrounding ecosystems is high enough to offset deaths. An ecosystem in which this occurs would be considered a population sink (MacArthur and Wilson 1967; Pulliam 1988).

## Landscape Fragmentation

Loss of landscape structure can affect ecosystem functions and the ability of populations to survive disturbance. Approaches to preserving biodiversity that focus only on the species will have limited success if the habitat supporting that species is destroyed. Recognition of this basic relationship has led to increased focus on preservation of regional habitat and the landscape as a means of preserving biodiversity (CEQ 1991; Harris 1988).

From a spatial perspective, a landscape can be viewed as a mosaic containing three different kinds of ecosystem geometries: patches (defined earlier); corridors (narrow strips of land, such as streams and hedgerows, surrounded by matrix on each side); and the background matrix, which represents an extensive, or continuous, resource.

If disturbance in a matrix ecosystem occurs with a frequency lower than the amount of time required for recovery (Figure 6.3), then the ecosystem is stable over the long run, and a loss of ecosystem area will not occur. In this case, the disturbance represents the "figure" within the "background" of the matrix (Figure 6.6a).

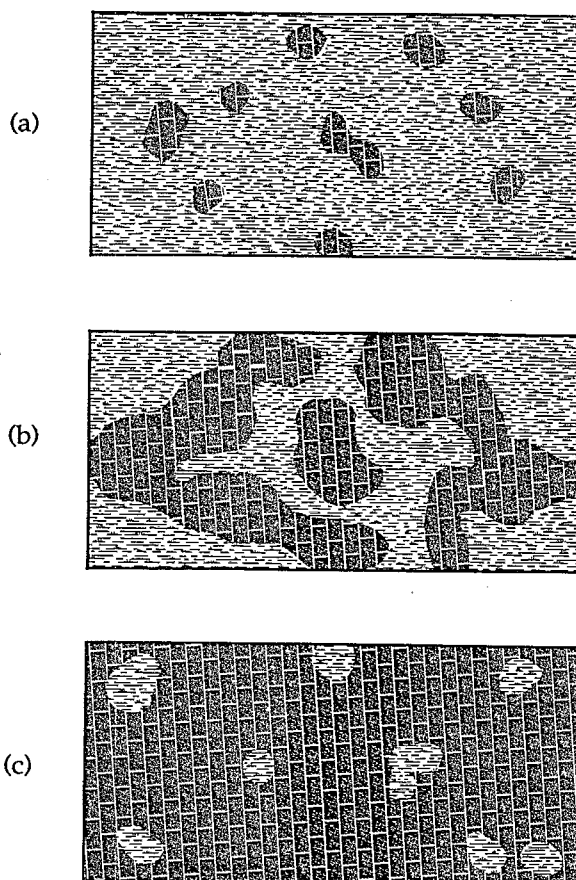
If, however, disturbance becomes more frequent or causes a permanent alteration (e.g., conversion to a different land use), then eventually the matrix will begin breaking up into smaller patches (Figure 6.6b).

Finally, if the frequency of disturbance is great enough, the disturbed ecosystem becomes the dominant background matrix, with the original ecosystem occurring as

remnant patches (Figure 6.6c). This process whereby an ecosystem is broken up into smaller pieces is referred to as *fragmentation*.

Franklin and Forman (1987) have studied this figure/background switch in matrix and patch using a model of forest clearcutting. Within a fragmented landscape, five different kinds of patches can be distinguished (Forman and Godron 1981, 1986):

- Environmental resource patches, which are normal components of a heterogeneous environment;
- Ephemeral patches, which are transient patches that occur from normal, short-term fluctuations;
- Spot disturbance patches, which result from a small disturbance within the matrix;
- Introduced patches, which — as in the case of agricultural areas — are brought about by people either by accident or design; and

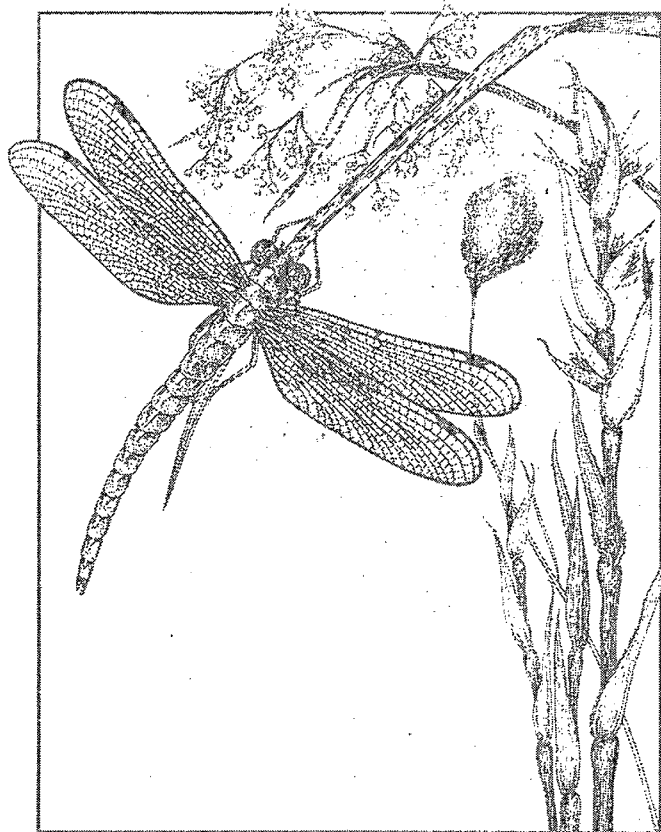


**Figure 6.6.** Ecosystem fragmentation: (a) disturbance is the "figure" within the "background" of the natural matrix; (b) break-up of matrix into smaller patches; and (c) converted land use becomes the dominant background matrix. Fragmentation can effect ecosystem function.

- Remnant patches — the opposite of spot disturbances — which occur when a large disturbance takes place, reducing the background matrix to a patch.

Many organisms have *home ranges*, defined as the area around their homes typically used for feeding (Forman and Godron 1986; Harris 1984). Fragmentation reduces patch area and therefore reduces the amount of habitat within the home range. This can lead to local extinction, especially in the later phases. Fragmentation also increases the circumference-to-area ratio of patches, which

causes a change in species composition from interior species to edge species (Merriam and Wegner 1992). Although this increases species diversity, the result is a general shift from native (interior) to opportunistic (edge) species (Gosselink and Lee 1989). Fragmentation can also cause a loss of interconnecting corridors and lower the size of a metapopulation. This effect together with increased distance between patches reduces the likelihood that locally extinct populations can be re-established.



## **Chapter 7** **A Review of** **Wetland** **Functions and** **the Effect of** **Wetland** **Impacts**

In this chapter we review current research on three major wetland functions, emphasizing the landscape scale. We discuss the effects of wetland degradation, which results in partial loss of function, as well as the effects of wetland conversion, which results in total loss of function. The closing section addresses the effects of cumulative wetland loss on overall landscape function. This information can provide a starting point for defining specific indices of function and functional loss. This chapter can also serve as a resource for those wanting a review of wetland functions or additional information on how these functions are affected by impacts.

### **Wetland Functions**

Over the past several decades, new information has highlighted the functions wetlands perform through various physical, chemical, and biological processes (Table 7.1). These functions can be divided into three major categories: hydrologic functions, water quality functions, and habitat functions.

#### **Hydrologic Functions**

Wetlands can function as hydrologic sinks by removing water from local surface flow systems; this occurs when floodwaters are temporarily stored within a wetland, when runoff infiltrates the wetland surface, or when runoff is converted to water vapor through transpiration. Wetlands can also act as hydrologic sources, conserving water and sustaining local moisture. Wetlands function as sources by serving as conduits for groundwater discharge or by increasing or conserving hydrologic inputs through interception, snow detention, condensation, or reduced evaporation. The factors that determine whether source or sink functions dominate in a given setting include regional climate, season, landscape geomorphology, and wetland type and position. Adamus et al. (1991), Carter (1986), Duever (1988), Kadlec (1987), LaBaugh (1986), Winter (1988, 1990), and Winter and Woo (1990) review literature on hydrologic functions of wetlands.

Almost any wetland has the potential to stagger the arrival of runoff to downstream areas, and in so doing reduce flood peaks. Many studies have found inverse correlations between streamflow and the percentage of watershed area occupied by wetlands, or variables that could be related to wetlands (Table 7.2). Most often, these studies support the hypothesis that wetlands are important for attenuating peak flows (e.g., Table 7.3). Watersheds with a large proportion of wetlands have qualitatively different streamflow response to precipitation, both in urban settings (Brown 1988) and in vast peatland watersheds (Schwartz and Milne-Home 1982).

Other hydrologic functions are not as well documented as flood control. For example, some seasonal or temporary wetlands in arid regions can recharge shallow aquifers (e.g., Heath 1982; Loken 1991; Wood and Osterkamp 1984), as can some unforested bogs and fens in wet boreal regions (e.g., Siegel 1988). Yet from a national perspective it seems unlikely that most wetlands would recharge groundwater on a net annual basis (Carter 1986). Similarly, evidence of wetlands performing as sources is limited. Some studies of restoration projects in arid regions suggest that certain headwater riparian wetlands can promote water conservation (Ponce and Lindquist 1990; Winegar 1977). They do so partly by reducing channel erosion, increasing shallow infiltration of runoff, and reducing stream velocity. Riverine wetlands that accumulate coarse sediments or that are formed by beaver dams also tend to release water gradually throughout the growing season (Debano and Schmidt 1990; Van Haveren 1986; Wilen et al. 1975).

In the Sand Hills of Nebraska and in areas of volcanic origin (e.g., parts of Idaho and Oregon), wetlands are typically sites of groundwater discharge, which is the primary source of stream base flow (Rogers and Armbruster 1990). At a landscape scale, empirical studies of multiple watersheds have sometimes found non-peak stream flow to be positively correlated with the proportion of wetlands or other storage areas in the watersheds. For example, Thomas and Benson (1970) detected aggregate effects of wetlands and other storage areas on base-flow volume (Table 7.3). However, these findings are not universal; Milne and Young (1989) reported that the effect of Arizona stockpounds having an average storage capacity of 1,803 m<sup>3</sup> on base flow was virtually undetectable at a density of 0.2 ponds per km<sup>2</sup>. The ability of wetlands to sustain streamflow has not been documented conclusively on a broad basis.

## Water Quality Functions

Just as wetlands can function as hydrologic sinks or sources, they can also act as sinks or sources of chemicals important to ecological communities and to society. Whether a wetland serves as a sink or a source depends on hydrology, pollutant loading rates, and the relative magnitudes of various water quality processes. Sedimentation, sediment stabilization, denitrification, nitrification, biological uptake and processing, adsorption, and photosynthesis are all important processes that affect these water quality functions. Numerous studies have examined these processes, as discussed in reviews by Adamus and Stockwell (1983), Johnston et al. (1990b), Johnston (1991), Kadlec (1987), Phillips (1989a), and Richardson (1989). Most evidence suggests that wetlands function within a landscape as a sink or transformer of suspended inorganic sediment, inorganic phosphorus, nitrate, and sulfate; however, wetlands generally function as a source or transformer for carbon and perhaps for the organic forms of phosphorus and nitrogen. A summary of several studies follows.

Perhaps the first broad scale empirical study reporting on the aggregate effect wetlands have on water quality was by Jones et al. (1976). Examining 34 watersheds in northwestern Iowa, researchers found that watersheds with a larger proportion of wetlands had less nitrate in streamflow. Studies in Minnesota funded by EPA's Wetlands Research Program examined watersheds of 33 mostly eutrophic lakes (Detenbeck et al. 1988) and 15 headwater streams (Johnston et al. 1988, 1990a). Lakes with drainage areas containing a greater proportion of wetlands tended to have more ammonia but had lower levels of suspended solids, chloride, and lead; these lakes were also less eutrophic. For streams, sampling sites closer to wetlands had lower concentrations of suspended solids, nitrate, chloride, lead, and fecal

**Table 7.1 Functions that wetlands may perform (adapted from Conservation Foundation 1988; Mitsch and Gosselink 1986; OWRS 1990).**

Hydrologic Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Convey flood waters</li> <li>Act as barriers to waves</li> <li>Prevent erosion</li> <li>Store flood waters</li> <li>Maintain base flow</li> <li>Replenish aquifers</li> </ul>
Water Quality Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Stabilize sediments</li> <li>Retain sediments</li> <li>Remove or transform hazardous chemicals</li> <li>Remove or transform nutrients</li> <li>Maintain water quality</li> </ul>
Habitat Functions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Provide feeding areas</li> <li>Provide breeding areas</li> <li>Act as dispersal corridors</li> <li>Provide watering areas</li> <li>Provide staging areas</li> <li>Provide shelter</li> </ul>

**Table 7.2 Multiwatershed studies in which wetland area or related variables<sup>1</sup> significantly predicted streamflow conditions.**

Location	Source
Alabama	Hains 1973; Olin 1984
Alaska	USDA 1984 (southeastern) <sup>2</sup>
Arkansas	Bedinger and Sniegocki 1976; Neely 1987; Patterson 1971
California	Thomas and Benson 1970 (Central Valley)
Colorado	Benson 1964; Thomas and Benson 1970 (Arkansas River watershed)
Delaware	Simmons and Carpenter 1978; Tice 1968
Florida	Bridges 1982; Lopez and Woodham 1983
Idaho	Thomas et al. 1973 (east-central)
Illinois	Allen and Bejcek 1979; Wetzel and Bettendorff 1986
Indiana	Davis 1974; Glatfelter 1984; Wetzel and Bettendorff 1986 (western)
Iowa	Lara 1973; Thomas and Benson 1970 (south-central)
Kansas	Thomas and Benson 1970 (northern)
Kentucky	Choquette 1988; Wetzel and Bettendorff 1986
Louisiana	Benson 1964; Lee 1985b; Lowe 1979; Neely 1976; Thomas and Benson 1970
Maine	Hayes and Morrill 1970
Maryland	Armentrout and Bissell 1970; Carpenter 1983; Thomas and Benson 1970; Tice 1968; Walker 1971
Minnesota	Guetzkow 1977; Jacques and Lorenz 1988; Moore and Larson 1979
Mississippi	Colson and Hudson 1976
Missouri	Hauth 1974; Thomas and Benson 1970 (northwestern)
Montana	Johnson and Omang 1976
Nebraska	Beckman 1976 (northern and southeastern); Thomas and Benson 1970 (southern)
New Jersey	Stankowski 1974; Tice 1968
New Mexico	Benson 1964; Hjel 1984; Scott 1971
New York	Darmer 1970; Lumia 1984; Tice 1968 (southern); Zembrzuski and Dunn 1979
North Carolina	Edgerton 1973
Ohio	Koltun and Roberts 1990; Webber and Bartlett 1977; Wetzel and Bettendorff 1986 (eastern)
Oklahoma	Sauer 1974
Oregon	Harris et al. 1979 (western); Laenen 1980 (Portland-Vancouver area)
Pennsylvania	Flippo 1977; Thomas and Benson 1970 (south-central); Tice 1968 (eastern); Wetzel and Bettendorff 1986 (western)
Tennessee	Wetzel and Bettendorff 1986 (central)
Texas	Benson 1964
Utah	Christensen et al. 1986
Virginia	Armentrout and Bissell 1970 (northern); Miller 1978; Nuckels 1970; Thomas and Benson 1970 (northern); Tice 1968 (eastern)
West Virginia	Tice 1968 (eastern); Wetzel and Bettendorff 1986
Wisconsin	Conger 1971; Novitzki 1979
Newfoundland	NEEC 1984; Panu and Smith 1989; Poulin 1971
Yukon territory	Janowicz 1986
New England states	Benson 1962
Upper Mississippi and Hudson Bay Basins	Patterson and Gambel 1968
Selected urban areas	Sauer et al. 1983

<sup>1</sup> Variables expected to be related to wetland area, such as area of lakes, ponds, swamps, and noncontributing storage areas, and mainstem channel slope. These variables may not be related to wetland area in all situations and should be used with caution.

<sup>2</sup> Refers to study area within state.

coliform bacteria; the greatest nitrate reduction occurred during low flow. Other empirical analyses have found generally positive correlations between wetland area and water quality in central Minnesota (Oberts 1981), the Northeast (Liegele et al. 1991), and Wisconsin (Hindall 1975). However, a study of 32 forested stream watersheds in central Ontario (Dillon et al. 1991) using eight years of detailed hydrologic and loading data indicated that wetlands cumulatively *export* total phosphorus and total organic nitrogen. Wetland ability to act as a source or sink may depend on loading rates as indicated by watershed land cover or on other factors.

Findings that show a relationship between wetlands and the export of organic carbon include studies by Eckhardt and Moore (1990), Gorham et al. (1985), Johnston et al. (1988, 1990a), Kerekes et al. (1986), LaZerte and Dillon (1984), Mulholland and Kuenzler (1979), Rapp et al. (1985), and Rasmussen et al. (1989). Bogs and fens may export more carbon per unit area than other temperate wetland types, despite limited surface water connections to other waters (Urban et al. 1989).

Wetlands can also affect the time at which substances become available to biological communities. For example, in watersheds with a large proportion of wetlands, some nutrients tend to be delivered to downstream rivers and estuaries relatively evenly throughout the year (Eckhardt and Moore 1990; Urban et al. 1989). This is important if the annual productivity, biodiversity, or resilience (recovery time) of biological communities in lowland rivers and estuaries are contingent on a steady or predictable flow of pre-processed nutrients from upstream, as suggested by DeAngelis et al. (1990), Meyer (1990), Naiman et al. (1988), O'Neill et al. (1980), and Pringle et al. (1988).

From a landscape perspective, the biochemical transformations that occur in wetlands may take place in a spatial sequence; an upstream wetland serves as a source of a particular substance to the next wetland downstream, which transforms the substance and passes it to other wetlands farther downstream (e.g., Elder 1985; Newbold et al. 1982). Although some of the most effective wastewater treatment facilities employ such coupled transformations (Hammer 1992), few studies have documented this occurrence among natural wetlands. Evidence for this kind of coupling is strongest for organic forms of nutrients (e.g., Fisher et al. 1982; Jordan et al. 1986; Naiman et al. 1988).

The distance over which an individual wetland can benefit downstream water quality is not yet clear. In most cases, water quality improvement appears to extend only a short distance (e.g., Bianchi and Findlay 1990; Johnston et al. 1990a; Jones and Smock 1991; Phillips 1989b), but a substance that decomposes slowly may travel up to 800 km before it is completely oxidized (Edwards and Meyer 1987). Questions also remain over the best indicator of wetland water quality functions. For example, Johnston et al. (1990a) found that water quality was related to near channel wetland area, while Omernik et al. (1981) suggested that the best indicator was land cover averaged over the whole watershed. Depending on the geomorphic characteristics of the landscape and the duration and rate of loading, either may be true. As Whigham et al. (1988) note, predictions of watershed water quality using simple indicators such as proportion of wetland area are probably much less reliable than predictions that consider spatial distribution of the wetland area, its types, and the degree to which runoff comes into contact with wetlands.

**Table 7.3. Relationship<sup>1</sup> between increased wetland area<sup>2</sup> and peak and base flows by geographic region<sup>3</sup> (from Thomas and Benson 1970).**

Region	Peak Flow	Relationship	Base Flow	Relationship
East	10-, 25-, and 50-year recurrence intervals	[-]	Average streamflow (November to January and July)	[+]
South	1-, 2-, and 5-year recurrence intervals	[-]	Variability (January)	[-]
	2-year recurrence interval (7-day peak flow)	[+]		
West	2-, 10-, and 20-year recurrence intervals (7-day peak flow)	[+]	Average streamflow (June to July and mean monthly)	[+]
	10- and 20-year recurrence intervals (3-day peak flow)	[+]		
Central	Variability of peak flow	[-]	Variability of base flow	[-]

<sup>1</sup> A [+] indicates increased flow is correlated with increased storage area; a [-] indicates decreased flow is correlated with increased area.

<sup>2</sup> Includes lake and alluvial area as well as wetland area.

<sup>3</sup> Results for each region based on analyses of the following number of watersheds: east - 41 watersheds within the Potomac River Basin; south - 42 watersheds mostly within the Louisiana Pine Hill Region; west - 44 watersheds within California's Central Valley; and central - 41 watersheds mostly within Kansas.

## Habitat Functions

In many regions, more species are restricted to wetlands than to any other habitat (Williams and Dodd 1978), and among the various types of undeveloped lands, wetlands often make the largest contribution to regional biodiversity (e.g., Brinson et al. 1981). They do so by functioning as feeding, roosting, and staging sites; dispersal corridors; and shelters. Even in individual wetlands with low species diversity, the species are often found in few other habitats (Moore et al. 1989). Further, a disproportionate number of endangered and threatened species depend wholly or in part on wetlands.

Several coastal studies have reported correlations between the number of nests in wading bird colonies and the proportion of wetlands within the home range (e.g., Burger 1981; Gibbs et al. 1987; Werschkul et al. 1976), although a study by Erwin et al. (1986) found no such relationship. The proportion of wetlands within the home range has also been correlated with production of many other organisms. One study of 332 wetlands found that the occurrence of four amphibians was correlated with the local number of wetland pools. In contrast, altitude, cumulative pool area, and surrounding land cover were either less important or insignificant (Mann et al. 1991). Low wetland densities can even make populations of wetland-dependent species more susceptible to outbreaks of disease; Smith and Higgins (1990) found that the density of semipermanent wetlands was lower in areas where avian cholera epizootics occurred than in areas where there were no epizootics.

For many animal species, no single wetland, regardless of size, can provide for all their needs over an entire life cycle. Therefore, for the species to survive, several wetlands of various types must exist in the same area. The proximity of at least one permanently or regularly flooded wetland appears to be important to the habitat potential of wetlands that are either drier or less regularly or predictably flooded, especially during drought. Conversely, the proximity of many drier wetlands to a permanent or regularly flooded wetland is essential for some species inhabiting more permanent wetlands, especially during wet years or high tides (e.g., Powell 1987). As a result, a complex of multiple wetland types might be a more appropriate unit for assessing habitat function, rather than an individual wetland. Determining the boundaries of such complexes requires information on spatial characteristics of wetland distribution along with knowledge of the life cycle and metabolic requirements of the species whose geographic ranges lie within the particular region.

The previous discussion is not meant to suggest that many small wetlands are always preferable to one large wetland of equivalent total area because this

could result in loss of some area-sensitive species (Table 7.4). Some species cannot breed successfully in small or narrow wetlands, particularly in wetlands whose size results from hydrologic impermanence or in which increased vulnerability to human disturbance and contamination exists. Also, small wetlands or lakes individually have fewer species of aquatic plants (Ebert and Balko 1987; Rorslett 1991), invertebrates (Aho 1978; Driver 1977), fish (Eadie et al. 1986; Leitman et al. 1991; Tonn and Magnuson 1982), and birds (Bostrom and Nilsson 1983; Brown and Dinsmore 1988; Croonquist and Brooks 1991; Durham et al. 1987; Gibbs and Melvin 1990).

## Wetland Degradation

Wetlands perform important hydrologic, water quality, and habitat functions, but those functions can be impaired by stress. Wetlands can be stressed in various ways (Figure 2.1; Table 7.5), including changes to wetland forcing functions, e.g., alteration of wetland hydrology or sediment budgets; changes to wetland processes, such as increased surface runoff through ditching or increased production through enrichment; and loss of wetland structure, e.g., soil compaction or harvesting of species. Degradation, or loss of function, results from such stresses. The severity of functional degradation depends on three factors (Adamus and Stockwell 1983; Table 7.6):

- **Impact Characteristics**—The proximity, magnitude, duration, extent, frequency, seasonality, and predictability of the particular impact;
- **Wetland Type**—The particular hydrologic regime, water chemistry, community structure, and landscape position of a wetland; the tolerance of its organisms and nearness of conditions to a critical geomorphic or physiological threshold;
- **Landscape Characteristics**—The climatic, chemical, geomorphic, and land use characteristics of the landscape along with their spatial and temporal configurations, particularly with regard to how they may provide refuge from, buffer, or compensate for effects of particular wetland impacts (e.g., Sedell et al. 1990; Sparks et al. 1990).

The effects stresses generally have on hydrologic, water quality, and habitat functions are listed in Tables 7.7-7.9, respectively. Unfortunately, most examinations of wetland degradation have focused on structure, and not on function; Tables 7.7-7.9 are based upon our general understanding of the mechanistic linkages among activities, impacts, and functions (e.g., Adamus and Stockwell 1983; Patterson and Whillans 1984; Williamson et al. 1987).

**Table 7.4. Examples of area-sensitive wetland bird species<sup>1</sup>.**

Species	Minimum Patch Size (ha)	Reference
Pied-billed grebe	5	Brown and Dinsmore 1986
Great blue heron	A, B	Gibbs and Melvin 1990
Black-crowned night heron	[>20], C	Brown and Dinsmore 1986
American bittern	C	Brown and Dinsmore 1986
Least bittern	D [<1], C [12]	Gibbs and Melvin 1990 Brown and Dinsmore 1986 Tyser 1983
Canada goose	11, [5]	Brown and Dinsmore 1986
Blue-winged teal	1-5	Brown and Dinsmore 1986
Green-winged teal	C	Brown and Dinsmore 1986
Mallard	1-5	Brown and Dinsmore 1986
Gadwall	C	Brown and Dinsmore 1986
Northern pintail	C	Brown and Dinsmore 1986
Northern shoveler	[5], C	Brown and Dinsmore 1986
Redhead	5, C	Brown and Dinsmore 1986
Ruddy duck	11	Brown and Dinsmore 1986
American coot	A [<1], C	Gibbs and Melvin 1990 Brown and Dinsmore 1986
Virginia rail	A, B	Gibbs and Melvin 1990
Sora	A	Gibbs and Melvin 1990
Forster's tern	C	Brown and Dinsmore 1986
Swallow-tailed kite	[15]	O'Meara 1984
Red-shouldered hawk	225, E	Robbins et al. 1989
Black tern	20, [5] [25], B [12]	Brown and Dinsmore 1986 Gibbs and Melvin 1990 Tyser 1983
Pileated woodpecker	165, E	Robbins et al. 1989
Acadian flycatcher	15, [0.2], E C, E C [24], E	Robbins et al. 1989 Harris and Wallace 1984 Triquet et al. 1990 Blake and Karr 1987
Veery	20, [9], E [28], E	Robbins et al. 1989 Blake and Karr 1987
Marsh wren	A, B [<1], A [12]	Gibbs and Melvin 1990 Brown and Dinsmore 1986 Tyser 1983
Northern parula	520, [10], E [54], E [24], E	Robbins et al. 1989 Hayden et al. 1985 Blake and Karr 1987
Prothonotary warbler	A	Robbins et al. 1989
Northern waterthrush	200, [24], E	Robbins et al. 1989
Louisiana waterthrush	300, [25], E [42], E C, E C	Robbins et al. 1989 Hayden et al. 1985 Harris and Wallace 1984 Triquet et al. 1990
Kentucky warbler	17, [9], E [8], E [2.3], E	Robbins et al. 1989 Hayden et al. 1985 Blake and Karr 1987
Swainson's warbler	A	Harris and Wallace 1984
Swamp sparrow	1-5	Brown and Dinsmore 1986

<sup>1</sup> Does not include non-wetland species that are also area-sensitive and partially supported by wetlands. Numbers represent patch size at which probability of occurrence is 50% of the maximum as determined from a series of habitat patch inventories; this level has been suggested as appropriate for conservation planning by Robbins et al. (1989). Bracketed figures are sizes of smallest patches found to be occupied; it cannot be assumed that birds bred successfully in these areas (Gibbs and Faaborg 1990).

A: The listed species' breeding occurrence appears to be influenced by wetland patch size.

B: The listed species' breeding occurrence appears to be influenced by local wetland density.

C: Results not statistically significant given sample size; however, distribution pattern suggests area dependence.

D: The listed species' breeding occurrence appears to be influenced by proximity to other wetlands.

E: Area includes adjoining undeveloped forest.

## Wetland Conversion

A wetland can be so severely stressed that it is completely transformed into a different type of ecosystem or land use; we refer to this process as conversion. Historically, most wetland conversion has been intentional, e.g., to increase agricultural area. However, conversion can also be caused inadvertently. For example, severe long-term sedimentation in a shallow wetland can raise the wetland substrate above the water table, accelerate invasion by upland species, and eventually cause succession to upland.

A number of studies have assessed cumulative loss of wetland area at various scales. Between the 1780s and 1980s, losses in the 50 states ranged from 0.1% for Alaska to 91% for California (Figure 7.1). Historical loss of wetland area for the entire United States was estimated as 30% over the last two centuries; if Alaska is excluded, this amount increases to 53% (Dahl 1990). During the 1970s and 1980s, a net 1.1 million of the 41.8 million hectares of wetlands in the United States (2.5%) were lost through conversion (Dahl et al. 1991). Freshwater wetlands accounted for most of this recent loss, particularly Southeastern forested floodplain wetlands.

**Table 7.5. Stresses and associated impacts that can degrade wetlands.**

Stress	Impacts	
Acidification	Fossil fuel combustion	Mineral extraction
Biomass Removal	Agricultural/silviculture Aquatic weed control Channelization	Defoliation from airborne contaminants Grazing, herbivory, disease, and fire Urban development
Compaction or Erosion	Agriculture/silviculture Mining and construction	Disturbance of stream flow regimes Deposition of dredged or other fill material
Contamination/Toxicity <sup>1</sup>	Agricultural/silvicultural pesticides Aquatic weed control Fossil fuel combustion Hazardous waste sites Industrial air pollution	Landfills Mineral extraction Urban stormwater Wastewater treatment systems Mosquito control pesticides
Dehydration	Anthropogenic water withdrawals Global climate change Subsurface tile drainage	Invasion by highly transpirative plant species Ditching/channelization of nearby streams Surface ditching, drainage, and outlet widening
Eutrophication/Enrichment	Artificial drainage Fertilizer application Fossil fuel combustion Landfills Livestock	Mineral extraction Peat extraction Urban stormwater Wastewater treatment systems
Habitat Fragmentation and Exotic Species Invasion	Channelization/ditching Land clearing Road construction Grazing	Silvicultural activities Urban development Impoundments Artificial drainage
Inundation	Excavation (deepening) Impoundment	Flow blockage by road construction Land use that increases runoff to wetlands
Light Reduction	Agricultural runoff Urban stormwater Sediment resuspension by animals and wind Ineffective wastewater treatment plants	Placement of bridges and other structures Disturbance of stream flow regimes Erosion from mining and construction sites Blooms of algae responding to excess nutrients
Salinization	Domestic/industrial wastes Irrigated soil	Road salt used for winter ice control Saltwater intrusion from tidal or groundwater
Sedimentation	Agriculture Deposition of dredged or other fill material Disturbance of stream flow regimes	Erosion from mining and construction sites Ineffective wastewater treatment plants Urban stormwater
Thermal Warming	Global climate warming Impoundments	Power plants and industrial facilities Vegetation removal

<sup>1</sup> From heavy metals.

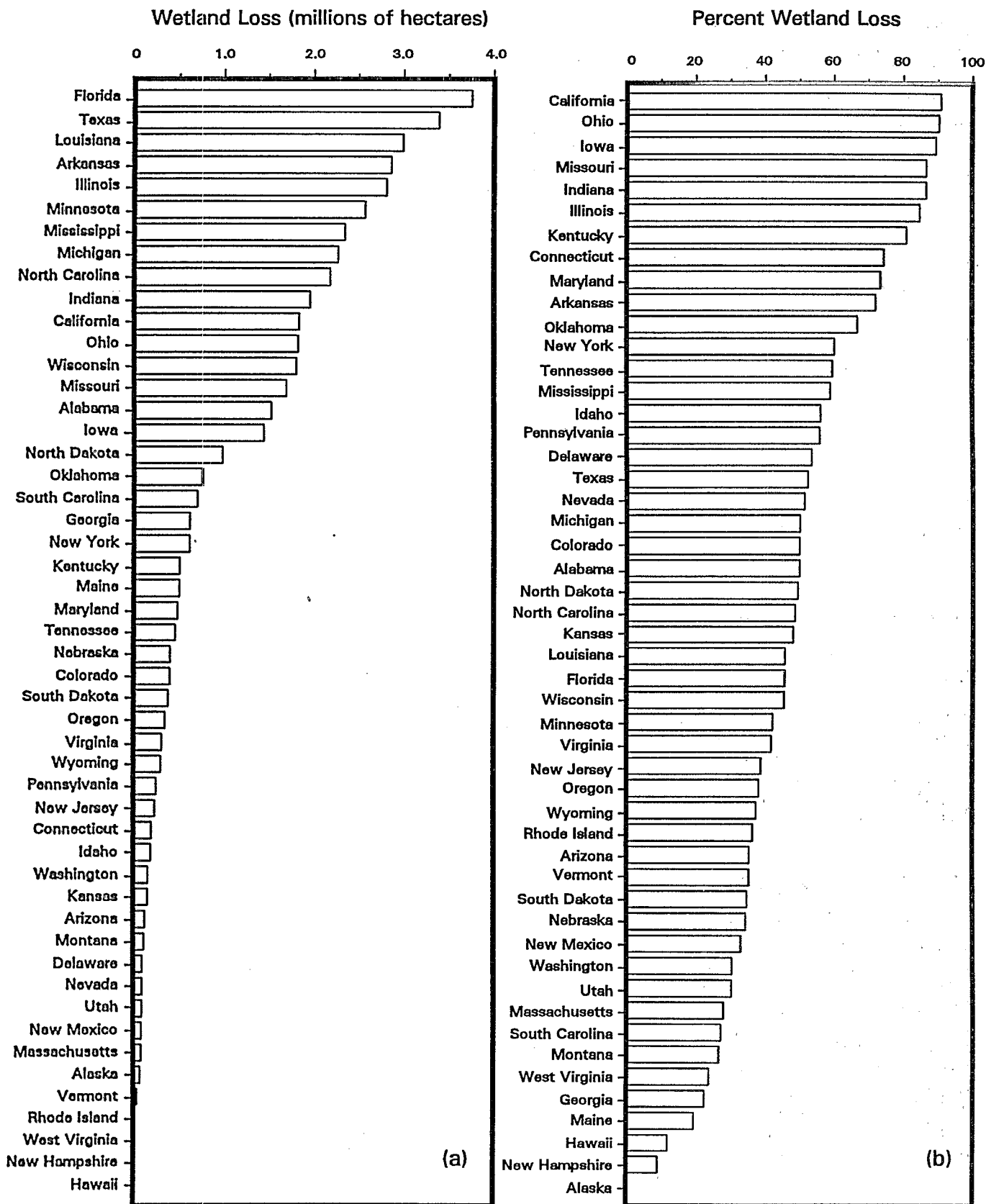


Figure 7.1. Historical loss of wetland area (a) and percent loss (b) in the United States, by state (data from Dahl 1990).

**Table 7.6. Wetlands whose functions may be more sensitive or less resistant to particular types of stress.**

Sensitive Function	Type of Stress	Wetland Type
Hydrology	Sedimentation	Physically isolated wetlands
	Vegetation removal	Forested wetlands
	Dehydration	Permanently flooded wetlands
		Wetland depressions overlying thin impermeable strata
	Inundation	Wetlands not permanently flooded
	Fragmentation	Wetlands in flat landscapes
Water Quality	Enrichment and contamination	Wetlands that have been previously exposed to large chemical loadings
	Organic loading	Physically isolated wetlands with high annual production
	Acidification	Wetlands with cation exchange capacity only at the substrate surface
	Turbidity/shade and vegetation removal	Wetlands where submerged plant uptake rather than microbial metabolism or adsorption is the major process controlling nutrient or contaminant cycling
	Dehydration	Permanently flooded wetlands
	Inundation	Wetlands not permanently flooded
Habitat	All degradation types	Wetlands connected to others only by narrow corridor
		Wetlands near a size threshold for a species
		Wetlands with a poor seed bank

While agricultural conversion has been the primary cause of wetland loss since the 1950s, it has become less dominant. Agricultural conversion, urbanization, and other forms of development (conversion of wetlands to non-agricultural, rural land uses) accounted for 87%, 8%, and 5% of loss from the 1950s to the 1970s, respectively (Tiner 1984), compared with losses of 54%, 5%, and 41% for these same categories during the 1970s and 1980s (Dahl et al. 1991).

## Effects of Cumulative Wetland Loss on Landscape Functions

Because few studies have examined degradation of wetland function on a large scale, our understanding of how conversion and degradation affect wetland functions at the landscape level is even more limited. The following three sections discuss the possible effects of cumulative wetland loss on hydrologic, water quality, and habitat functions. The findings are based upon studies that generally fall into three categories (Leibowitz et al. 1992): empirical landscape analyses, case studies, and landscape modeling. Adamus (1989) discusses strengths and limitations of various approaches.

### Loss of Hydrologic Functions

In only a limited number of studies have researchers attempted to measure and compare hydrologic functions before and after loss or alteration of wetlands. Among them are studies of Mississippi River flooding by Belt (1975), southwestern riparian areas by Burkham (1976), diked Florida wetlands by Hammett et al. (1978), and prairie pothole wetlands by Brun et al. (1981). Although none of these investigations contradicts the notion that loss of wetland area causes increased flow peaks, the limited number of study sites makes it difficult to distinguish effects of wetland loss from effects of other land use changes within the watershed and from short-term climate trends.

Nevertheless, results from spatially-based empirical analyses can be used to explore the effects of wetland loss. In Minnesota, Johnston et al. (1990a) suggested and demonstrated the use of simple equations based on spatial data (such as those found in the references in Table 7.2) to estimate how past wetland loss may have affected peak flow for any particular watershed and to infer changes in discharge that might occur from future wetland losses. The results were then used to rank watersheds according to relative risk. Andersson and Sivertun (1991) used a simulation

model to estimate regional impacts to groundwater recharge and discharge resulting from decades of wetland drainage.

Computer simulations have also been used to examine wetland and floodplain behavior and, in most cases, have supported the role of cumulative wetland area or other forms of natural storage in attenuating streamflow peaks. In what was perhaps the first such study, Dewey and Kropper Engineers (1964) simulated floodplain storage in the Connecticut River. Their findings indicated that flood stage could increase by 0.3, 1.2, and 2.1 meters as the result of 10%, 20%, and 30% reductions in storage, respectively. Subsequently, the Corps of Engineers conducted simulations of the Charles River in Massachusetts, concluding that downstream flooding can be reduced more cost-effectively by preventing floodplain encroachments than by constructing control structures (Childs 1970). Other watershed simulations (e.g., Dreher et al. 1989; Flores et al. 1982; Haan and Johnson 1968; Moore and Larson 1979; Ogawa and Male 1983, 1986, 1990) have conditionally supported and quantified the cumulative effects of wetlands as runoff dissipators. However, reductions in floodplain storage and channel roughness appeared to have little effect on peak flows in watershed simulations conducted by Johnson and Senter (1977). Hydrologic modeling of wetlands and floodplains is addressed in reviews by Corps of Engineers (1988), DeVries (1980), Dreher et al. (1989), and Duever (1988).

The effect cumulative wetland loss can have on landscape hydrology depends on (a) the remaining percentage of wetlands in the watershed, (b) the positions of other wetlands and storage areas, and (c) whether the altered wetlands are located at a hydrologic control point (a place where channel storage or conveyance influences a much wider area because flows are funneled by landforms). With regard to the role of wetland area, limited evidence

from Wisconsin and Minnesota watersheds suggests that loss of wetlands in watersheds having a small proportion of wetland area will have greater effect than the same loss in watersheds with a larger proportion of wetland area. This is particularly true if the new losses occur disproportionately in areas near mainstem channels. Where conversion losses occur mainly in headwater areas, watersheds with a large proportion of wetland area (perhaps >10%) can partly compensate for the associated loss of storage (Ogawa and Male 1983). The influence of wetland position on prediction of instantaneous streamflow probably increases with increasing proportion of wetland area (e.g., NEEC 1984). The position of wetland area within a watershed influences the nature of the cumulative effect. Watersheds where wetland conversions are focused within mainstem floodplains (Ogawa and Male 1983), or where headwater wetlands are channelized but wetlands downstream or at a control point are not, may experience the greatest increase in flood peaks. This is because the position of such conversions, or even activities such as new wetland creation, can synchronize the arrival of runoff and lead to higher flood peaks (McCuen 1979). Finally, no evidence suggests that maintaining wetland type or size diversity provides greater support for streamflow-related values.

### **Loss of Water Quality Functions**

Only a few published studies (e.g., Beasley and Granillo 1988; Mader et al. 1989) compare watershed water quality before and after alterations in wetland vegetation or changes in a watershed's proportion of wetland area. An analysis of Louisiana's Tensas Basin by Childers and Gosselink (1990) found that turbidity, total phosphorus, and total suspended solids were significantly related to water level at three sites. Observing that these trends were characteristic of cleared watersheds, the authors suggested that stream enrichment in the Tensas could

**Table 7.7. Generally expected effects of various stresses on hydrologic functions of wetlands <sup>1</sup>.**

Sedimentation/Soil Compaction	Reduction in storage, infiltration, and groundwater recharge causing an increase in surface runoff
Vegetation Removal	Reduction in interception, condensation, evapotranspiration, and surface roughness (runoff resistance), and an increase in runoff velocity and groundwater discharge
Dehydration	Reduction in groundwater exchange (sometimes) and an increase in evapotranspiration (during early vegetational succession); these effects are especially likely where dehydration results from channelization or artificial drainage (Winter 1988)
Inundation	Usually increases infiltration and recharge within the wetland, but may convert nearby wetlands from recharge to discharge areas or vice-versa (Born et al. 1979)
Fragmentation	Can reduce groundwater recharge and discharge in remaining wetlands (Winter 1988)

<sup>1</sup> This is intended as a general guide, and effects may differ depending on wetland type and the timing, duration, extent, and intensity of the stress.

**Table 7.8. Generally expected effects of various stresses on water quality functions of wetlands <sup>1</sup>.**

Enrichment	Increase in denitrification rate, sediment stabilization, and biological uptake and processing; may depress the latter if extreme or chronic
Organic Loading	Reduces biological uptake/processing, especially at high loadings or if associated with acidification; increases sedimentation and denitrification rates under moderate loadings; enhances mobilization of some substances through oxidation effects
Contamination <sup>2</sup>	Variable effects, depending on the specific contaminant and other factors; can depress denitrification, biological uptake/processing, and photosynthesis
Acidification	Usually depresses denitrification, biological uptake and processing, and perhaps photosynthesis; effects on chemical adsorption depend on the chemical, but acidification usually results in increased mobility of heavy metals
Salinization	May depress denitrification, biological uptake, and photosynthesis and enhance adsorption of some chemicals; response depends partly on the degree to which the system is adapted to salinity
Sedimentation/Soil Compaction	Depresses biological uptake, processing, and photosynthesis, and may reduce hydrologic residence time; other effects are variable
Turbidity/Shade	Reduces photo-oxidation of some contaminants, and usually depresses denitrification, photosynthesis, and perhaps biological uptake
Vegetation Removal	Reduces sedimentation, sediment stabilization, photosynthesis, biological uptake/processing, and perhaps denitrification. Sediment removal capacity of early successional forested wetlands may increase (Aust et al. 1991; Cooper et al. 1986)
Thermal Warming	Increases rates of most chemical and biological functions up to a point
Dehydration	Concentration of inorganic chemicals increases as dehydration proceeds; complete drawdown temporarily remobilizes many substances, especially organics and phosphorus, but may renew wetland adsorption capacity for some substances; effects on other water quality functions are variable (e.g., Bourbonniere 1987; Moore 1987).
Inundation	May increase sedimentation and decrease biological uptake and processing, and photosynthesis; effects on other functions are variable
Fragmentation	Increasing the distance between wetlands could reduce the effectiveness of coupled functions important to water quality

<sup>1</sup> This is intended as a general guide, and effects may differ depending on wetland type and the timing, duration, extent, and intensity of the stress.

<sup>2</sup> From heavy metals and pesticides.

have been caused by logging bottomland hardwoods. The number of streams was not large enough to test whether other factors might have caused these water quality trends. However, considering this evidence along with other findings (Gosselink et al. 1990b), the investigators concluded that the water quality function of the Tensas declined as a result of forested wetland loss. In Illinois, Osborne and Wiley (1988) demonstrated the use of regression equations to estimate the risk that a watershed would exceed water quality limits if forested land were converted to urban or agricultural uses.

Computer simulations have also been used to estimate the cumulative effects of wetland loss on downstream sedimentation and water quality. Examples of such analyses are simulations by Auble et al. (1988), Bedient et al. (1976, 1985), and Maristany and Bartel (1989). Attempts to model water quality functions of wetlands are restricted partly by the limited ability of existing hydrologic models to account for biological functions

within wetlands and partly by uncertainty regarding appropriate routing algorithms in complex situations such as floodplain and peatland watersheds (Costanza and Sklar 1985; Mitsch 1983).

### **Loss of Habitat Functions**

Numerous anecdotal accounts of species loss are associated with cumulative wetland loss (e.g., Bellrose et al. 1979; Harris 1988; Hunter et al. 1987; Kushlan 1979; Williams et al. 1989), but apparently only one study (Burdick et al. 1989) has attempted to statistically link reductions in regional biodiversity over time with loss of wetlands. These authors compared trends in the relative abundance of birds with reductions in bottomland hardwood areas and examined the relative abundance of birds in areas with varying amounts of forest. They found evidence that the declining number of forest species and the densities of interior species were related to cumulative loss of forest area. The investigators also suggested that reduction in forested

**Table 7.9. Generally expected effects of various stresses on habitat functions of wetlands (from Adamus and Brandt 1990)<sup>1</sup>.**

Enrichment and Organic Loading	Initial enrichment increases production and within-wetland biotic diversity, but prolonged or extreme enrichment results in increased dominance of a few invasive species, decreased species richness, diminished wetland structural diversity, decreased production and, in some regions, succession to upland vegetation
Contamination <sup>2</sup>	All habitat functions are generally impaired
Acidification	Results in diminished native biodiversity and production
Salinization	In freshwater wetlands, usually results in diminished species richness (especially of woody species), but surviving species may be relatively unique and thus contribute disproportionately to overall regional diversity
Sedimentation/Soil Compaction	Diminishes species richness as a result of reduced light, smothering, etc.; however, moderate amounts of sediment can increase production of some woody plants in floodplains and can increase habitat in deeper depressions by providing additional shallow substrate for colonization
Turbidity/Shade	Variable effects; can diminish habitat suitability by reduced plant biomass, but can benefit some species by providing shelter from predation and extreme heat
Vegetation Removal	Diminishes habitat space; scattered thinning of dense stands can increase species richness and spatial heterogeneity; selectively benefits some species but detrimental to many others
Thermal Warming	Reduces species richness, but surviving species may be relatively unique and thus contribute disproportionately to regional diversity if warming is local
Dehydration	Temporary dehydration, if infrequent and brief, can reinvigorate nutrient cycling in wetlands and thus increase primary production; effects of partial drawdowns are variable; drawdowns can result in invasion by undesirable weed species, such as common reed or purple loosestrife; permanent dehydration results in conversion to upland habitat
Inundation	Can increase habitat space for aquatic communities (particularly if the result is an interspersed of wetland vegetation and open water), facilitate dispersal of isolated aquatic populations, increase bank erosion, and dilute contaminants; contaminants, suspended sediment, plant material, and nutrients can also be reintroduced from newly flooded areas
Fragmentation	Increasing the distances between wetlands usually reduces regional biodiversity, although invasion by aggressive non-native species can be similarly reduced

<sup>1</sup> This table is intended as a general guide, and effects may differ depending on wetland type and the timing, duration, extent, and intensity of the stress.

<sup>2</sup> From heavy metals and pesticides.

wetlands might have caused the elimination of the red wolf and Florida panther in parts of Louisiana and led to reduction in the number of the black bears, now listed as a threatened species there. Comparing relatively undisturbed and disturbed watersheds in Pennsylvania, Brooks et al. (1990) and Croonquist and Brooks (1991) reported differences in avian, amphibian, and mammalian community structure. They attributed these differences to multiple impacts associated with development in the watershed, e.g., channelization, a reduction in natural land cover types surrounding wetlands, and increased human visitation. Continental waterfowl declines have also been blamed on a combination of wetland habitat loss, contamination, over-harvest, and disease. However, analyses of this sort encounter problems with a scarcity of consistently collected long-term data and the presence of major confounding variables (e.g., annual variation in climate, interspecific competition, and other land uses).

Because many vertebrate species require multiple wetlands or wetland types to meet their feeding and reproductive needs (Cowardin 1969; Dzubin 1969; Flake 1979; Kantrud and Stewart 1984; Patterson 1976), diminished diversity of wetland types or increased wetland isolation (i.e., increased patch distance; see Chapter 6) can be detrimental. Similar isolation effects have been described for communities of wetland microbes (McCormick et al. 1987) and invertebrates (e.g., Jeffries 1989).

Habitat loss through wetland fragmentation is an area of recent interest. Fragmentation increases vulnerability of wetland species to predation, and causes some species to expend so much energy traveling (and being exposed to hazards) that the costs of using the nearest wetland offset the gains. Data from semipermanent Iowa wetlands (Brown and Dinsmore 1986) suggest that, at least in that region, a wetland density of 1 to 5

hectares per square kilometer may be required to support a diverse aquatic avifauna. Richness of aquatic bird communities in individual Maine wetlands was also correlated with local wetland density, but not with distance to the nearest wetland (Gibbs and Melvin 1990). From various studies (e.g., Cowardin et al. 1988; Frederick 1983), it is apparent that wetland-dependent bird species characteristically requiring multiple wetlands during a breeding season generally need the wetlands to be located within 0.5 to 25 kilometers of each other; the exact travel distance depends on the species and other factors. Amphibians and wetland reptiles need wetlands in even closer proximity (Brown et al. 1990). If the increased patch distance is greater than the usual distance an individual is able to safely travel, population losses can potentially occur. Factors that could mitigate habitat fragmentation include:

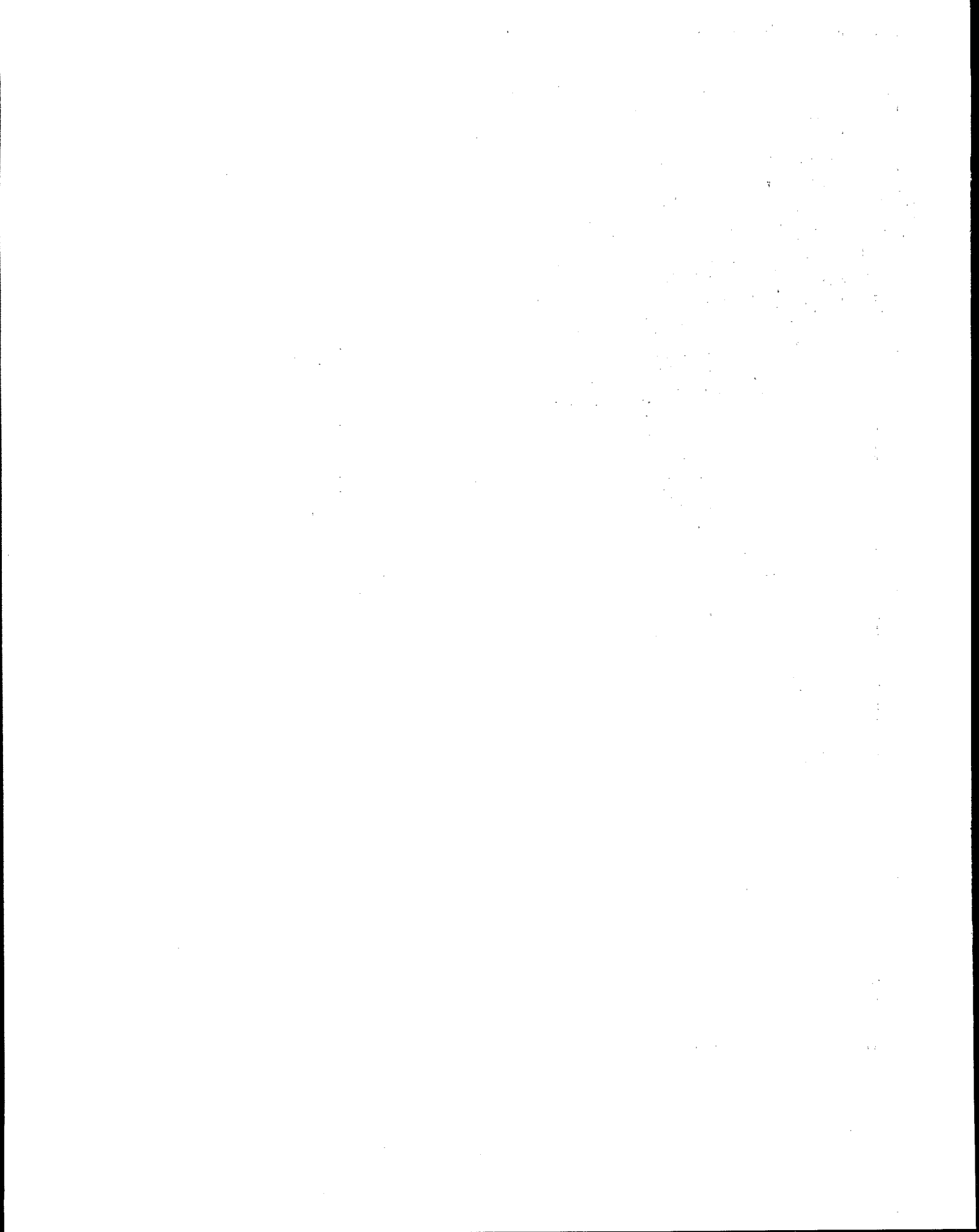
- Suitability of intervening land cover for habitat;
- Suitable type, dimensions, and hydrologic permanence of habitat corridors that form connections among wetlands or between wetlands and other ecosystems crucial to some species;
- Ecological integrity and type of dominant wetland;
- Diversity of local wetland types (e.g., as defined by hydrology, vegetation, water quality and size).

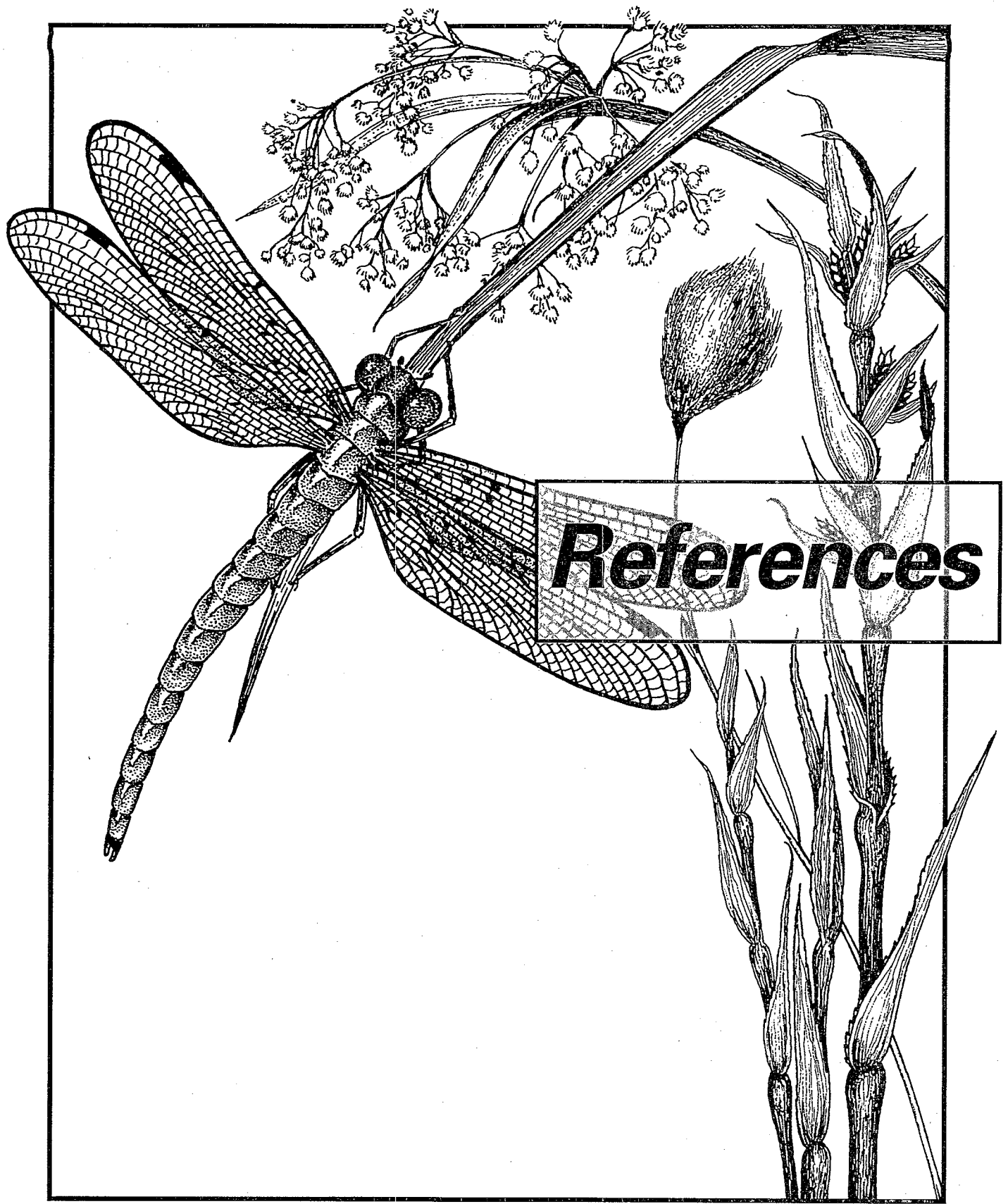
Suppose many wetland-dependent species in a region must, for energetic reasons, forage within 1 km of where they breed (i.e., wetland patch distances <1 km required). If a mitigation banking arrangement or evaluation technique allows for loss of many small (but

proximate) wetlands and protection of fewer large but more isolated ones, then patch distances will probably increase and cumulative effects on populations could be adverse. The same could occur if a new regulation excluding small wetlands indirectly resulted in increased patch distances among the remaining wetlands. Loss of wetland area could also have a disproportionate effect on wildlife if losses are focused on temporary concentration areas (e.g., migratory staging areas, corridors, or nodes within a wildlife dispersal network).

Wetland plant communities may be better able to resist the effects of fragmentation than wetland animal populations. Field data from more than 400 lakes surveyed by Rorslett (1991) indicate that the richness of herbaceous plants was not strongly related to the pool of aquatic plant species potentially available for colonization in a region. However, simulations by Hanson et al. (1990) predicted that fragmentation would lead to reduced richness of woody plants in remaining riparian areas.

It is important to reiterate that travel distance and patch size are only two factors that affect habitat use. The ecological integrity or suitability of within-patch habitat quality is often at least as important (Kushlan 1979). For example, the placement of dikes or pathways built on fill within wetlands can decrease water bird nesting success because of increased predator access (Peterson and Cooper 1991). The point is not that a particular wetland characteristic such as size is "better," but that wetlands be assessed as whole complexes and that their distribution patterns, condition, and actual wildlife use be taken into consideration by resource managers in wetland regulatory programs.





## ***References***

1944

1945

1946

1947

1948

1949

# REFERENCES

- Abbruzzese, B., S.G. Leibowitz, and R. Sumner - 1990a**  
*A Synoptic Approach to Wetland Designation: A Case Study in Louisiana*  
 EPA/600/3-90/066. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Environmental Research Laboratory, Corvallis, Ore.
- Abbruzzese, B., S.G. Leibowitz, and R. Sumner - 1990b**  
*A Synoptic Approach to Wetland Designation: A Case Study in Washington*  
 EPA/600/3-90/072. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Environmental Research Laboratory, Corvallis, Ore.
- Adamus, P.R. - 1983**  
*A Method for Wetland Functional Assessment; Volume II: FHWA Assessment Method*  
 FHA-IP-82-24. U.S. Department of Transportation, Federal Highway Administration, Washington, D.C.
- Adamus, P.R. - 1989**  
*Determining the cumulative effects of forested wetlands: EPA's research program, and choices for research and monitoring designs*  
 P. 36-47 in "Best Management Practices for Forest Wetlands: Concerns, Assessment, Regulation, and Research." National Council of the Paper Industry for Air and Stream Improvement, Inc., Corvallis, Ore.
- Adamus, P.R. - 1992**  
*Data sources and evaluation methods for addressing wetland issues*  
 P. 171-224 in "Statewide Wetlands Strategies: A Guide to Managing the Resource." World Wildlife Fund and Island Press, Washington, D.C.
- Adamus, P.R., and K. Brandt - 1990**  
*Impacts on Quality of Inland Wetlands of the United States: A Survey of Indicators, Techniques, and Applications of Community Level Biomonitoring Data*  
 EPA/600/3-90/073. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Cincinnati, Ohio.
- Adamus, P.R., and L.T. Stockwell - 1983**  
*A Method for Wetland Functional Assessment, Volume I. Critical Review and Evaluation Concepts*  
 FHWA-IP-82-23. U.S. Department of Transportation, Federal Highway Administration, Washington, D.C.
- Adamus, P.R., L.T. Stockwell, E.J. Clairain, Jr., M.E. Morrow, L.P. Rozas, and R.D. Smith - 1991**  
*Wetland Evaluation Technique (WET)*  
 Volume I. Literature Review and Evaluation Rationale. Wetlands Research Program Technical Report WRP-DE-2. Army Engineers Waterways Experiment Station, Vicksburg, Miss.
- Aho, J.M. - 1978**  
*Freshwater snail populations and the equilibrium theory of island biogeography II. Relative importance of chemical and spatial variables*  
 Annales Zoologici Fennici 15:155-164.
- Alexander, C.E., M.A. Broutman, and D.W. Field - 1986**  
*An Inventory of Coastal Wetlands of the USA*  
 Strategic Assessment Branch, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, Rockville, Md.
- Allen, H.E., Jr., and R.M. Bejcek - 1979**  
*Effects of Urbanization on the Magnitude and Frequency of Floods in Northeastern Illinois*  
 Water-Resources Investigations 79-36. U.S. Geological Survey, Denver, Colo.
- Allen, L., T. Bennett, J.H. Lehr, R.J. Petty, and G. Hackett - 1987**  
*DRASTIC: A Standardized System for Evaluating Ground Water Pollution Potential Using Hydrogeologic Settings*  
 EPA/600/2-87/035. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Kerr Environmental Research Laboratory, Ada, Okla.
- Anderson, J.R., E.E. Hardy, J.T. Roach, and R.E. Witmer - 1976**  
*A land use and land cover classification system for use with remote sensor data*  
 Geological Survey Professional Paper 964. U.S. Geological Survey, Washington, D.C.
- Andersson, L., and A. Sivertun - 1991**  
*A GIS-supported method for detecting the hydrological mosaic and the role of man as a hydrological factor*  
 Landscape Ecology 5:107-124.
- Armentrout, C.L., and R.B. Bissell - 1970**  
*Channel slope effect on peak discharge of natural streams*  
 American Society of Civil Engineers Journal of Hydraulics 96(HY2):307-315.
- Armour, C.L., and S.C. Williamson - 1988**  
*Guidance for Modeling Causes and Effects in Environmental Problem Solving*  
 Biological Report 89(4). U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Fort Collins, Colo.
- Auble, G.T., C.A. Segelquist, and L.S. Ischinger - 1988**  
*Assessment of the Role of Bottomland Hardwoods in Sediment and Erosion Control*  
 NERC-88/11. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Fort Collins, Colo.
- Aust, W.M., R. Lea, and J.D. Gregory - 1991**  
*Removal of floodwater sediments by a clearcut tupelo-cypress wetland*  
 Water Resources Bulletin 27:111-116.
- Bailey, R.G. - 1988**  
*Problems with using overlay mapping for planning and their implications for geographic information systems*  
 Environmental Management 12:11-17.
- Bain, M.B., J.S. Irving, R.D. Olsen, E.A. Stull, and G.E. Witmer - 1986**  
*Cumulative impact assessment: Evaluating the environmental effects of multiple human developments*  
 Argonne National Laboratory, Argonne, Ill.
- Barrett, G.W., G.M. Van Dyne, and E.P. Odum - 1976**  
*Stress ecology*  
 BioScience 26(3):192-194.
- Bastedo, J.D., J.G. Nelson, and J.B. Theberge - 1984**  
*Ecological approach to resource survey and planning for environmentally significant areas: The ABC method*  
 Environmental Management 8:125-134.

- Beanlands, G.E., and P.N. Duinker - 1983**  
*An ecological framework for environmental impact assessment in Canada*  
 Institute for Resource and Environmental Studies, Dalhousie University, Halifax, Nova Scotia, and Federal Environmental Assessment Review Office, Hull, Quebec.
- Beanlands, G.E., W.J. Erckmann, G.H. Orians, J. O'Riordan, D. Policansky, M.H. Sadar, and B. Sadler (eds.) - 1986**  
*Cumulative Environmental Effects: A Binational Perspective*  
 Canadian Environmental Assessment Research Council, Ottawa, Ontario, and U.S. National Research Council, Washington, D.C.
- Beasley, R.S., and A.B. Granillo - 1983**  
*Sediment and water yields from managed forests on flat coastal plain sites*  
 Water Resources Bulletin 24:361-366.
- Beckman, E.W - 1976**  
*Magnitude and frequency of floods in Nebraska*  
 Water-Resources Investigations 76-109. U.S. Geological Survey, Lincoln, Neb.
- Bedford, B.L., and E.M. Preston (eds.) - 1988a**  
*Cumulative effects on landscape systems of wetlands: Scientific status, prospects, and regulatory perspectives*  
 Environmental Management 12(5) [special issue].
- Bedford, B.L., and E.M. Preston - 1988b**  
*Developing the scientific basis for assessing cumulative effects of wetland loss and degradation on landscape functions: Status, perspectives, and prospects*  
 Environmental Management 12:751-772.
- Bodient, P., A. Flores, S. Johnson, and P. Pappas - 1985**  
*Floodplain storage and land use analysis at the Woodlands, Texas*  
 Water Resources Bulletin 21:543-547.
- Bodient, P.P., W.C. Huber, and J.P. Heaney - 1976**  
*Modeling hydrologic-land use interactions in Florida*  
 P. 362-366 in W.R. Ott (ed.), "Proceedings of the Conference on Environmental Modeling and Simulation." EPA/600/9-76/016. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Washington, D.C.
- Bodinger, M.S., and R.T. Sniegocki - 1976**  
*Summary Appraisals of the Nations Ground-Water Resources — Arkansas-White-Red Region*  
 Geological Survey Professional Paper 813-H. U.S. Geological Survey, Reston, Va.
- Boll, H - 1981**  
*Illinois Wetlands: Their Value and Management*  
 Illinois Institute of Natural Resources, Chicago, Ill.
- Bollrose, F.C., F.L. Pavoglio, and D.W. Steffek - 1979**  
*Waterfowl populations and the changing environment of the Illinois River Valley*  
 Illinois Natural History Survey Bulletin 32(1):1-54.
- Bolt, C.B - 1975**  
*The 1973 flood and man's constriction of the Mississippi River*  
 Science 189:681-684.
- Bonninger-Truax, M., J.L. Vankat, and R.L. Schaefer - 1992**  
*Trail corridors as habitat and conduits for movement of plant species in Rocky Mountain National Park, Colorado, USA*  
 Landscape Ecology 6(4):269-278.
- Benson, M.A - 1962**  
*Factors influencing the occurrence of floods in a humid region of diverse terrain*  
 Water-Supply Paper 1580-B. U.S. Geological Survey, Washington, D.C.
- Benson, M.A - 1964**  
*Factors affecting the occurrence of floods in the southwest*  
 Water-Supply Paper 1580-D. U.S. Geological Survey, Washington, D.C.
- Bianchi, T.S., and S. Findlay - 1990**  
*Plant pigments as tracers of emergent and submergent macrophytes from the Hudson River*  
 Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 47:492-494.
- Blake, J.G., and J.R. Karr - 1987**  
*Breeding birds of isolated woodlots: Area and habitat relationships*  
 Ecology 68:1724-1734.
- Boling, M.S - 1988**  
*General soil map of Washington State*  
 Master of Science Thesis. Department of Agronomy and Soils, Washington State University, Pullman, Wash.
- Bormann, F.H - 1987**  
*Landscape ecology and air pollution*  
 P. 37-57 in M.G. Turner (ed.), "Landscape Heterogeneity and Disturbance." Ecological Studies, Volume 64. Springer-Verlag, New York, N.Y.
- Born, S.M., S.A. Smith, and D.A. Stephenson - 1979**  
*Hydrology of glacial-terrain lakes, with management and planning applications*  
 Journal of Hydrology 43: 7-43
- Bostrom, U., and S.G. Nilsson - 1983**  
*Latitudinal gradients and local variations in species richness and structure of bird communities on raised peat-bogs in Sweden*  
 Ornis Scandinavica 14:213-226.
- Bourbonniere, R.A - 1987**  
*Organic geochemistry of bog drainage waters*  
 P. 37-57 in C.D.A. Rubec and R.D. Overend (compilers), "Proceedings of the Symposium on Wetlands and Peatlands." Contribution #87-133. National Water Resources Institute, Environment Canada, Burlington, Ontario.
- Boyd, R., and S. Penland - 1981**  
*Washover of deltaic barriers in the Louisiana coast*  
 Transactions of the Gulf Coast Association of Geological Societies 31:243-248.
- Bridges, W.C - 1982**  
*Technique for Estimating Magnitude and Frequency of Floods on Natural-Flow Streams in Florida*  
 Water-Resources Investigations 82-4012. U.S. Geological Survey, Denver, Colo.
- Brinson, M.M., B.L. Swift, R.C. Plantico, and J.S. Barclay - 1981**  
*Riparian Ecosystems: Their Ecology and Status*  
 FWS/OBS-81/17. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Washington, D.C.

- Brooks, R.P., D.E. Arnold, E.D. Bellis, C.S. Keener, and M.J. Croonquist – 1990**  
*A Methodology for Biological Monitoring of Cumulative Impacts on Wetland, Stream, and Riparian Components of Watersheds*  
 Association of Wetland Managers, Inc., Berne, N.Y.
- Brown, M., and J.J. Dinsmore – 1986**  
*Implications of marsh size and isolation for marsh bird management*  
 Journal of Wildlife Management 50(3):392-397.
- Brown, M., and J.J. Dinsmore – 1988**  
*Habitat islands and the equilibrium theory of island biogeography: testing some predictions*  
 Oecologia 75:426-429.
- Brown, M.T., J.M. Schaefer, and K.H. Brandt – 1990**  
*Buffer Zones for Water, Wetlands, and Wildlife in East Central Florida*  
 CFW Publication #89-07. Center for Wetlands, University of Florida, Gainesville, Fla.
- Brown, R.G. – 1988**  
*Effects of precipitation and land use on storm runoff*  
 Water Resources Bulletin 24:421-426.
- Brun, L.J., J.L. Richardson, J.W. Enz, and J.K. Larsen – 1981**  
*Stream flow changes in the southern Red River Valley of North Dakota*  
 North Dakota Farm Research 38:11-16.
- Burdick, D.M., D. Cushman, R. Hamilton, and J.G. Gosselink – 1989**  
*Faunal changes and bottomland hardwood forest loss in the Tensas Watershed, Louisiana*  
 Conservation Biology 3:282-291.
- Burger, J. – 1981**  
*A model for the evolution of mixed-species colonies of Ciconiiformes*  
 Quarterly Review of Biology 56:143-167.
- Burkham, D.E. – 1976**  
*Hydraulic effects of changes in bottomland vegetation on three major foods, Gila River in southeastern Arizona*  
 Geological Survey Professional Paper 655-J. U.S. Geological Survey, Reston, Va.
- Burrough, P.A. – 1986**  
*Principles of Geographical Information Systems for Land Resources Assessment*  
 Carendon Press, Oxford, England.
- Canham, C.D., and P.L. Marks – 1985**  
*The response of woody plants to disturbance: Patterns of establishment and growth*  
 P. 197-216 in S.T.A. Pickett and P.S. White (eds.), "The Ecology of Natural Disturbance and Patch Dynamics."  
 Academic Press, Inc., New York, N.Y.
- Canning, D.J., and M. Stevens – 1989**  
*Wetlands of Washington: A Resource Characterization*  
 Land and Wetland Resources Subcommittee, Environment 2010 Technical Advisory Committee, Washington Department of Ecology, Olympia, Wash.
- Canter, K.J., C.P. den Herder, A.A. de Veer, P.W.M. Veelenturf, and R.W. de Waal – 1991**  
*Landscape-ecological mapping of the Netherlands*  
 Landscape Ecology 5:145-162.
- Carpenter, D.H. – 1983**  
*Characteristics of Stream Flow in Maryland*  
 Report of Investigations No. 35. Maryland Geological Survey, Annapolis, Md.
- Carter, V. – 1986**  
*An overview of the hydrologic concerns related to wetlands in the United States*  
 Canadian Journal of Botany 64:364-374.
- Chabreck, R.H., and A.W. Palmisano – 1973**  
*The effects of Hurricane Camille on the marshes of the Mississippi River delta*  
 Ecology 54:1118-1123.
- Chatoian, J. – 1988**  
*Cumulative off-site watershed effects analysis*  
 In "USFS Region V Soil and Water Conservation Handbook." FSH 2509.22. USDA Forest Service, San Francisco, Calif.
- Childers, D.L., and J.G. Gosselink – 1990**  
*Assessment of cumulative impacts to water quality in a forested wetland landscape*  
 Journal of Environmental Quality 19:455-464.
- Childs, E.F. – 1970**  
*Upper Charles River Watershed Hydrology*  
 Appendix E. New England Division, U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, Waltham, Mass.
- Choquette, A.F. – 1988**  
*Regionalization of Peak Discharges from Streams in Kentucky*  
 Water-Resources Investigations 87-4209. U.S. Geological Survey, Denver, Colo.
- Christensen, R.C., E.B. Johnson, and G.G. Plantz – 1986**  
*Manual for Estimating Selected Streamflow Characteristics of Natural-Flow Streams in the Colorado River Basin in Utah*  
 Water-Resources Investigations 85-4297. U.S. Geological Survey, Denver, Colo.
- Cobourn, H. – 1989**  
*Is cumulative watershed effects analysis coming of age?*  
 Journal of Soil and Water Conservation 44(4):267-270.
- Coleman, J.M. – 1988**  
*Dynamic changes and processes in the Mississippi River delta*  
 Geological Society of America Bulletin 100:999-1015.
- Colson, B.E., and J.W. Hudson – 1976**  
*Flood Frequency of Mississippi Streams*  
 RO-76-014-PR. Mississippi Highway Department, Jackson, Miss.
- Conger, D.H. – 1971**  
*Estimating Magnitude and Frequency of Floods in Wisconsin*  
 Open-file Report. U.S. Geological Survey, Water Resources Division, Madison, Wis.
- Conner, W.H., and J.W. Day, Jr. – 1987**  
*The Ecology of Barataria Basin, Louisiana: An Estuarine Profile*  
 Biological Report 85(7.13). National Wetlands Research Center, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Slidell, La.
- The Conservation Foundation – 1988**  
*Protecting America's Wetlands: An Action Agenda. The Final Technical Report of the National Wetlands Policy Forum*  
 The Conservation Foundation, Washington, D.C.

- Contant, C.K., and I. Ortolano – 1985**  
*Evaluating a cumulative impact assessment approach*  
Water Resources Research 21(9):1313-1318.
- Cooper, J.R., J.W. Gilliam, and T.C. Jacobs – 1986**  
*Riparian areas as a control of nonpoint pollutants*  
P. 166-192 in D.L. Correll (ed.), "Watershed Research Perspectives." Smithsonian Institution Press, Washington, D.C.
- Corps of Engineers – 1988**  
*Comparison of Modeling Techniques for Wetland Areas*  
Project Report No. 88-4. Hydrologic Engineering Center, U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, Davis, Calif.
- Costanza, R., and F.H. Sklar – 1985**  
*Articulation, accuracy and effectiveness of mathematical models: A review of freshwater wetland applications*  
Ecological Modelling 27:45-68.
- Council on Environmental Quality [CEQ] – 1991**  
*Linking ecosystems and biodiversity*  
P. 135-187 in "Environmental Quality: 21st Annual Report." U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, D.C.
- Cowardin, L.M. – 1969**  
*Use of flooded timber by waterfowl at the Montezuma National Wildlife Refuge*  
Journal of Wildlife Management 33:829-842.
- Cowardin, L.M., V. Carter, F.C. Golet, and E.T. LaRoe – 1979**  
*Classification of Wetlands and Deepwater Habitats of the United States*  
FWS/OBS-79/31. Office of Biological Services, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Washington, D.C.
- Cowardin, L.M., D.H. Johnson, T.L. Shaffer, and D.W. Sparling – 1988**  
*Applications of a Simulation Model to Decisions in Mallard Management*  
Technical Report 17. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Jamestown, N.D.
- Croonquist, M.J., and R.P. Brooks – 1991**  
*Use of avian and mammalian guilds as indicators of cumulative impacts in riparian-wetland areas*  
Environmental Management 15:701-714.
- Cummins, J.E., M.R. Collings, and E.G. Nassar – 1975**  
*Magnitude and Frequency of Floods in Washington*  
Open-File Report 74-336. State of Washington Department of Highways, Tacoma, Wash.
- Dahl, T.E. – 1990**  
*Wetlands Losses in the United States 1780s to 1980s*  
U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Washington, D.C.
- Dahl, T.E., C.E. Johnson, and W.E. Frayer – 1991**  
*Wetlands Status and Trends in the Conterminous United States, mid-1970's to mid-1980's*  
U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Washington, D.C.
- Dames and Moore, Inc. – 1981**  
*Methodology for the Analysis of Cumulative Impacts of Permit Activities Regulated by the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers*  
Institute for Water Resources, Fort Belvoir, Va.
- Darmor, K.I. – 1970**  
*A Proposed Streamflow Data Program for New York*  
Open-file Report. U.S. Geological Survey, Albany, N.Y.
- Davis, L.G. – 1974**  
*Floods in Indiana: Technical Manual for Estimating Their Magnitude and Frequency*  
Circular 710. U.S. Geological Survey, Reston, Va.
- DeAngelis, D.L., P.J. Mulholland, J.W. Elwood, A.V. Palumbo, and A.D. Steinman – 1990**  
*Biogeochemical cycling constraints on stream ecosystem recovery*  
Environmental Management 14:685-697.
- Debano, L.F., and L.J. Schmidt – 1990**  
*Potential for enhancing riparian habitats in the southwestern United States with watershed practices*  
Forest Ecology and Management 33/34: 385-403.
- Delcourt, H.R., P.A. Delcourt, and T. Webb, III – 1983**  
*Dynamic plant ecology: The spectrum of vegetational change in space and time*  
Quaternary Science Reviews 1:153-175.
- Detenbeck, N.E., C.A. Johnston, and G.J. Niemi – 1988**  
*The Effect of Wetlands on Lake Water Quality: A Landscape Approach*  
Natural Resources Research Institute, University of Minnesota, Duluth, Minn.
- DeVries, J.J. – 1980**  
*Effects of Floodplain Encroachments on Peak Flow*  
Water Resources Support Center, U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, Davis, Calif.
- Dewey and Kropper Engineers – 1964**  
*Effect of Loss of Valley Storage Due to Encroachment — Connecticut River*  
Connecticut Water Resources Commission, Hartford, Conn.
- Dickert, T.G., and A.E. Tuttle — 1985**  
*Cumulative impact assessment in environmental planning: A coastal wetlands watershed example*  
Environmental Impact Assessment Review 5(1): 37-64.
- Dillon, P.J., L.A. Molot, and W.A. Schneider – 1991**  
*Phosphorus and nitrogen export from forested stream catchments in central Ontario*  
Journal of Environmental Quality 20:857-864.
- Dreher, D.W., G.C. Schaefer, and D.L. Hey – 1989**  
*Evaluation of Stormwater Detention Effectiveness in Northeastern Illinois*  
Northeastern Illinois Planning Commission, Chicago, Ill.
- Driver, E.A. – 1977**  
*Chironomid communities in small prairie ponds: some characteristics and controls*  
Freshwater Biology 7:121-133.
- Duever, M.J. – 1988**  
*Hydrologic processes for models of freshwater wetlands*  
P. 9-39 in W.J. Mitsch, M. Straskraba, and S.E. Jørgensen (eds.), "Wetland Modelling." Developments in Environmental Modelling, 12. Elsevier Science Publishers, New York, N.Y.
- Durham, D., R. Abernethy, and P. Hamel – 1987**  
*Development of the West Tennessee Bottomland Hardwood Habitat Evaluation System Model*  
U.S. Army Corps of Engineers and Tennessee Department of Conservation, Nashville, Tenn.

**Dzubin, A - 1969**

*Comments on carrying capacity of small ponds for ducks and possible effects of density on mallard production*  
P. 239-267 in J.T. Ratti, L.D. Flake, and W.A. Wentz (eds.),  
"Waterfowl Ecology and Management: Selected Readings."  
Allen Press, Lawrence, Kan.

**Eadie, J.M., T.A. Hurly, R.D. Montgomerie, and K.L. Teather - 1986**

*Lakes and rivers as islands: Species-area relationships in the fish faunas of Ontario*  
Environmental Biology of Fishes 15:81-89.

**Ebert, T.A., and M.L. Balko - 1987**

*Temporary pools as islands in space and time: the biota of vernal pools in San Diego, Southern California*  
Archiv für Hydrobiologie 110:101-123.

**Eckhardt, B.W., and T.R. Moore - 1990**

*Controls on dissolved organic carbon concentrations in streams, southern Quebec*  
Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 47:1537-1544.

**Edgerton, C.R - 1973**

*Handbook of Design for Highway Surface Drainage Structures*  
Department of Transportation, North Carolina State Highway Commission, Raleigh, N.C.

**Edwards, R.T., and J.L. Meyer - 1987**

*Metabolism of a subtropical low gradient blackwater river*  
Freshwater Biology 17:251-263.

**Ehrlich, P.R., and A.H. Ehrlich - 1981**

*Extinction: The Causes and Consequences of the Disappearance of Species*  
Random House, New York, N.Y.

**Elder, J.F - 1985**

*Nitrogen and phosphorus speciation and flux in a large Florida river wetland system*  
Water Resources Research 21:724-732.

**Emery, R.M - 1986**

*Impact interaction potential: A basinwide algorithm for assessing cumulative impacts from hydropower projects*  
Journal of Environmental Management 23:341-360.

**Environmental Protection Agency [EPA] - 1987**

*Unfinished Business: A Comparative Assessment of Environmental Problems*  
Overview Technical Report. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Washington, D.C.

**Environmental Protection Agency [EPA] - 1989**

*Quality Assurance Program Plan For the Environmental Research Laboratory—Corvallis*  
Revision 2. EPA Corvallis No. 110.001. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Environmental Research Laboratory, Corvallis, Ore.

**Erwin, R.M., J.A. Spendelov, P. Geissler, and B.K. Williams - 1986**

*Relationships between nesting populations of wading birds and habitat features along the Atlantic Coast*  
P. 55-69 in W.R. Whitman and W.H. Meredith (eds.),  
"Proceedings of a Symposium on Waterfowl and Wetlands in the Coastal Zone of the Atlantic Flyway." Delaware Department of Natural Resources and Environmental Control, Dover, Del.

**Fisher, S.G., L.J. Gray, N.B. Grimm, and D.E. Busch - 1982**

*Temporal succession in a desert stream ecosystem following flash flooding*  
Ecological Monographs 52:93-110.

**Fisher, S.G., and N.B. Grimm - 1991**

*Streams and disturbance: Are cross-ecosystem comparisons useful?*  
P. 196-221 in J. Cole, G. Lovett, and S. Findlay (eds.),  
"Comparative Analyses of Ecosystems: Patterns, Mechanisms, and Theories." Springer-Verlag, New York, N.Y.

**Flake, L.D - 1979**

*Wetland diversity and waterfowl*  
P. 312-319 in P.E. Greeson, J.R. Clark, and J.E. Clark (eds.),  
"Wetland Functions and Values: The State of Our Understanding." American Water Resources Association, Minneapolis, Minn.

**Flippo, H.N., Jr - 1977**

*Floods in Pennsylvania*  
Water Resources Bulletin No. 13. Pennsylvania Department Environmental Resources, Harrisburg, Pa.

**Flores, A.C., P.B. Bedient, and L.W. Mays - 1982**

*Method for optimizing size and location of urban detention storage*  
P. 357-365 in "Proceedings of the International Symposium on Urban Hydrology, Hydraulics, and Sediment Control," American Society of Civil Engineers, New York, N.Y.

**Flowerdew, R., and M. Green - 1989**

*Statistical methods for interference between incompatible zonal systems*  
P. 239-247 in M.F. Goodchild and S. Gopal (eds.), "Accuracy of Spatial Databases." Taylor and Francis Ltd., New York, N.Y.

**Forman, R.T.T - 1990**

*Ecologically sustainable landscapes: The role of spatial configuration*  
P. 261-278 in I.S. Zonneveld and R.T.T. Forman (eds.),  
"Changing Landscapes: An Ecological Perspective." Springer-Verlag, New York, N.Y.

**Forman, R.T.T., and M. Godron - 1981**

*Patches and structural components for a landscape ecology*  
BioScience 31(10):733-740.

**Forman, R.T.T., and M. Godron - 1986**

*Landscape Ecology*  
John Wiley and Sons, New York, N.Y.

**Franklin, J.F., and C.T. Dyrness - 1984**

*Natural Vegetation of Oregon and Washington*  
Oregon State University Press, Corvallis, Ore.

**Franklin, J.F., and R.T.T. Forman - 1987**

*Creating landscape patterns by forest cutting: Ecological consequences and principles*  
Landscape Ecology 1(1):5-18.

**Frederick, R.B - 1983**

*Developing an energetics model for waterfowl refuge management*  
P. 253-257 in W.K. Lauenroth, G.V. Skogerboe, and M. Flug (eds.), "Analysis of Ecological Systems: State-of-the-art in Ecological Modeling." Elsevier Scientific Publishing Company, New York, N.Y.

- Gatlin, L.L. – 1972**  
*Information Theory and the Living System*  
Columbia University Press, New York, N.Y.
- Gibbs, J.P., and J. Faaborg – 1990**  
*Estimating the viability of ovenbird and Kentucky warbler populations in forest fragments*  
Conservation Biology 4:193-196.
- Gibbs, J.P., and S.M. Melvin – 1990**  
*An Assessment of Wading Birds and Other Wetlands Avifauna and Their Habitats in Maine*  
Maine Department Inland Fisheries and Wildlife, Augusta, Maine.
- Gibbs, J.P., S. Woodward, M.L. Hunter, and A.E. Hutchinson – 1987**  
*Determinants of Great Blue Heron colony distribution in coastal Maine*  
Auk 104:38-47.
- Glatfelter, D.R. – 1984**  
*Techniques for Estimating Magnitude and Frequency of Floods on Streams in Indiana*  
Water Resources Investigations 84-4134. U.S. Geological Survey, Denver, Colo.
- Gorham, E., S.J. Eisenreich, J. Ford, and M.V. Santelman – 1985**  
*The chemistry of bog waters*  
P. 339-363 in W. Stumm (ed.), "Chemical Processes in Lakes." John Wiley and Sons, New York, N.Y.
- Gosselink, J.G. – 1984**  
*The Ecology of Delta Marshes of Coastal Louisiana: A Community Profile*  
FWS/OBS-84/09. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Washington, D.C.
- Gosselink, J.G., and L.C. Lee – 1989**  
*Cumulative impact assessment in bottomland hardwood forests*  
Wetlands 9:83-174.
- Gosselink, J.G., C.E. Sassor, L.A. Creasman, S.C. Hamilton, E.M. Swenson, and G.P. Shaffer – 1990a**  
*Cumulative Impact Assessment in the Pearl River Basin, Mississippi and Louisiana*  
LSU-CEI-90-03. Coastal Ecology Institute, Louisiana State University, Baton Rouge, La.
- Gosselink, J.G., G.P. Shafer, L.C. Lee, D.M. Burdick, D.L. Childers, N.C. Leibowitz, S.C. Hamilton, R. Boumans, D. Cushman, S. Fields, M. Koch, and J.M. Vissor – 1990b**  
*Landscape conservation in a forested wetland watershed: Can we manage cumulative impacts?*  
BioScience 40:588-600.
- Guetzkow, L.C. – 1977**  
*Techniques for Estimating Magnitude and Frequency of Floods in Minnesota*  
Water Resources Investigations 77-31. U.S. Geological Survey, St. Paul, Minn.
- Haan, C.T., and H.P. Johnson – 1968**  
*Drainage Hydrology of Depressional Watersheds*  
American Society of Civil Engineers Paper No. 69.
- Hains, C.F. – 1973**  
*Floods in Alabama*  
Open-file Report. U.S. Geological Survey, Montgomery, Ala.
- Hammer, D. – 1992**  
*Designing constructed wetlands systems to treat agricultural nonpoint source pollution*  
Ecological Engineering 1(1/2): 49-82.
- Hammett, K.M., J.F. Turner, and W.R. Murphy – 1978**  
*Magnitude and Frequency of Flooding on the Myakka River, Southwest Florida*  
Open-File Report. U.S. Geological Survey, Tallahassee, Fla.
- Hanson, J.S., G.P. Malanson, and M.P. Armstrong – 1990**  
*Landscape fragmentation and dispersal in a model of riparian forest dynamics*  
Ecological Modelling 49:277-296.
- Harris, D.D., L.L. Hubbard, and L.E. Hubbard – 1979**  
*Magnitude and frequency of floods in western Oregon*  
Open-file Report 79-553. U.S. Geological Survey, Portland, Ore.
- Harris, L.D. – 1984**  
*The Fragmented Forest: Island Biogeography Theory and the Preservation of Biotic Diversity*  
University of Chicago Press, Chicago, Ill.
- Harris, L.D. – 1988**  
*The nature of cumulative impacts on biotic diversity of wetland vertebrates*  
Environmental Management 12(5):675-693.
- Harris, L.D., and R.D. Wallace – 1984**  
*Breeding bird species in Florida forest fragments*  
Proceedings of the Annual Conference of the Southeastern Association of Fish and Wildlife Agencies 38:87-96.
- Hauth, L.D. – 1974**  
*Technique for Estimating the Magnitude and Frequency of Missouri Floods*  
Open-File Report. U.S. Geological Survey, Denver, Colo.
- Hayden, T.J., J. Faaborg, and R.L. Clawson – 1985**  
*Estimates of minimum area requirements for Missouri forest birds*  
Transactions of the Missouri Academy of Science 19:11-22.
- Hayes, G.S., and R.A. Morrill – 1970**  
*A Proposed Streamflow Data Program for Maine*  
Open-file Report. U.S. Geological Survey, Augusta, Maine.
- Heath, R.C. – 1982**  
*Classification of groundwater systems of the United States*  
Ground Water 20:393-401.
- Henderson, M., G. Merriam, and J. Wegner – 1985**  
*Patchy environments and species survival: Chipmunks in an agricultural mosaic*  
Biological Conservation 31:95-105.
- Henein, K., and G. Merriam – 1990**  
*The elements of connectivity where corridor quality is variable*  
Landscape Ecology 4(2/3):157-170.
- Hindall, S. M. – 1975**  
*Measurement and Prediction of Sediment Yields in Wisconsin Streams*  
Water Resources Investigations 54-75. U. S. Geological Survey, Madison, Wis.
- Hirsch, A. – 1988**  
*Regulatory context for cumulative impact research*  
Environmental Management 12(5):715-723.

- Hjel, H.R. – 1984**  
*Use of Selected Bank Characteristics to Estimate Mean Annual Runoff and Peak Discharges for Ungaged Streams in Drainage Basins Containing Strippable Coal Resources, Northwestern New Mexico*  
 Water-Resources Investigations Report 84-4260. U.S. Geological Survey, Albuquerque, N.M.
- Holling, C.S. – 1973**  
*Resilience and stability of ecological systems*  
 Annual Review of Ecology and Systematics 4:1-24.
- Hopkins, L.D. – 1977**  
*Methods for generating land suitability maps: A comparative evaluation*  
 American Institute of Planners Journal 43:386-400.
- Horak, G.C., E.C. Vlachos, and E.W. Cline – 1983**  
*Methodological Guidance for Assessing Cumulative Impacts on Fish and Wildlife*  
 Contract No. 14-16-0009-81-058. Dynamac Corporation, Enviro Control Division, Fort Collins, Colo.
- Hunter, W.C., R.D. Ohmart, and B.W. Anderson – 1987**  
*Status of breeding riparian-obligate birds in southwestern riverine systems*  
 Western Birds 18:10-18.
- Illinois Environmental Protection Agency (IEPA) – 1990**  
*Illinois Water Quality Report 1988-1989*  
 IEPA/WPC/90-160. Division of Water Pollution Control, Springfield, Ill.
- Inkley, D.B., and S.H. Anderson – 1982**  
*Wildlife Communities and Land Classification Systems. Transactions of the 47th North American Wildlife and Natural Resources Conference*  
 Wildlife Management Institute, Washington, D.C.
- Irwin, F., and B. Rodes – 1992**  
*Making Decisions on Cumulative Environmental Impacts: A Conceptual Framework*  
 World Wildlife Fund, Washington, D.C.
- Jacques, J.E., and D.L. Lorenz – 1988**  
*Techniques for Estimating the Magnitude and Frequency of Floods of Ungaged Streams in Minnesota*  
 Water-Resources Investigations 87-4170. U.S. Geological Survey, St. Paul, Minn.
- Janowicz, J.R. – 1986**  
*A methodology for estimating design peak flows for Yukon Territory*  
 P. 313-320 in "Cold Regions Hydrology Symposium."  
 American Water Resources Association, Bethesda, Md.
- Jeffries, M. – 1989**  
*Measuring Talling's 'element of chance' in pond populations*  
 Freshwater Biology 20:383-393.
- Johnson, B.H., and P.K. Senter – 1977**  
*Effect of Loss of Valley Storage in the Cannelton Pool on Ohio River Flood Heights*  
 Miscellaneous Paper H-77-7. U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, Waterways Experiment Station, Vicksburg, Miss.
- Johnson, M.V., and R.J. Omang – 1976**  
*A Method for Estimating Magnitude and Frequency of Floods in Montana*  
 Open-File Report. U.S. Geological Survey, Denver, Colo.
- Johnston, C.A. – 1991**  
*Sediment and nutrient retention by freshwater wetlands: Effects on surface water quality*  
 Critical Reviews in Environmental Control 21:491-565.
- Johnston, C.A., N.E. Detenbeck, J.P. Bonde, and G.J. Niemi – 1988**  
*Geographic Information Systems for cumulative impact assessment*  
 Photogrammetric Engineering and Remote Sensing 54:1609-1615.
- Johnston, C.A., N.E. Detenbeck, J.P. Bonde, and G.J. Niemi – 1990a**  
*The cumulative effect of wetlands on stream water quality and quantity: A landscape perspective*  
 Biogeochemistry 10:105-141.
- Johnston, C.A., T. Johnson, M. Kuehl, D. Taylor, and J. Westman – 1990b**  
*The Effects of Freshwater Wetlands on Water Quality: A Compilation of Literature Values*  
 Natural Resources Research Institute, University of Minnesota, Duluth, Minn.
- Jones, J.B., Jr., and L.A. Smock – 1991**  
*Transport and retention of particulate organic matter in two low-gradient headwater streams*  
 Journal of the North American Benthological Society 10:115-126.
- Jones, J.R., B.R. Borofka, and R.W. Bachmann – 1976**  
*Factors affecting nutrient loads in some Iowa streams*  
 Water Research 10:117-122.
- Jordan, T.E., D.L. Correll, W.T. Peterjohn, and D.E. Weller – 1986**  
*Nutrient flux in a landscape: The Rhode River watershed and receiving waters*  
 P. 57-76 in D.L. Correll (ed.), "Watershed Research Perspectives." Smithsonian Institution Press, Washington, D.C.
- Kadlec, J.A. – 1987**  
*Nutrient dynamics in wetlands*  
 P. 393-419 in K.R. Reddy and W.H. Smith (eds.), "Aquatic Plants for Water Treatment and Resource Recovery."  
 Magnolia Publishing, Inc., Orlando, Fla.
- Kahn, A.E. – 1966**  
*The tyranny of small decisions: Market failures, imperfections, and the limits of economics*  
 Kyklos 19:23-47.
- Kantrud, H.A., J.B. Millar, and A.G. van der Valk – 1989**  
*Vegetation of wetlands of the prairie pothole region*  
 P. 132-187 in A. van der Valk (ed.), "Northern Prairie Wetlands." Iowa State University Press, Ames, Iowa.
- Kantrud, H.A., and R.F. Stewart – 1984**  
*Ecological distribution and crude density of breeding birds on prairie wetlands*  
 Journal of Wildlife Management 48:426-437.
- Karr, J.R. – 1981**  
*Assessment of biotic integrity using fish communities*  
 Fisheries 6(6):21-31.
- Kentula, M.E., R.P. Brooks, S.E. Gwin, C.C. Holland, A.D. Sherman, and J.C. Sifneos – 1992**  
*An Approach to Improving Decision Making in Wetland Restoration and Creation*  
 EPA/600/R-92/150. U. S. Environmental Protection Agency, Environmental Research Laboratory, Corvallis, Ore.

- Kerekes, J., S. Beauchamp, R. Tordon, and T. Pollock - 1986**  
Sources of sulphate and acidity in wetlands and lakes in Nova Scotia  
Water, Air, and Soil Pollution 31:207-214.
- Kosol, R.H. - 1989**  
The role of the Mississippi River in wetland loss in southeastern Louisiana, U.S.A.  
Environmental Geology and Water Sciences 13:183-193.
- Knight, D.H. - 1987**  
Parasites, lightning, and the vegetation mosaic in wilderness landscapes  
P. 59-83 in M.G. Turner (ed.), "Landscape Heterogeneity and Disturbance." Ecological Studies, Volume 64. Springer-Verlag, New York, N.Y.
- Koltun, G., and J.W. Roberts - 1990**  
Techniques for Estimating Flood-Peak Discharges of Rural, Unregulated Streams in Ohio  
Water-Resources Investigations 89-4126. U.S. Geological Survey, Denver, Colo.
- Kuchler, A.W. - 1985**  
Potential Natural Vegetation  
1:7,500,000 map. U.S. Geological Survey, Reston, Va.
- Kushlan, J.A. - 1979**  
Design and management of continental wildlife reserves: lessons from the Everglades  
Biological Conservation 15:281-290.
- Kusler, J.A., and M.E. Kentula - 1990**  
Executive Summary  
P. xvii-xxv in J.A. Kusler and M.E. Kentula (eds.), "Wetland Creation and Restoration: The Status of the Science." Island Press, Washington, D.C.
- LaBaugh, J.W. - 1986**  
Wetland ecosystem studies from a hydrologic perspective  
Water Resources Bulletin 22(1):1-10.
- Laenen, A. - 1980**  
Storm Runoff as Related to Urbanization in the Portland, Oregon - Vancouver, Washington Area  
Open-File Report 80-689. U.S. Geological Survey, Portland, Ore.
- Landers, M.N., and K.V. Wilson, Jr. - 1991**  
Flood characteristics of Mississippi streams  
Water-Resources Investigations 91-4037. U.S. Geological Survey, Jackson, Miss.
- Lane, P.A., and R.R. Wallace - 1988**  
A User's Guide to Cumulative Effects Assessment in Canada  
Canadian Environmental Assessment Research Council, Ottawa, Ontario.
- Lara, O.G. - 1973**  
Floods in Iowa: Technical Manual for Estimating Their Magnitude and Frequency  
Open-File Report. U.S. Geological Survey, Denver, Colo.
- Larson, D.P., J.M. Omernik, R.M. Hughes, C.M. Rohm, T.R. Whittier, A.J. Kinney, A.L. Gallant, and D.R. Dudley - 1986**  
The correspondence between spatial patterns in fish assemblages in Ohio streams and aquatic ecoregions  
Environmental Management 10:815-828.
- LaZerte, B.D., and P.J. Dillon - 1984**  
Relative importance of anthropogenic versus natural sources of acidity in lakes and streams of central Ontario  
Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 41:1664-1677.
- Lee, F.N. - 1985a**  
Analysis of the Low-Flow Characteristics of Streams in Louisiana  
Water Resources Technical Report No. 35. Louisiana Department of Transportation and Development, Baton Rouge, La.
- Lee, F.N. - 1985b**  
Floods in Louisiana, Magnitude and Frequency  
Water Resources Technical Report No. 36. Louisiana Department of Transportation and Development, Baton Rouge, La.
- Lee, L.C., and J.G. Gosselink - 1988**  
Cumulative impacts on wetlands: Linking scientific assessments and regulatory alternatives  
Environmental Management 12(5):591-602.
- Leibowitz, S.G., E.M. Preston, L.Y. Arnaut, N.E. Detenbeck, C.A. Hagley, M.E. Kentula, R.K. Olson, W.D. Sanville, and R.R. Sumner - 1992**  
Wetland Research Plan FY92-96: An Integrated Risk-Based Approach  
EPA/600/R-92/060. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Environmental Research Laboratory, Corvallis, Ore.
- Leitman, H.M., M.R. Darst, and J.J. Nordhaus - 1991**  
Fishes in the Forested Flood Plain of the Ochlockonee River, Florida, During Flood and Drought Conditions  
Water-Resources Investigations 90-4202. U.S. Geological Survey, Tallahassee, Fla.
- Liegel, L., D. Cassell, D. Stevens, P. Shaffer, and R. Church - 1991**  
Regional characteristics of land use in northeast and southern Blue Ridge Province: Associations with acid rain effects on surface-water chemistry  
Environmental Management 15:269-279.
- Loken, L.G. - 1991**  
Wetland soil characteristics of basins in closed groundwater catchment systems  
Masters of Science Thesis. North Dakota State University, Fargo, N.D.
- Lopez, M.A., and W.M. Woodham - 1983**  
Magnitude and Frequency of Flooding in Small Urban Watersheds in the Tampa Bay Area, West-Central Florida  
Water-Resources Investigations 82-42. U.S. Geological Survey, Denver, Colo.
- Loucks, O.L. - 1970**  
Evolution of diversity, efficiency, and community stability  
American Zoologist 10:17-25.
- Louisiana Department of Environmental Quality [LDEQ] - 1988**  
State of Louisiana Water Quality Management Plan  
Volume 6, Part A: Nonpoint source pollution assessment report. Louisiana Department of Environmental Quality, Baton Rouge, La.
- Lowe, A.S. - 1979**  
Magnitude and Frequency of Floods for Small Watersheds in Louisiana  
Research Study 65-2H. Louisiana Department of Transportation and Development, Baton Rouge, La.

- Lowe, R.W., and C.D. Cooley - 1981**  
*A Resource Inventory of the Pearl River Basin, Mississippi and Louisiana*  
 U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Decatur, Ala.
- Lugo, A.E. - 1978**  
*Stress and ecosystems*  
 P. 62-101 in "Energy and Environmental Stress in Aquatic Ecosystems." U.S. Department of Energy Symposium Series CONF-77114. National Technical Information Service, Washington, D.C.
- Lumia, R. - 1984**  
*Flood-Discharge Profiles of Selected Streams in Rockland County, New York*  
 Water-Resources Investigations 84-4049. U.S. Geological Survey, Denver, Colo.
- MacArthur, R. - 1955**  
*Fluctuations of animal populations, and a measure of community stability*  
*Ecology* 36(3):533-536.
- MacArthur, R.H., and E.O. Wilson - 1967**  
*The Theory of Island Biogeography*  
 Monographs in Population Biology 1. Princeton University Press, Princeton, N.J.
- Mader, S.F., W.M. Aust, and R. Lea - 1989**  
*Changes in functional values of a forested wetland following timber harvesting practices*  
 P. 149-154 in D.D. Hook and R. Lea (eds.), "Proceedings of the Symposium: The Forested Wetlands of the Southern United States." General Technical Report SE-50. USDA Forest Service, Asheville, N.C.
- Manicacci, D., I. Olivieri, V. Perrot, A. Atlan, P.-H. Gouyon, J.-M. Prosperi, and D. Couvet - 1992**  
*Landscape ecology: Population genetics at the metapopulation level*  
*Landscape Ecology* 6(3):147-159.
- Mann, W., P. Dorn, and R. Brandl - 1991**  
*Local distribution of amphibians: The importance of habitat fragmentation*  
*Global Ecological Biogeography Letters* 1:36-41.
- Margalef, R. - 1968**  
*Perspectives in Ecological Theory*  
 University of Chicago Press, Chicago.
- Maristany, A.E., and R.L. Bartel - 1989**  
*Wetlands and stormwater management: A case study of Lake Munson. Part I: Long-term treatment efficiencies*  
 P. 215-230 in D.W. Fisk (ed.), "Wetlands Concerns and Successes." American Water Resources Association, Bethesda, Md.
- May, R.M. - 1974**  
*Stability and Complexity in Model Ecosystems*  
 Monographs in Population Biology 6. Princeton University Press, Princeton, N.J.
- McCormick, P.V., P.M. Stewart, and J. Cairns, Jr. - 1987**  
*Effect of distance from a source pool on protozoan colonization of isolated aquatic systems*  
*Journal of Freshwater Ecology* 4:1-15.
- McCuen, R.H. - 1979**  
*Downstream effects of stormwater management basins*  
 American Society of Civil Engineers Journal of Hydraulics Division 105 (HY11):1343-1356.
- McHarg, I. - 1969**  
*Design with Nature*  
 Natural History Press, New York, N.Y.
- McWilliams, W.H., and J.F. Rosson, Jr. - 1990**  
*Composition and vulnerability of bottomland hardwood forests of the Coastal Plain Province in the south central United States*  
*Forest Ecology and Management* 33/34:485-501.
- Megahan, W.S. - 1992**  
*Status of the NCASI cumulative watershed effects program and methodology*  
 National Council of the Paper Industry for Air and Stream Improvement, Inc., Corvallis, Ore.
- Merriam, G., and J. Wegner - 1992**  
*Local extinctions, habitat fragmentation, and ecotones*  
 P. 150-169 in A.J. Hansen and F. di Castri (eds.), "Landscape Boundaries: Consequences for Biotic Diversity and Ecological Flows." Ecological Studies, Volume 92. Springer-Verlag, New York, N.Y.
- Meyer, J.L. - 1990**  
*A blackwater perspective on riverine ecosystems*  
*BioScience* 40:643-651.
- Miller, E.M. - 1978**  
*Technique for Estimating Magnitude and Frequency of Floods in Virginia*  
 Water-Resources Investigation 78-5. U.S. Geological Survey, Denver, Colo.
- Milne, M.M., and D.W. Young - 1989**  
*The impact of stockwatering ponds (stockponds) on runoff from large Arizona watersheds*  
*Water Resources Bulletin* 25:165-173.
- Mitsch, W.J. - 1983**  
*Ecological models for management of freshwater wetlands*  
 P. 283-310 in S.E. Jørgensen and W.J. Mitsch (eds.), "Application of Ecological Modeling in Environmental Management, Part B." Elsevier Science Publishers, Amsterdam, The Netherlands.
- Mitsch, W.J., and J.G. Gosselink - 1986**  
*Wetlands*  
 Van Nostrand Reinhold Co., New York, N.Y.
- Moore, I.D., and D.L. Larson - 1979**  
*Effects of Drainage Projects on Surface Runoff from Small Depressional Watersheds in the North-central Region*  
 Water Resources Research Center Bulletin 99. University of Minnesota, Minneapolis, Minn.
- Moore, J.R.J., P.A. Keddy, C.L. Gaudet, and I.C. Wisheu - 1989**  
*Conservation of wetlands: Do infertile wetlands deserve a higher priority?*  
*Biological Conservation* 47:203-217.
- Moore, T.R. - 1987**  
*A preliminary study of the effects of drainage and harvesting on water quality in ombrotrophic bogs near Sept-Iles, Quebec*  
*Water Resources Bulletin* 23:785-791.
- Muehrcke, P.C. - 1978**  
*Map Use, Reading, Analysis, and Interpretation*  
 J.P. Publications, Madison, Wis.
- Mulholland, P.J., and E.J. Kuenzler - 1979**  
*Organic carbon export from upland and forested wetland watersheds*  
*Limnology and Oceanography* 24:960-966.

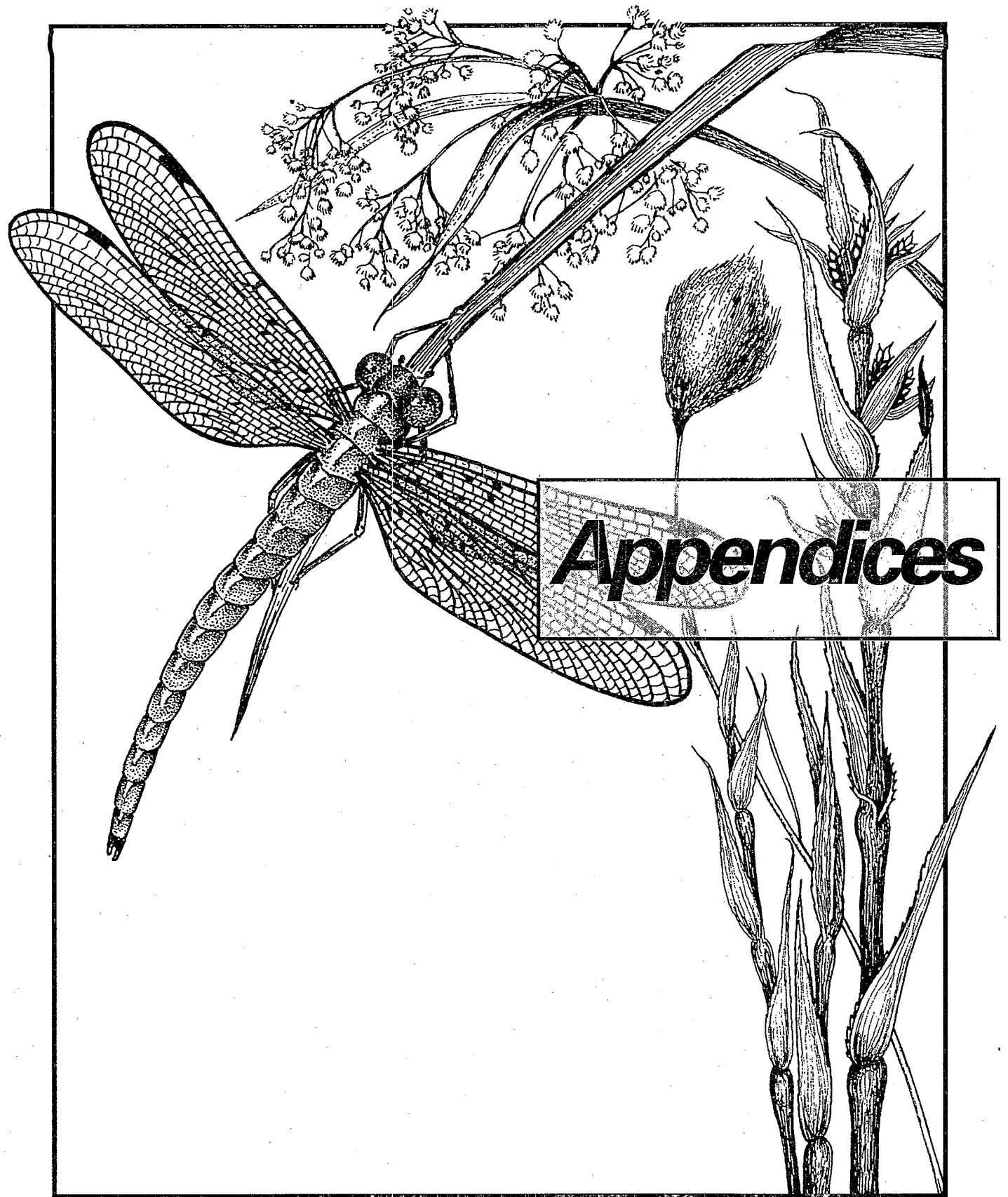
- Naiman, R.J., H. DeCamps, J. Pastor, and C.A. Johnson — 1988**  
*The potential importance of boundaries to fluvial ecosystems*  
 Journal of the North American Benthological Society 7:289-306.
- Neely, B.L. — 1976**  
*Floods in Louisiana, Magnitude and Frequency*  
 Open-File Report. U.S. Geological Survey, Denver, Colo.
- Neely, B.L. — 1987**  
*Magnitude and Frequency of Floods in Arkansas*  
 Water-Resources Investigations 84-4191. U.S. Geological Survey, Denver, Colo.
- Neely, R.D., and C.G. Heister (compilers) — 1987**  
*The Natural Resources of Illinois: Introduction and Guide*  
 Illinois Natural History Survey Special Publication 6. Illinois Natural History Survey, Department of Energy and Natural Resources, Champaign, Ill.
- Nowbold, J.D., P.J. Mulholland, J.W. Elwood, and R.V. O'Neill — 1982**  
*Organic carbon spiralling in stream ecosystems*  
 Oikos 38:266-272.
- Newfoundland Environment and Environment Canada [INEEC] — 1984**  
*Regional Flood Frequency Analysis for the Island of Newfoundland*  
 St. Johns, Newfoundland.
- Novitzki, R.P. — 1979**  
*Hydrologic characteristics of Wisconsin's wetlands and their influence on floods, stream flow, and sediment*  
 P. 377-388 in P.E. Greeson, J.R. Clark, and J.E. Clark (eds.), "Wetland Functions and Values: The State of Our Understanding." American Water Resources Association, Minneapolis, Minn.
- Nuckels, E.H. — 1970**  
*Virginia Streamflow Data Program Analysis*  
 Open-File Report. U.S. Geological Survey, Richmond, Va.
- Oakley, A.L., J.A. Collins, L.B. Everson, D.A. Heller, J.C. Howerton, and R.E. Vincent — 1985**  
*Riparian Zones and Freshwater Wetlands*  
 P. 57-113 in E.R. Brown (ed.), "Management of Wildlife and Fish Habitats in Forests of Western Oregon and Washington. Part 1 — Chapter Narratives." U.S. Forest Service, Pacific Northwest Region, Portland, Ore.
- O'Banion, K. — 1980**  
*Use of value functions in environmental decisions*  
 Environmental Management 4:3-6.
- Oberts, G.L. — 1981**  
*Impact of wetlands on watershed water quality*  
 P. 213-227 in B. Richardson (ed.), "Selected Proceedings of the Midwest Conference on Wetland Values and Management." Freshwater Society, Navarre, Minn.
- O'Brion, A.L., and W.S. Motts — 1980**  
*Hydrogeologic evaluation of wetland basins for land use planning*  
 Water Resources Bulletin 16(5):785-789.
- Odum, E.P. — 1969**  
*The strategy of ecosystem development*  
 Science 164:262-270.
- Odum, E.P. — 1985**  
*Trends expected in stressed ecosystems*  
 BioScience 35(7):419-422.
- Odum, E.P., J.T. Finn, and E.H. Franz — 1979**  
*Perturbation theory and the subsidy-stress gradient*  
 BioScience 29(6):349-352.
- Odum, W.E. — 1982**  
*Environmental degradation and the tyranny of small decisions*  
 BioScience 32(9):728-729.
- Odum, W.E., T.J. Smith, III, and R. Dolan — 1987**  
*Suppression of natural disturbance: Long-term ecological change on the outer banks of North Carolina*  
 P. 123-135 in M.G. Turner (ed.), "Landscape Heterogeneity and Disturbance." Ecological Studies, Volume 64. Springer-Verlag, New York, N.Y.
- Office of Water Regulations and Standards [OWRS] — 1990**  
*Water Quality Standards for Wetlands: National Guidance*  
 EPA 440/S-90-011. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Washington, D.C.
- Ogawa, H., and J.W. Male — 1983**  
*The Flood Mitigation Potential of Inland Wetlands*  
 Water Resources Center, University of Massachusetts, Amherst, Mass.
- Ogawa, J., and J.W. Male — 1986**  
*Simulating the flood mitigation role of wetlands*  
 Journal of Water Resources Planning and Management. 112:114-128.
- Ogawa, J., and J.W. Male — 1990**  
*Evaluation framework for wetland regulation*  
 Journal of Environmental Management 30:95-109.
- Olin, D.A. — 1984**  
*Magnitude and Frequency of Floods in Alabama*  
 Water-Resources Investigations 86-4335. U.S. Geological Survey, Denver, Colo.
- O'Meara, T.E. — 1984**  
*Habitat-island effects on the avian community in cypress ponds*  
 Proceedings of the Annual Conference of the Southeastern Association of Fish and Wildlife Agencies 38:97-110.
- Omernik, J.M. — 1987**  
*Ecoregions of the conterminous United States*  
 Annals of the Association of American Geographers 77(1):118-125.
- Omernik, J.M., A.R. Abernathy, and L.M. Male — 1981**  
*Stream nutrient levels and proximity of agricultural and forest land to streams: Some relationships*  
 Journal of Soil and Water Conservation 36(4):227-231.
- Omernik, J.M., and A.L. Gallant — 1988**  
*Ecoregions of the Upper Midwest States*  
 EPA/600/3-88/037. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Corvallis, Ore.
- O'Neil T.A., and G.W. Witmer — 1991**  
*Assessing cumulative impacts to elk and mule deer in the Salmon River Basin, Idaho*  
 Applied Animal Behavior Science 29:225-238.
- O'Neill, R.V., J.W. Elwood, and S.G. Hildebrand — 1980**  
*Theoretical implications of spatial heterogeneity in stream ecosystems*  
 P. 79-101 in G.S. Innis and R.V. O'Neill (eds.), "Systems Analysis of Ecosystems." International Co-operative Publishing House, Fairland, Md.

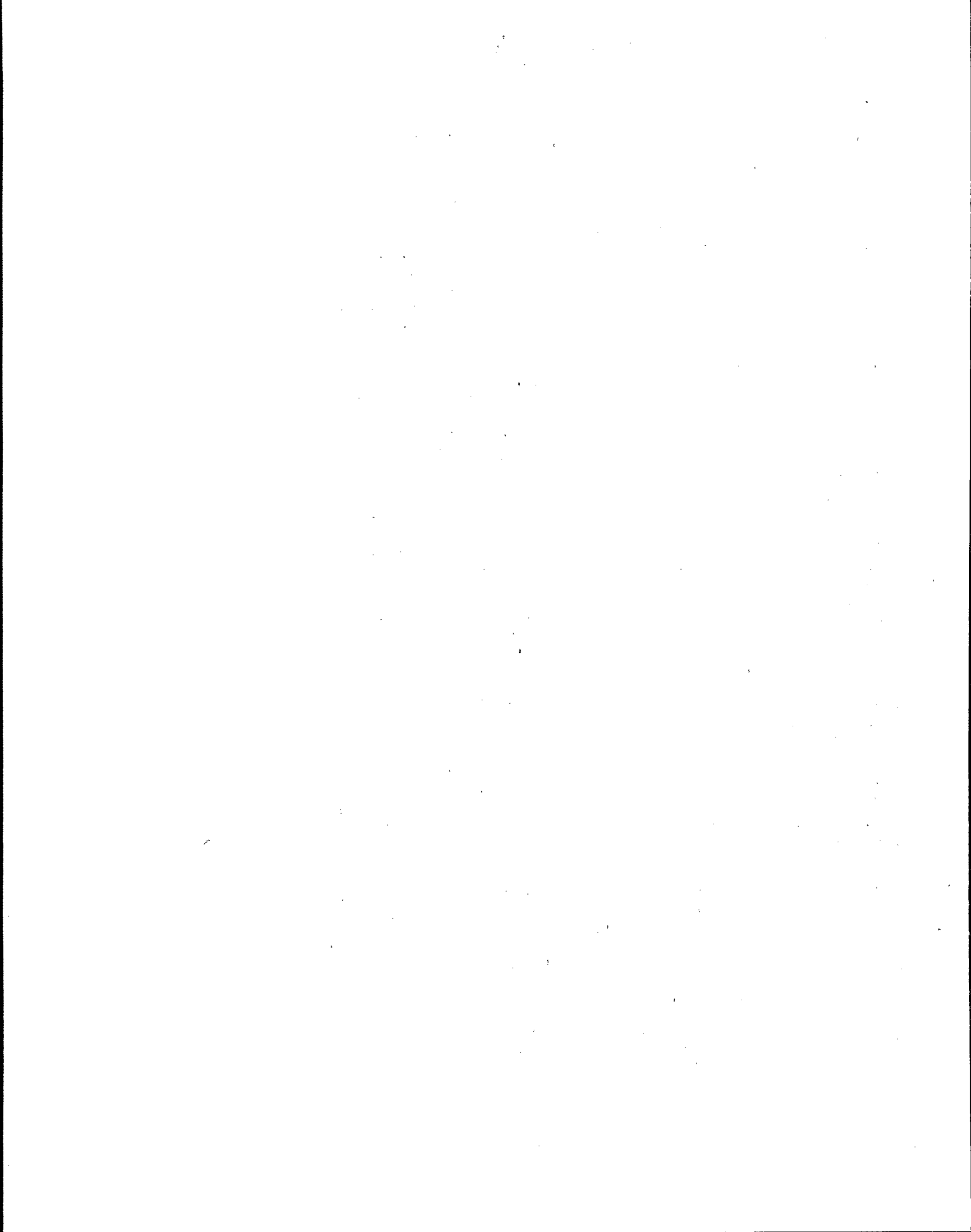
- Osborne, L.L., and M.J. Wiley - 1988**  
*Empirical relationships between land use/cover and stream water quality in an agricultural watershed*  
 Journal of Environmental Management 26:9-27.
- Panu, U.S., and D.A. Smith - 1989**  
*Instantaneous peak flow estimation procedures for Newfoundland streams*  
 Water Resources Bulletin 25:1151-1162.
- Parrish, D., and C. Langston - 1991**  
*Environmental risk based planning using GIS, Region 6 comparative risk project: Evaluating ecological risk*  
 P. 427-436 in "Proceedings of the 11th Annual ESRI User Conference." ESRI, Redlands, Calif.
- Patterson, J.H. - 1976**  
*The role of environmental heterogeneity in the regulation of duck populations*  
 Journal of Wildlife Management 40:22-32.
- Patterson, J.L. - 1971**  
*Floods in Arkansas, Magnitude and Frequency Characteristics Through 1968*  
 Water Resources Circular No. 11. U.S. Geological Survey, Little Rock, Ark.
- Patterson, J.L., and C.R. Gambel - 1968**  
*Magnitude and Frequency of Floods in the United States. Part 5. Hudson Bay and Upper Mississippi River Basin*  
 Water-Supply Paper 1678. U.S. Geological Survey, Denver, Colo.
- Patterson, N.J., and T.H. Whillans - 1984**  
*Human interference with natural water level regimes in the context of other cultural stresses on Great Lakes wetlands*  
 P. 209-239 in H.H. Prince and F.M. D'Itri (eds.), "Coastal Wetlands." Lewis Publishers, Inc., Chelsea, Mich.
- Peterson, T.L., and J.A. Cooper - 1991**  
*Impacts of center pivot irrigation systems on birds in prairie wetlands*  
 Journal of Wildlife Management 51:238-247.
- Phillips, J.D. - 1989a**  
*Fluvial sediment storage in wetlands*  
 Water Resources Bulletin 25:867-873.
- Phillips, J.D. - 1989b**  
*Nonpoint source pollution risk assessment in a watershed context*  
 Environmental Management 13:493-502.
- Pickett, S.T.A., and P.S. White (eds.) - 1985a**  
*The Ecology of Natural Disturbance and Patch Dynamics*  
 Academic Press, New York, N.Y.
- Pickett, S.T.A., and P.S. White - 1985b**  
*Patch dynamics: A synthesis*  
 P. 371-384 in S.T.A. Pickett and P.S. White (eds.), "The Ecology of Natural Disturbance and Patch Dynamics." Academic Press, New York, N.Y.
- Pinay, G., A. Fabre, P. Vervier, and F. Gazelle - 1992**  
*Control of C, N, P distribution in soils of riparian forests*  
 Landscape Ecology 6(3):121-132.
- Ponce, V.M., and D.S. Lindquist - 1990**  
*Management of baseflow augmentation: A review*  
 Water Resources Bulletin 26: 259-286.
- Poulin, R.Y. - 1971**  
*Flood Frequency Analysis for Newfoundland Streams*  
 Water Planning and Operations Branch, Environment Canada, Ottawa, Ontario.
- Powell, G.V.N. - 1987**  
*Habitat use by wading birds in a subtropical estuary: implications of hydrography*  
 Auk 104:740-749.
- Preston, E.M., and B.L. Bedford - 1988**  
*Evaluating cumulative effects on wetland functions: A conceptual overview and generic framework*  
 Environmental Management 12(5):565-583.
- Pringle, C.M., R.J. Naiman, G. Bretschko, J.R. Karr, M.W. Oswood, J.R. Webster, R.L. Welcomme, and M.J. Winterbourn - 1988**  
*Patch dynamics in lotic systems: the stream as a mosaic*  
 Journal of the North American Benthological Society 7:503-524.
- Pulliam, R.H. - 1988**  
*Sources, sinks, and population regulation*  
 American Naturalist 132(5):652-661.
- Radbruch-Hall, D.H., K. Edwards, and R.M. Batson - 1987**  
*Experimental Engineering-Geologic and Environmental-Geologic Maps of the Conterminous United States*  
 Bulletin 1610. U.S. Geological Survey, Reston, Va.
- Rapp, G., J.D. Allert, B.W. Liukkonen, J.A. Ilse, O.L. Loucks, and G.E. Glass - 1985**  
*Acid deposition and watershed characteristics in relation to lake chemistry in northeastern Minnesota*  
 Environment International 11:425-440.
- Rasmussen, J.B., L. Godbout, and M. Schallenberg - 1989**  
*The humic content of lake water and its relationship to watershed and lake morphometry*  
 Limnology and Oceanography 34:1336-1343.
- Richardson, C.J. - 1989**  
*Freshwater wetlands: Transformers, filters, or sinks?*  
 P. 25-46 in R.R. Sharitz and J.W. Gibbons (eds.), "Freshwater Wetlands and Wildlife" CONF-8603101. Office of Science and Technical Information, U.S. Department of Energy, Oak Ridge, Tenn.
- Ricklefs, R.E. - 1979**  
*Ecology*  
 Chiron Press, Inc., New York, N.Y.
- Robbins, C.S., D.K. Dawson, and B.A. Dowell - 1989**  
*Habitat area requirements of breeding forest birds of the middle Atlantic states*  
 Wildlife Monographs No. 103. Journal of Wildlife Management 53 (Supplement).
- Robichaud, B., and M.F. Buell - 1983**  
*Vegetation of New Jersey: A Study of Landscape Diversity*  
 Rutgers University Press, New Brunswick, N.J.
- Robinson, A.H., R.D. Sale, J.L. Morrison, and P.C. Muehrcke - 1984**  
*Elements of Cartography*  
 Fifth Edition. John Wiley and Sons, New York, N.Y.

- Rogers, J.D., and J.T. Armbruster - 1990**  
*Low flows and hydrologic droughts*  
 P. 121-129 in M.G. Wolman and H.C. Riggs (eds.), "The Geology of North America. Vol. O-1, Surface Water Hydrology." Geological Society of America, Boulder, Colo.
- Rorslett, B - 1991**  
*Principal determinants of aquatic macrophyte richness in northern European lakes*  
*Aquatic Botany* 39:173-193.
- Rutledge, R.W., B.L. Basore, and R.J. Mulholland - 1976**  
*Ecological stability: An information theory viewpoint*  
*Journal of Theoretical Biology* 57:355-371.
- SAS Institute, Inc - 1988**  
*SAS® Procedures Guide, Release 6.03 Edition*  
 SAS Institute, Inc., Cary, N.C.
- Sauer, V.B - 1974**  
*Flood Characteristics of Oklahoma Streams*  
*Water-Resources Investigations* 52-73. U.S. Geological Survey, Oklahoma City, Okla.
- Sauer, V.B., W.O. Thomas, V.A. Stricker, and K.V. Wilson - 1983**  
*Flood Characteristics of Urban Watersheds in the United States*  
*Water-Supply Paper* 2207. U.S. Geological Survey, Reston, Va.
- Schwartz, F.W., and W.A. Milne-Home - 1982**  
*Watersheds in muskeg terrain*  
*Journal of Hydrology* 57:267-305.
- Science Advisory Board [SAB] - 1990**  
*Reducing Risk: Setting Priorities and Strategies for Environmental Protection*  
 SAB-EC-90-021. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Science Advisory Board, Washington, D.C.
- Scott, A.G - 1971**  
*Preliminary Flood Frequency Relations and Summary of Maximum Discharges in New Mexico*  
 Open-file Report. U.S. Geological Survey, Albuquerque, N.M.
- Scott, J.M., B. Csuti, J.D. Jacobi, J.E. Estes - 1987**  
*Species richness: A geographic approach to protecting future biological diversity*  
*BioScience* 37:782-788.
- Seaber, P.R., F.P. Kapinos, and G.L. Knapp - 1984**  
*State Hydrologic Unit Maps*  
 Open-File Report 84-708. U.S. Geological Survey, Denver, Colo.
- Sedell, J.R., G.H. Reeves, F.R. Hauer, J.A. Stanford, and C.P. Hawkins - 1990**  
*Role of refugia in recovery from disturbances: modern fragmented and disconnected river systems*  
*Environmental Management* 14:711-724.
- Shannon, C.E - 1949**  
*Communication theory of secrecy systems*  
*Bell System Technical Journal* 28(4):656-715.
- Shannon, C.E., and W. Weaver - 1963**  
*The Mathematical Theory of Communication*  
 University of Illinois Press, Chicago, Ill.
- Siegel, D.I - 1988**  
*The Recharge-discharge function of wetlands near Juneau, Alaska: Part II, Geochemical investigations*  
*Ground Water* 26:580-586.
- Simmons, R.H., and D.H. Carpenter - 1978**  
*Technique for Estimating Magnitude and Frequency of Floods in Delaware*  
*Water-Resources Investigations* 78-93. U.S. Geological Survey, Denver, Colo.
- Skutch, M.M., and R.T.N. Flowerdew - 1976**  
*Measurement techniques in environmental impact assessment*  
*Environmental Conservation* 3:209-217.
- Smith, B. J., and K. F. Higgins - 1990**  
*Avian cholera and temporal changes in wetland numbers and densities in Nebraska's rainwater basin area*  
*Wetlands* 10(1):1-5.
- Smith, P.G.R., and J.B. Theberge - 1987**  
*Evaluating natural areas using multiple criteria: Theory and practice*  
*Environmental Management* 11:447-460.
- Soil Conservation Service [SCS] - 1986**  
*Urban Hydrology for Small Watersheds*  
 Technical Release 55, 210-VI-TR-55. U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, D.C.
- Soil Conservation Service [SCS] - 1987**  
*Hydric Soils of the United States*  
 USDA Soil Conservation Service in cooperation with the National Technical Committee for Hydric Soils. U.S. Department of Agriculture, Washington, D.C.
- Sparks, R.E., P.B. Bayley, S.L. Kohler, and L.L. Osborne - 1990**  
*Disturbance and recovery of large floodplain rivers*  
*Environmental Management* 14:699-709.
- Stacey, P.B., and M. Taper - 1992**  
*Environmental variation and the persistence of small populations*  
*Ecological Applications* 2(1):18-29.
- Stankowski, S.J - 1974**  
*Magnitude and Frequency of Floods in New Jersey with Effects of Urbanization*  
 Open-File Report. U.S. Geological Survey, Denver, Colo.
- Stull, E.A., K.E. Lagory, and W.S. Vinikour - 1987**  
*Methodologies for Assessing the Cumulative Environmental Effects of Hydroelectric Development on Fish and Wildlife in the Columbia River Basin (2 vols)*  
 Bonneville Power Administration, U.S. Department of Energy, Portland, Ore.
- Swanson, F.J., S.M. Wondzell, and G.E. Grant - 1992**  
*Landforms, disturbances, and ecotones*  
 P. 304-323 in A.J. Hansen and F. di Castri (eds.), "Landscape Boundaries: Consequences for Biotic Diversity and Ecological Flows." Ecological Studies, Volume 92. Springer-Verlag, N.Y.
- Thomas, C.A., W.A. Harenberg, and J.M. Anderson - 1973**  
*Magnitude and Frequency of Floods in Small Drainage Basins in Idaho*  
*Water-Resources Investigations* 7-73. U.S. Geological Survey, Denver, Colo.

- Thomas, D.M., and M.A. Benson - 1970**  
*Generalization of Streamflow Characteristics From Drainage-Basin Characteristics*  
 Water-Supply Paper 1975. U.S. Geological Survey, Reston, Va.
- Tice, R.H. - 1968**  
*Magnitude and Frequency of Floods in the United States. Part 1-B, North Atlantic Slope Basins, New York to York River*  
 Water-Supply Paper 1672. U.S. Geological Survey, Washington, D.C.
- Tiner, R.W., Jr - 1984**  
*Wetlands of the United States: Current status and recent trends*  
 National Wetlands Inventory, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, D.C.
- Tonn, W.M., and J.J. Magnuson - 1982**  
*Patterns in the species composition and richness of fish assemblages in northern Wisconsin lakes*  
*Ecology* 63(4):1149-1165.
- Trewartha, G.T. - 1957**  
*Climatic regions map. 1:75,000,000 map*  
 In E.B. Espenshane, Jr. (ed.), "Goode's World Atlas, 18th edition (1990)." Rand McNally and Company, Chicago, Ill.
- Triquet, A.M., G.A. McPeck, and W.C. McComb - 1990**  
*Songbird diversity in clearcuts with and without a riparian buffer strip*  
*Journal of Soil and Water Conservation* 45(4):500-503.
- Tyser, R.W. - 1983**  
*Species-area relations of cattail marsh avifauna*  
*Passenger Pigeon* 45:125-128.
- Ulanowicz, R.E. - 1979**  
*Complexity, stability, and self-organization in natural communities*  
*Oecologia* 43:295-298.
- Urban, N.R., S.E. Bayley, and S.J. Eisenreich - 1989**  
*Export of dissolved organic carbon and acidity from peatlands*  
*Water Resources Research* 25:1619-1628.
- U.S. Bureau of the Census - 1972**  
*Census of Population and Housing: 1970*  
 U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, D.C.
- U.S. Bureau of the Census - 1974**  
*Census of agriculture*  
 Vol. 1, Part 47, Washington State and county data. U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, D.C.
- U.S. Bureau of the Census - 1982a**  
*Census of Agriculture*  
 Vol. 1, Part 47, Washington State and county data. U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, D.C.
- U.S. Bureau of the Census - 1982b**  
*Census of population and housing: 1980*  
 Part 49, summary characteristics for governmental units and standard metropolitan statistical areas, Washington. U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, D.C.
- U.S. Department of Agriculture [USDA] - 1983**  
*Agricultural Resources of the Pearl River Basin (Mississippi Part)*  
 U.S. Department of Agriculture, Jackson, Miss.
- U.S. Department of Agriculture [USDA] - 1984**  
*R-10 Guidelines for Estimating Streamflow*  
 USDA Forest Service, Juneau, Ala.
- U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service [USFWS] - 1981**  
*Standards for the Development of Habitat Suitability Index Models*  
 103 ESM. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Fort Collins, Colo.
- U.S. Geological Survey [USGS] - 1967**  
*Major Forest Types. 1:7,500,000 map*  
 U.S. Geological Survey, Reston, Va.
- Van Haveren, B.P. - 1986**  
*Management of instream flows through runoff detention and retention*  
*Water Resources Bulletin* 22:399-404.
- Walker, P.N. - 1971**  
*Flow characteristics of Maryland streams*  
 Report of Investigations No. 16. Maryland Geological Survey, Baltimore, Md.
- Washington Department of Natural Resources - 1990**  
*Wetland Associated Plant Species of Concern by Priority*  
 Natural Heritage Information System, Washington Department of Natural Resources, Olympia, Wash.
- Washington Department of Wildlife - 1990**  
*Number of Wetland Associated Species of Concern*  
 Non-Game Program, Washington Department of Wildlife, Olympia, Wash.
- Webber, E.E., and W.P. Bartlett, Jr - 1977**  
*Floods in Ohio: Magnitude and frequency*  
*Bulletin* 45. Division of Water, Ohio Department of Natural Resources, Columbus, Ohio.
- Werschkul, D.F., E. MacMahon, and M. Leitschut - 1976**  
*Some effects of human activities on the Great Blue Heron in Oregon*  
*Wilson Bulletin* 88:660-662.
- Westman, W.E. - 1985**  
*Ecology, Impact Assessment, and Environmental Planning*  
 Wiley-Interscience, New York, N.Y.
- Wetzel, K.L., and J.M. Bettendorff - 1986**  
*Techniques for Estimating Streamflow Characteristics in the Eastern and Interior Coal Provinces of the United States*  
 Water-Supply Paper 2276. U.S. Geological Survey, Denver, Colo.
- Whigham, D.F., C. Chitterling, and B. Palmer - 1988**  
*Impacts of freshwater wetlands on water quality: A landscape perspective*  
*Environmental Management* 12(5):663-671.
- Wilcox, D.A. - 1989**  
*Migration and control of purple loosestrife (Lythrum salicaria L.) along highway corridors*  
*Environmental Management* 13(3):365-370.
- Wilen, B.O., W.P. McConnell, and D.L. Mader - 1975**  
*The effects of beaver activity on water quality and water quantity*  
*Proceedings of the Society of American Foresters* 1975:235-240.
- Williams, J.D., and C.K. Dodd, Jr - 1978**  
*Importance of wetlands to endangered and threatened species*  
 P. 565-575 in P.E. Greeson, J.R. Clark, and J.E. Clark (eds.), "Wetland Functions and Values: The State of our Understanding." American Water Resources Association, Minneapolis, Minn.

- Williams, J.E., J.E. Hohnson, D.A. Hendrickson – 1989**  
*Fishes of North America: endangered, threatened, or of special concern*  
 Fisheries 14:2-20.
- Williamson, S.C., C.L. Armour, G.W. Kinser, S.L. Funderburk, and T.N. Hall – 1987**  
*Cumulative impacts assessment: An application to Chesapeake Bay*  
 Transactions of the North American Wildlife Natural Resources Conference 52:377-388.
- Winogar, H.H – 1977**  
*Camp Creek channel fencing: Plant, wildlife, soil, and water response*  
 Rangemen's Journal 4: 10-12
- Winn, D.S., and K.R. Barber – 1985**  
*Cartographic modelling: A method of cumulative effects appraisal*  
 Proceedings of the Grizzly Bear Habitat Symposium, General Technical Report INT-207. USDA Forest Service, Fort Collins, Colo.
- Winter, T.C – 1988**  
*A conceptual framework for assessing cumulative impacts on the hydrology of nontidal wetlands*  
 Environmental Management 12:605-620.
- Winter, T.C – 1990**  
*A Physiographic and Climatic Framework for Hydrologic Studies of Wetlands*  
 Proceedings of the Symposium on Aquatic Ecosystems in Semi-Arid Regions, Saskatoon, Saskatchewan. National Hydrology Research Institute Symposium Series No. 7. Environment Canada.
- Winter, T.C., and M.K. Woo – 1990**  
*Hydrology of lakes and wetlands*  
 P. 159-187 in M.G. Woolman and H.C. Riggs (eds.), "The Geology of North America. Vol. O-1, Surface Water Hydrology." Geological Society of America, Boulder, Colo.
- Wisheu, I.C., and P.A. Keddy – 1991**  
*Seed banks of a rare wetland plant community: Distribution patterns and effects of human-induced disturbance*  
 Journal of Vegetation Science 2:181-188.
- Witmer, G., and T.A. O'Neil – 1991**  
*Assessing cumulative impacts to wintering bald eagles in western Washington*  
 P. 144-150 in R.S. Mitchell, C.J. Sheviak, and D.J. Leopold (eds.), "Ecosystem Management: Rare Species and Significant Habitats." New York State Museum Bulletin No. 471. Albany, N.Y.
- Wood, W.E., and W.R. Osterkamp – 1984**  
*Recharge to the Ogallala aquifer from playa lake basins in the Llano Estacado*  
 P. 337-349 in G.A. Whetstone (ed.), "Proceedings of the Ogallala Aquifer Symposium II." Texas Tech University, Lubbock, Texas.
- Young, R.A., C.A. Onstad, D.D. Bosch, and W.P. Anderson – 1987**  
*AGNPS, Agricultural Non-Point Source Pollution Model: A watershed analysis tool*  
 Conservation Research Report 35. Agricultural Research Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture, Washington, D.C.
- Zedler, J.B – 1982**  
*The Ecology of Southern California Coastal Salt Marshes: A Community Profile*  
 FWS/OBS-81/54. Biological Services Program, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Washington, D.C.
- Zembrzuski, T.J., Jr., and B. Dunn – 1979**  
*Techniques for Estimating Magnitude and Frequency of Floods on Rural Unregulated Streams in New York State, Excluding Long Island*  
 Water-Resources Investigations 79-83. U.S. Geological Survey, Denver, Colo.





# APPENDIX A

## Review of Methods for Assessing Cumulative Impacts

Although none deals specifically with wetlands, a number of methods have been devised for assessing the effects of cumulative impacts (see reviews by Horak et al. 1983; Lane and Wallace 1988). Each method was examined prior to and during development of the synoptic approach. In addition to not addressing wetlands specifically, their drawbacks include:

- Focus on individual ecosystems rather than landscape subunits such as watersheds;
- Focus on interactions of impacts rather than on the influence of wetlands or other ecosystems on landscape function;
- Incompatibility with use of widely available data; and
- Lack of speed and flexibility.

Existing methods can be grouped as follows:

### Conceptual Frameworks

These methods provide general narrative procedural guidance for incorporating cumulative impacts in decision-making. Products are not pre-specified, so they can differ greatly, ranging from narrative descriptions of cumulative impacts, to quantitative assessments. They include reports by Bedford and Preston (1988b) for EPA; Dames and Moore Inc. (1981) for the Army Corps of Engineers; Horak et al. (1983) for the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service; Lane and Wallace (1988) for the Canadian government; and Stull et al. (1987) for the U.S. Department of Energy.

### Descriptive Cause-Effect Methods

These methods are intended to describe mechanistically (and in some cases, dynamically) the direct and indirect effects of one or more disturbances. They assume that cumulative effects to a resource can be estimated by identifying individual effects and mathematically representing the manner in which they interact and accumulate. In most cases, products are ratings for particular project alternatives or activities that describe their relative potential for generating cumulative effects; they are organized as flow diagrams, matrices, or networks. Bain et al. (1986) developed a matrix method that was then used by Stull et al. (1987), O'Neil and Witmer (1991), and Witmer and O'Neil (1991) for assessing multiple hydropower projects. Other examples include Armour and Williamson (1988), Emery (1986), and Patterson and Whillans (1984).

### Map Overlay Methods

Perhaps closest to the synoptic approach, these methods are intended to identify areas most sensitive or vulnerable to impacts and areas where consequences of impacts are expected to be greatest, or both. Maps are used as planning tools with the assumption that future impacts will be of greatest concern where (for example) sensitivity, value, and past losses have been most severe. Map overlay methods employ thematic maps or databases according to some aggregation scheme to rate landscapes generally (e.g., Bastedo et al. 1984; Canters et al. 1991; McHarg 1969; Radbruch-Hall et al. 1987) or to rate water resources specifically (e.g., Aller et al. 1987). Map overlay methods also (a) assess past impacts by overlaying maps of land cover trends and erosion sensitivity (Dickert and Tuttle 1985), (b) assess relative geographic risks by overlaying maps of impacts (e.g., Parrish and Langston 1991), or (c) prioritize individual habitat patches at a landscape level using maps and biogeographic theory (e.g., Gosselink and Lee 1989; Gosselink et al. 1990b; Scott et al. 1987). Bailey (1988) discusses methodological issues.

### Methods Based on Statistical Data Analysis or Simulation

These methods attempt to quantitatively assess or predict cumulative impacts based on analysis of historical patterns of impacts by examining permit use (e.g., Contant and Ortolano 1985), airphotos, or field data (e.g., Gosselink and Lee 1989; Gosselink et al. 1990a, b). Products include tabulations, graphs, and interpretations of trends. In some cases, statistical models are developed to specify landscape assimilative capacity, or thresholds of degradation and loss, that if surpassed result in unacceptable effects (e.g., Osborne and Wiley 1988). As summarized by Adamus (1989), these models include statistical methods applied in Louisiana (Burdick et al. 1989; Childers and Gosselink 1990; Gosselink and Lee 1989; Gosselink et al. 1990b) and Minnesota (Johnston et al. 1988), as well as models used by an Army Corps District (Contant and Ortolano 1985) and forest managers (Chatoian 1988; Cobourn 1989; Megahan 1992). They also include landscape simulations of hydrology (e.g., Bedient et al. 1985; Dreher et al. 1989; Flores et al. 1982), water quality (e.g., Ziemer et al. 1991), and wildlife habitat (e.g., Cowardin et al. 1988; Winn and Barber 1985).

# APPENDIX B

**Table B.1. Typical relationships expected between resource extraction impacts and wetland degradation based on best professional judgment. Letter indicates degree of expected association and not the intensity or duration of impact (H = high, M = medium, L = low).**

Impact	Acidification	Altered Animal Behavior	Compaction	Contamination/Toxicity	Denudation
Blasting/Drilling <sup>3</sup>		M		M	L
Burning/Air pollution <sup>2</sup>	H			H	L
Channelization <sup>3</sup>		M			H
Drainage <sup>2,3</sup>	L	H	L	M	
Dredging/Excavation <sup>3</sup>	M			M	M
Fertilizers <sup>2</sup>	L			L	M
Harvesting		H <sup>1-3</sup>			M <sup>1-3</sup>
Pesticides <sup>2</sup>				H	M
Solid Waste Disposal <sup>3</sup>	H			H	
Species Introduction <sup>1,2</sup>		H			
Structures/Pavement <sup>3</sup>		L	H		H
Trampling <sup>1-3</sup>		H	L		M
Vehicles/Boats/Planes <sup>1-3</sup>		M	M		L
Water Consumption <sup>3</sup>				L	
<sup>1</sup> Fishing/Hunting/Trapping					
<sup>2</sup> Forestry					
<sup>3</sup> Mining – Mineral and Peat					
Impact	Dehydration	Eutrophication/Enrichment	Erosion	Inundation	Light Reduction
Blasting/Drilling <sup>3</sup>	L				
Burning/Air pollution <sup>2</sup>		H			
Channelization <sup>3</sup>	M	M	M		L
Drainage <sup>2,3</sup>	H	M	M		M
Dredging/Excavation <sup>3</sup>		M	H		M
Fertilizers <sup>2</sup>		H		M	L
Harvesting				M <sup>2</sup>	
Pesticides <sup>2</sup>					
Solid Waste Disposal <sup>3</sup>		M	L		L
Species Introduction <sup>1,2</sup>	L				L
Structures/Pavement <sup>3</sup>			L		L
Trampling <sup>1-3</sup>		M	L		L
Vehicles/Boats/Planes <sup>1-3</sup>			M		L
Water Consumption <sup>3</sup>	H	M			
<sup>1</sup> Fishing/Hunting/Trapping					
<sup>2</sup> Forestry					
<sup>3</sup> Mining – Mineral and Peat					
Impact	Salinization	Sedimentation	Surface Runoff Timing	Thermal Warming	
Blasting/Drilling <sup>3</sup>	L	L			
Burning/Air pollution <sup>2</sup>	L			H	
Channelization <sup>3</sup>			H	L	
Drainage <sup>2,3</sup>	L	M	H		
Dredging/Excavation <sup>3</sup>	L	H	M		
Fertilizers <sup>2</sup>	M				
Harvesting <sup>1-3</sup>		M <sup>2</sup>	M <sup>2</sup>	H <sup>2</sup>	
Pesticides <sup>2</sup>					
Solid Waste Disposal <sup>3</sup>	L	M		L	
Species Introduction <sup>1,2</sup>					
Structures/Pavement <sup>3</sup>			M		
Trampling <sup>1-3</sup>					
Vehicles/Boats/Planes <sup>1-3</sup>					
Water Consumption <sup>3</sup>	M		H	L	
<sup>1</sup> Fishing/Hunting/Trapping					
<sup>2</sup> Forestry					
<sup>3</sup> Mining – Mineral and Peat					

**Table B.2. Typical relationships expected between urbanization impacts and wetland degradation based on best professional judgment. Letter indicates the degree of expected association and not the intensity or duration of impact (H = high, M = medium, L = low).**

Impact	Acidification	Altered Animal Behavior	Compaction	Contamination/Toxicity	Denudation
Blasting/Drilling		M		L	L
Burning/Air pollution	H			H	L
Channelization		M			H
Drainage	L	H	L	M	
Dredging/Excavation	M			M	M
Fertilizers	L			H	M
Fill	L			M	H
Harvesting		H			M
Impoundment		H		M	
Industry/Manufacturing	L	L		H	
Pesticides				H	M
Sewage Treatment					
Solid Waste Disposal	H			H	
Species Introduction		H			
Stormwater Runoff	L			M	
Structures/Pavement		L	H		H
Trampling		H	L		M
Vehicles/Boats/Planes		M	M	L	L
Water Consumption				M	

Impact	Dehydration	Eutrophication/Enrichment	Erosion	Inundation	Light Reduction
Blasting/Drilling	L				
Burning/Air pollution		H			
Channelization	M	M	M		L
Drainage	H	M	M		M
Dredging/Excavation		M	H	M	M
Fertilizers		H			L
Fill	H	M	L		H
Harvesting				M	
Impoundment		M	L	H	M
Industry/Manufacturing		L			
Pesticides					
Sewage Treatment		H		M	
Solid Waste Disposal		M	L		L
Species Introduction	L				
Stormwater Runoff		M	L	H	L
Structures/Pavement			L		H
Trampling		M	L		L
Vehicles/Boats/Planes			M		L
Water Consumption	H	M			

Impact	Salinization	Sedimentation	Surface Runoff Timing	Thermal Warming
Blasting/Drilling	L	L		
Burning/Air pollution	L			H
Channelization			H	L
Drainage	L	M	H	
Dredging/Excavation	L	H	M	
Fertilizers	M			
Fill	L	H	M	
Harvesting		M	M	H
Impoundment	M	M	H	L
Industry/Manufacturing	L			H
Pesticides				
Sewage Treatment	L		M	
Solid Waste Disposal	L	M		L
Species Introduction				
Stormwater Runoff	L		M	L
Structures/Pavement			M	
Trampling				
Vehicles/Boats/Planes				
Water Consumption	M		H	L

**Table B.3. Typical relationships expected between water management impacts and wetland degradation based on best professional judgment. Letter indicates degree of expected association and not the intensity or duration of impact (H = high, M = medium, L = low).**

Impact	Acidification	Altered Animal Behavior	Compaction	Contamination/Toxicity	Denudation
Blasting/Drilling <sup>1</sup>		M		L	L
Channelization <sup>1,2</sup>		M			H
Drainage <sup>1</sup>	L	H	L	M	
Dredging/Excavation <sup>1,2</sup>	M			M	M
Fertilizers <sup>1</sup>	L			H	M
Fill <sup>1</sup>	L			M	H
Harvesting <sup>1</sup>		H			M
Impoundment <sup>1,2</sup>		H		M	
Irrigation/Flooding <sup>1,2</sup>	L	M		M	
Pesticides <sup>1</sup>				H	M
Saltwater Intrusion <sup>2</sup>	L	M			L
Water Consumption <sup>2</sup>				M	
<sup>1</sup> Flood Management					
<sup>2</sup> Water Supply					

Impact	Dehydration	Eutrophication/Enrichment	Erosion	Inundation	Light Reduction
Blasting/Drilling <sup>1</sup>	L				
Channelization <sup>1,2</sup>	M	M	M		L
Drainage <sup>1</sup>	H	M	M		M
Dredging/Excavation <sup>1,2</sup>		M	H	M	M
Fertilizers <sup>1</sup>		H			L
Fill <sup>1</sup>	H	M	L		H
Harvesting <sup>1</sup>					
Impoundment <sup>1,2</sup>		M	L	H	M
Irrigation/Flooding <sup>1,2</sup>		M	M	H	M
Pesticides <sup>1</sup>					
Saltwater Intrusion <sup>2</sup>					
Water Consumption <sup>2</sup>	H	M			
<sup>1</sup> Flood Management					
<sup>2</sup> Water Supply					

Impact	Salinization	Sedimentation	Surface Runoff Timing	Thermal Warming
Blasting/Drilling <sup>1</sup>	L	L		
Channelization <sup>1,2</sup>			H	L
Drainage <sup>1</sup>	L	M	H	
Dredging/Excavation <sup>1,2</sup>	L	H	M	
Fertilizers <sup>1</sup>	M			
Fill <sup>1</sup>	L	H	M	
Harvesting		M <sup>2</sup>	M <sup>2</sup>	H <sup>2</sup>
Impoundment <sup>1,2</sup>	M	M	H	L
Irrigation/Flooding <sup>1,2</sup>	H	M	M	
Pesticides <sup>1</sup>				
Saltwater Intrusion <sup>2</sup>	M			
Water Consumption <sup>2</sup>	M		H	L
<sup>1</sup> Flood Management				
<sup>2</sup> Water Supply				

## APPENDIX C

**Table C.1. Effect of wetland degradation on water quality functions and degree of expected association based on best professional judgment (H = high, M = medium, L = low).**

Input	Sediment Detention	Sediment Stabilization	Phosphorus Detention	Nitrate Removal	Detoxification	Water Quality
Acidification			H	M	H	M
Animal Behavior	L	M	L	L	L	M
Compaction	H	H	M	M	M	H
Contamination/Toxicity		L	L	M	H	H
Denudation	M	H	H	H	M	M
Dehydration	H	L	H	H	H	M
Eutrophication/Enrichment	L	L	H	H	M	H
Erosion	H	H	M	M	M	H
Habitat Fragmentation	L	L	L	L	L	M
Inundation	H	L	H	H	H	M
Light Reduction			L	L	L	L
Salinization	L		L	L	M	H
Sedimentation	H	H	H	M	M	H
Surface Runoff	H	L	H	H	H	M
Thermal Warming	L		L	M	M	M

**Table C.2. Effect of wetland degradation on habitat functions and degree of expected association based on best professional judgement (H = high, M = medium, L = low).**

Input	Biological Production	Biodiversity <sup>1</sup>
Acidification	L	M
Animal Behavior	M	H
Compaction	M	M
Contamination/Toxicity	M	H
Denudation	H	H
Dehydration	H	H
Eutrophication/Enrichment	H	H
Erosion	M	M
Habitat Fragmentation	L	H
Inundation	H	H
Light Reduction	H	H
Salinization	L	M
Sedimentation	M	H
Surface Runoff	M	H
Thermal Warming	H	H

<sup>1</sup> Number of normally uncommon native species per unit area.

# APPENDIX D

**Table D.1. Potential sources of mapped and tabular data for landscape indicators of synoptic indices <sup>1</sup>.**

Mapped Data	Resolution <sup>2</sup>	Wetland Extent	Hydrology			Water Quality			Habitat		Loss <sup>3</sup>		Rep. Pot. <sup>4</sup>
			Input	Capacity	Value	Input	Capacity	Value	Function	Value	Conv.	Degr.	
CCAP	P	X											
CESCR	P												
DEM	SC		X						X	X			
DLG	SC	X		X									X
FEMA Maps	P		X									X	
GAP	P												
LULC	P	X				X			X	X			X
NATSGO	SS	X	X			X							
NHBCDS	P								X	X			
NWI Maps	P	X		X				X	X				
PNV	SS								X		X		X
STATSGO	SC	X	X	X		X	X		X		X		
Stream N/P	SC					X		X			X		
<hr/>													
Tabular Data	Resolution <sup>2</sup>	Wetland Extent	Hydrology			Water Quality			Habitat		Loss <sup>3</sup>		Rep. Pot. <sup>4</sup>
			Input	Capacity	Value	Input	Capacity	Value	Function	Value	Conv.	Degr.	
AgrCensus	C					X						X	
BBS	SC											X	
CBC	SC								X	X	X	X	
CCAP	SC	X							X	X	X	X	
CRPL	C					X							
DrainStat	C								X		X	X	X
DWSF	SC							X			X	X	
EMAP <sup>5</sup>	R	X					X						
FEMA Data Files	C	X			X				X		X	X	
FIA	SS	X											
ISS	P								X	X	X		
Marine Fish	R									X			
NADP	SS					X				X		X	
NASS	C					X						X	
NAWQA	R		X			X						X	
NHVCA	S												
NPUD	C								X	X			
NRCBR	P					X						X	
NRI	SS	X										X	
NWI Trends	R										X		
NWUDS	SC							X					
Precip	SS		X									X	
Priority	P											X	
RCF	SC	X	X	X						X			
STORET	P					X							
TIGER	SC				X			X				X	
TRI	P					X						X	
WATSTORE	SC		X									X	
WBGS	SS											X	
WPF	C								X	X		X	
WWS	SC								X	X			
305b	SC					X		X				X	

<sup>1</sup>Data from these sources are believed to be of potential use for applications of the synoptic approach. Most sources are national in coverage and publicly available at minimal or no cost. However, listing of a source does not necessarily indicate it is available for all areas of the U.S., nor does it imply quality or convenience of use. Mapped data mostly include sources available in digital format. An "X" in the matrix means the data could be appropriate for some of the information needed for that synoptic component; no single source provides all necessary information. Further information on contacts for these data sources and the full database name is given in Appendix E. For a more complete description of some of these sources, see Adamus (1992).

<sup>2</sup>Resolution is the finest resolution at which data are compiled (not necessarily comprehensively): R (multi-state region) < S (state) < SS (substate, e.g., major river basin) < C (county) < SC (subcounty, e.g., watershed or town) < P (point, e.g., specific wetland).

<sup>3</sup>Loss through conversion (Conv.) or degradation (Degr.).

<sup>4</sup>Replacement potential.

<sup>5</sup>Program currently under development; data for portions of the country should become available by 1995.

## APPENDIX E<sup>1</sup>

### Contact Information and Examples of Variables from National Maps and Databases

#### *AgrCensus - Census of Agriculture*

Customer Service  
Census of Agriculture  
Agricultural Division  
Bureau of the Census  
U.S. Department of Commerce  
Washington, DC 20233  
(301) 763-4100

Example of derivable variables: "percent change in number of cattle (or fertilized cropland, harvested wild hay, irrigated land, etc.) in Fort County, 1982-1987."

#### *BBS - Breeding Bird Survey*

Coordinator  
Breeding Bird Survey  
U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service  
Patuxent Wildlife Research Center  
Laurel, MD 20708  
(301) 498-0330

Example of derivable variable: "percent of surveys in southern Missouri in which wetland-dependent songbirds declined, 1976-1985."

#### *CBC - Christmas Bird Count*

Christmas Bird Count Database Coordinator  
U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service  
Patuxent Wildlife Research Center  
Laurel, MD 20708  
(301) 498-0490

Example of derivable variable: "numbers of egrets in Mississippi delta counts reporting > 6 wading bird species."

#### *CCAP - Coastwatch Change Analysis Program*

Program Manager  
Coastwatch Change Analysis Program  
Beaufort Fisheries Laboratory  
National Marine Fisheries Services  
101 Pivers Island Road  
Beaufort, NC 28516  
(919) 728-3595

<sup>1</sup> Potential uses of these data as landscape indicators can be found in Appendix D. "Derivable variable" is a variable that could be derived from the map or database using a GIS or statistical package, respectively.

#### *CESCR - Commercially/Ecologically Significant Coastal Resources*

For coastal areas, contact regional office of the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service and request atlases of coastal waterbird colonies, Coastal Ecological Inventory maps, and Ecological Characterization Project maps.

#### *CRPL - Conservation Reserve Program Lands*

CRP Data Coordinator  
Agricultural Stabilization and Conservation Service  
P.O. Box 2415  
Washington, DC 20013  
(202) 720-6303

Example of derivable variable: "percent of county with highly erodible land idled from cultivation."

#### *DEM - Digital Elevation Model*

DEM Data Coordinator  
National Cartographic Information Center  
U.S. Geological Survey, Bldg. 3101  
NSTL Station, MS 39529  
(601) 688-3541

Example of derivable variable: "percent of Muddy Creek watershed with < 2% slope."

#### *DLG - Digital Line Graphs*

Reach File Coordinator  
Monitoring Branch (WH553)  
Assessment and Watershed Protection Division  
U.S. EPA  
401 M Street SW  
Washington, DC 20460  
(202) 260-7028

Example of derivable variable: "area of instream impoundments located < 20 km upriver of Smithville."

#### *DrainStat - Drainage Statistics*

Example of variable: "area of drainage in Sioux County in 1960." See reports cited in: Pavelis, G.A. (ed.). 1987. Farm drainage in the United States: History, status, and prospects. Misc. Pub. No. 1455, USDA Economic Research Service, Washington, DC.

#### *DWSF - Drinking Water Supply File*

Drinking Water Supply File Coordinator  
Monitoring Branch (WH553)  
Assessment and Watershed Protection Division  
U.S. EPA  
401 M Street SW  
Washington, DC 20460  
(202) 260-7028

Example of derivable variable: "number of drinking water intakes located < 15 km downstream from Marshville."

### ***EMAP - Environmental Monitoring and Assessment Program***

EMAP-Wetlands Technical Director  
U.S. EPA Environmental Research Laboratory  
200 SW 35th Street  
Corvallis, OR 97333  
(503) 754-4457

Example of derivable variable: "percent change in percent cover of regularly flooded tidal emergent wetlands, southeastern region." Data are not currently available, but will become available beginning in the mid to late 1990s.

### ***FEMA (maps and data files) - Federal Emergency Management Agency***

Flood Map Distribution Center  
Federal Emergency Management Agency  
6930 San Tomas Road  
Baltimore, MD 21227-6227  
(800) 333-1363

Example of derivable variable: "number of residences in the Fargo, ND, 100-yr floodplain."

### ***FIA - Forest Inventory Analysis***

FIA Coordinator  
USDA Forest Service  
Washington, DC  
(202) 205-1343

Example of derivable variable: "percent change, 1967-1982, in > 25-cm diameter oak-gum-cypress stands in southeastern Georgia." For specific data, contact USDA Forest Service experimental stations (Fort Collins, CO; Ogden, UT; St. Paul, MN; Broomall, PA; Portland, OR; Berkeley, CA; Asheville, NC; New Orleans, LA).

### ***GAP - Gap Analysis Projects***

GAP Analysis Projects  
Idaho Cooperative Fish & Wildlife Res. Unit  
University of Idaho  
Moscow, ID 83843  
(208) 885-6960

Example of derivable variable: "percent of Utah areas in public ownership that are inhabited by uncommon wetland mammals."

### ***ISS - International Shorebird Survey***

Data Coordinator  
International Shorebird Survey  
Manomet Bird Observatory  
P.O. Box 936  
Manomet, MA 02345  
(508) 224-6521

Example of derivable variable: "numbers of shorebirds at monitored sites in Region 4 having the largest concentrations of migratory shorebirds."

### ***LULC - USGS Land Use/Land Cover***

Earth Science Information Center  
U.S. Geological Survey  
507 National Center  
Reston, VA 22092  
(800) USA-MAPS

Example of derivable variable: "percent of forested wetlands and open water in Green County."

### ***Marine Fish - Marine Fisheries***

Statistical Coordinator  
Commercial and Recreational Fisheries Statistics Offices  
National Marine Fisheries Service  
Washington, DC  
(301) 713-2328

Example of derivable variable: "percent change in catch of wetland-dependent fish species in southeast reporting region, 1980-85."

### ***NADP - National Atmospheric Deposition Program/National Trends Network***

Data Manager  
Natural Resource Ecology Laboratory  
Colorado State University  
Fort Collins, CO 80523  
(303) 491-1464

Example of derivable variable: "percent change in nitrogen deposition of Coastal Piedmont sites."

### ***NASS - National Agriculture Statistics Service***

Database Coordinator  
Statistical Methods Branch  
Estimates Division  
National Agricultural Statistics Service  
Washington, DC 20250  
(202) 720-7590

Example of derivable variable: "percent change in soybean area in Thomas County, 1989-1990."

### ***NATSGO - SCS NATSGO Maps***

National Cartographic and GIS Center  
USDA Soil Conservation Service  
P.O. Box 6567  
Fort Worth, TX 76115  
(817) 334-5559

Example of derivable variable: "percent of region having hydric soils with > 5% organic matter and slope < 1%."

### **NAWQA**

NAWQA Coordinator  
Water Resources Division  
U.S. Geological Survey  
Reston, VA 22092  
(703) 648-5114

Example of derivable variable: "percent change in nitrogen loading to the Sacramento River estuary." Data are currently available only for selected areas.

### **NHBCDS - National Heritage/Nature Conservancy Biological and Conservation Data System**

Database Coordinator  
Biological and Conservation Data System  
The Nature Conservancy  
201 Devonshire Street - 5th Floor  
Boston, MA 02110  
(617) 542-1908

### **NHVCA - National Heritage/Nature Conservancy Vertebrate Characterization Abstracts**

Database Coordinator  
Vertebrate Characterization Abstracts  
The Nature Conservancy  
201 Devonshire Street - 5th Floor  
Boston, MA 02110  
(617) 542-1908

Example of derivable variable: "number of wetland types in Michigan used by raptors vs. by songbirds."

### **NPUD - National Pesticide Use Database**

Coordinator  
National Pesticides Use Database  
Resources for the Future  
1616 P Street NW  
Washington, DC 20036  
(202) 328-5025

Example of derivable variable: "area of corn treated with atrazine in Jones County in 1988."

### **NRCBR - Nest Record and Colonial Bird Registry**

Coordinator  
Nest Record Program  
Cornell Laboratory of Ornithology  
Sapsucker Woods Road  
Ithaca, NY 14850  
(607) 254-2473

Example of derivable variable: "percent success of central Iowa nests of wetland-dependent species, 1980-1990."

### **NRI - National Resource Inventory**

Resources Inventory Division  
USDA Soil Conservation Service  
P.O. Box 2890  
Washington, DC 20013  
(202) 720-5420

Example of derivable variable: "percent wetland loss, 1982-87, in areas having > 10% highly erodible land." Federal lands not included. For data specifically on substate trends in wetlands, contact:

Dr. Curtis Flather  
USDA Forest Service  
Fort Collins, CO  
(303) 498-1660

### **NWI - National Wetlands Inventory**

U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service  
c/o Earth Science Information Center  
U.S. Geological Survey  
507 National Center  
Reston, VA 22092  
(800) USA-MAPS

Example of derivable variable: "percent of Iowa wetlands > 5 ha that are seasonally flooded emergent wetlands." Not available for all of the U.S.

### **NWI Trends - National Wetland Inventory**

National Wetlands Inventory  
U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service  
9720 Executive Center  
Monroe Bldg. - Suite 101  
St. Petersburg, FL 33702  
(813) 893-3624

Example of derivable variable: "regional wetland loss between 1950 and 1970."

### **NWUDS - National Water Use Data System**

Coordinator  
National Water Use Data System  
Water Resources Division  
U.S. Geological Survey  
Reston, VA 22092  
(703) 648-6815

Example of derivable variable: "percent of groundwater withdrawals in Kansas used for irrigation." Formerly called the State Water Use Data System.

### **PNV - Potential Natural Vegetation**

GIS Coordinator  
U.S. EPA Environmental Research Laboratory  
Corvallis, OR 97333  
(503) 754-4352

Example of derivable variable: "regions of California potentially supporting tule wetland vegetation."

### ***Precip - Precipitation Network***

Precipitation Network Data Coordinator  
National Weather Service  
U.S. National Climatic Data Center  
Federal Building  
Asheville, NC 28801-2696  
(704) 259-0682

### ***Priority - Listings of Priority Wetlands***

Contact (a) the regional office of the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, and (b) the State Conservation and Outdoor Recreation Plan (SCORP) Coordinator and request the "Regional Wetlands Concept Plan" for a particular state or region. Listings also available from other state and federal resource agencies and from private conservation groups.

### ***RCF - Reach Characteristics File***

Reach Characteristics File Coordinator  
Monitoring Branch (WH553)  
Assessment and Watershed Protection Division  
U.S. EPA  
401 M Street SW  
Washington, DC 20460  
(202) 260-7028

Example of derivable variable: "percent of mainstem Fish River channelized, between Adams and Jefferson."

### ***STATSGO - SCS STATSGO Maps***

National Cartographic and GIS Center  
USDA Soil Conservation Service  
P.O. Box 6567  
Fort Worth, TX 76115  
(817) 334-5559

Example of derivable variable: "percent of watershed or region having hydric soils with > 5% organic matter and slope < 1%."

### ***STORET - EPA STORET Database***

STORET Coordinator  
Monitoring Branch (WH553)  
Assessment and Watershed Protection Division  
U.S. EPA  
401 M Street SW  
Washington, DC 20460  
(202) 260-7028

Example of derivable variable: "percent of sampling stations in Rock Creek watershed that violated nitrate criteria > 75% of the time, 1968-1988."

### ***Stream N/P - Stream Nitrate/Phosphate***

Regional Effects Program  
U.S. EPA Environmental Research Laboratory  
Corvallis, OR 97333

Send to above address for maps: Omernik, J.M. 1977. Nutrient concentrations in streams from nonpoint sources.

### ***TIGER - U.S. Census***

TIGER Database Coordinator  
Data User Services Division  
Customer Services  
Bureau of the Census  
Washington, DC 20233  
(301) 763-4100

Example of derivable variable: "percent change in rural population of Jackson County, 1980-1990."

### ***TRI - Toxic Release Inventory***

Coordinator  
Toxic Release Inventory  
Information Management Division  
Office of Pollution Prevention and Toxics (NEG008)  
U.S. EPA  
401 M Street SW  
Washington, DC 20460  
(202) 260-3938

Example of derivable variable: "kgs of cadmium released annually upstream from Eagle Wildlife Refuge."

### ***WATSTORE - USGS WATSTORE Discharge Files***

Coordinator  
WATSTORE Database  
Water Resources Division  
U.S. Geological Survey  
Reston, VA 22092  
(703) 648-5659

Example of derivable variable: "number of days annually at which discharge in the Black River was < 1 cms at the gaging station below Marshston."

### ***WBGS - Waterfowl Breeding Ground Surveys***

Database Coordinator  
Waterfowl Breeding Ground Surveys  
U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service  
Patuxent Wildlife Research Center  
Laurel, MD 20708  
(301) 498-0404/0401

Example of derivable variable: "assessed wetlands having > 4 nesting duck species."

### ***WPF - Waterfowl Parts Files***

Coordinator  
Waterfowl Parts Database  
U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service  
Patuxent Wildlife Research Center  
Laurel, MD 20708  
(301) 498-0404/0401

Example of derivable variable: "numbers of geese in 5 Arkansas counties with the largest annual harvest of waterfowl."

### ***WWS – Winter Waterfowl Survey***

Database Coordinator  
Winter Waterfowl Surveys  
U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service  
Patuxent Wildlife Research Center  
Laurel, MD 20708  
(301) 498-0404/0401

Example of derivable variable: "number of waterfowl wintering in three areas of Oregon reporting the highest annual use by waterfowl."

### ***305b – State 305b Reports***

Waterbody Database Coordinator  
Monitoring Branch (WH553)  
Assessment and Watershed Protection Division  
U.S. EPA  
410 M Street SW  
Washington, D.C. 20460  
(202) 260-7028

Example of derivable variable: "percent of assessed stream segments in Mitchell County with riparian destruction listed as a probable source of water quality degradation."  
Available for all states, but coverage within states is limited.

# APPENDIX F

## Areal Prorating

In conducting a synoptic assessment, data that are required might be reported by spatial units that differ from those needed for the assessment. For example, population data may be reported by county, but could be needed by watershed. In such instances, the reported data are prorated to the needed subunits. The method for prorating depends on the type of data. Two examples are discussed below. A more in-depth treatment of this problem is given in Flowerdew and Green (1989).

## Aggregate Data

With aggregate data, the value associated with the reported unit represents the total number of objects found in that unit. Total number of people, number of rare, threatened or endangered species, total income, and farm area are examples of aggregate data. The following equation is used to prorate aggregate data for the reported units to the subunits needed for the assessment

$$TOTAL_s = \sum TOTAL_r \times (AREA_{(r,s)} / AREA_r)$$

Equation F.1

where  $TOTAL_s$  is the value for the needed subunit  $s$ ,  $TOTAL_r$  is the value for reported unit  $r$ ,  $AREA_{(r,s)}$  is the joint area of  $r$  and  $s$  (i.e., the intersection of  $r$  and  $s$ ), and  $AREA_r$  is the total area of reported unit  $r$ .

Figure F.1 shows Subunit 4, which is a watershed from the Illinois case study, overlaid with county boundaries. The areas of each county and the joint county-watershed areas are also shown (areas were determined by GIS, as described in Appendix G). Table F.1 shows how population from the three counties was prorated to Subunit 4.

The validity of this approach depends on the assumption that the aggregate data are distributed uniformly throughout the reported unit. A possibility for error

exists in this method when the objects represented by the aggregate data are clustered, as in population centers, or are isolated, such as a particular endangered species. If this assumption is violated, it may still be possible to adjust the data to account for bias (see for example the discussion of "Landscape Indicators" within the Washington case study). Generally this error decreases as the size of the final subunit increases, because random variations and local heterogeneities are averaged out.

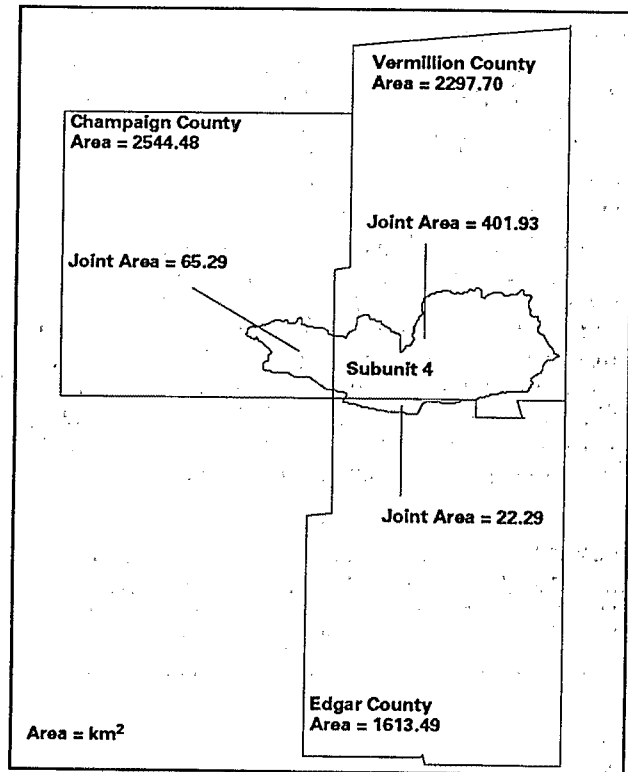


Figure F.1. Subunit 4 from Illinois case study overlaid with county boundaries.

Table F.1. Prorating county data to Subunit 4 for the Illinois case study.

County	Population by county <sup>1</sup> TOTAL <sub>r</sub>	Joint area <sup>2</sup> AREA <sub>(r,s)</sub>	County area <sup>2</sup> AREA <sub>r</sub>	Partial sum <sup>3</sup>
Champaign	168392	65.29	2544.48	4321
Edgar	21725	22.29	1613.49	300
Vermillion	95222	401.93	2297.70	16657
Subunit 4 Total				21278

<sup>1</sup> 1980 population from U.S. Bureau of the Census (1982b).

<sup>2</sup> Area in km<sup>2</sup> derived by GIS; see Appendix G.

<sup>3</sup> The population within the joint county-subunit area, equal to  $TOTAL_r \times (AREA_{(r,s)} / AREA_r)$ .

## Intensity Data

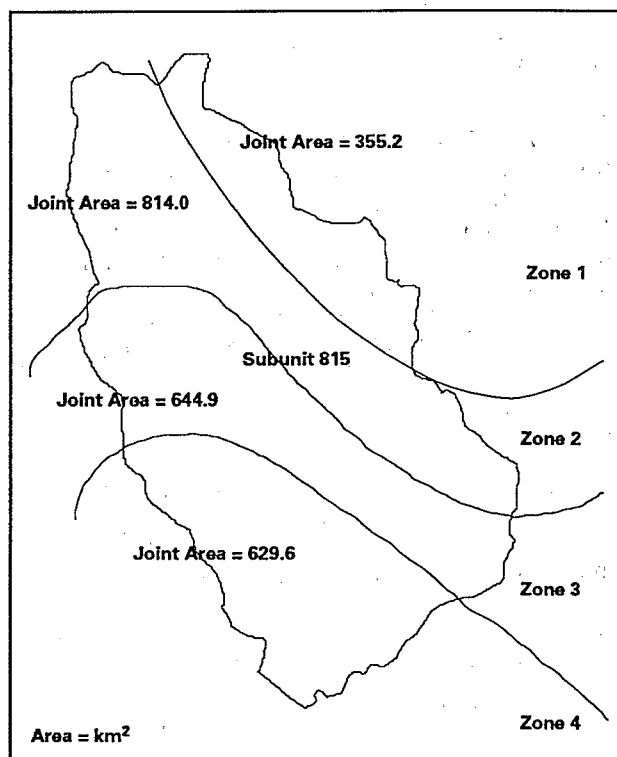
With intensity data, the reported value is not a total, but instead is an average intensity or rate of some process; the intensity represents the average value at every point within the bounded area. For example, mean annual precipitation is the average amount of precipitation received in a year at each point within the reported unit, in inches or centimeters. Other examples would include mean elevation, mean insolation (solar energy), average depth to groundwater, etc. Such data are prorated according to the following equation:

$$\text{INTENSITY}_s = \sum \text{INTENSITY}_r \times (\text{AREA}_{(r,s)} / \text{AREA}_s)$$

Equation F.2

where  $\text{INTENSITY}_s$  is the value for the needed subunit  $s$ ,  $\text{INTENSITY}_r$  is the value for the recorded unit  $r$ ,  $\text{AREA}_s$  is the total area of the needed subunit, and  $\text{AREA}_{(r,s)}$  is the joint area of  $r$  and  $s$ . Note that in this case area of the needed subunit is used as the denominator, rather than the area of the recorded unit.

Figure F.2 shows Subunit 815, which is a state Water Management Unit from the Louisiana case study, overlaid with precipitation zones. The precipitation zones were derived by taking the average value between adjacent contours of mean annual precipitation, in inches (precipitation was required in inches for calculation of  $7Q_{10}$  values using USGS regression equations; see Appendix H). Table F.2 shows how precipitation data from the four zones were prorated to Subunit 815.



**Figure F.2.** Subunit 815 from Louisiana case study overlaid with precipitation zone boundaries.

**Table F.2.** Prorating precipitation data to Subunit 815 for the Louisiana case study.

Zone	Precipitation by zone <sup>1</sup> INTENSITY <sub>r</sub>	Joint area <sup>2</sup> AREA <sub>(r,s)</sub>	Subunit area <sup>2</sup> AREA <sub>s</sub>	Partial sum <sup>3</sup>
1	51	355.2	2441.5	7.4
2	53	814.0	2441.5	17.7
3	55	644.9	2441.5	14.5
4	57	6296	2441.5	14.7
Subunit 815 Total				54.3

<sup>1</sup> Mean annual precipitation in inches, derived by averaging the value of adjacent precipitation contours; precipitation contours digitized from Lee (1985b).

<sup>2</sup> Area in km<sup>2</sup> derived by GIS; see Appendix G.

<sup>3</sup> The average annual precipitation within the joint zone-subunit area, equal to:  $\text{INTENSITY}_r \times (\text{AREA}_{(r,s)} / \text{AREA}_s)$ .

# APPENDIX G

## Areal Estimation Techniques

In this appendix we briefly discuss three methods for estimating mapped areas. We also discuss quality assurance and quality control measures to be employed when using the methods.

### Dot Grid Method

Figure G.1 shows a map of Subunit 4 from the Illinois case study (Chapter 4) overlaid with a dot grid. The proportion of the subunit area in a particular land use was calculated by counting the dots falling into each land-use category and dividing by the total number of dots within the subunit.

$$\text{land use} = \text{dot count} / \text{total dots}$$

Equation G.1

To arrive at the area of each land use, this proportion is multiplied by subunit area:

$$\text{area} = \text{land use} \times \text{subunit area}$$

Equation G.2

The results of estimating area using the dot grid method for Subunit 4 appear in Table G.1.

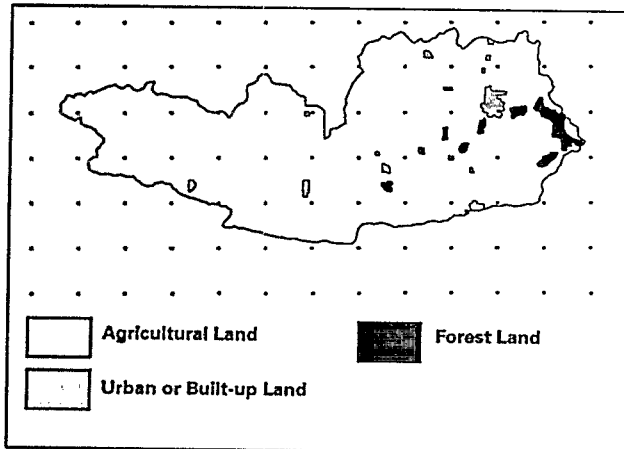


Figure G.1. Subunit 4 from the Illinois case study overlaid with dot grid. Polygons represent different land-use classes.

Table G.1. Area estimates using dot grid method. "Land Use" represents the Level I land use class from Anderson et al. (1976).

Land Use Class	Dot Count	Land Use	Area (km <sup>2</sup> )
Agricultural Land	28	0.903	442.1
Urban or Built-up Land	1	0.032	15.8
Forest Land	2	0.065	31.6
Totals	31	1.000	489.5

Figure G.2 shows a higher grid density (four times as many dots) imposed on the same map. Area estimation results using this dot grid are given in Table G.2. Although results are more accurate when using a denser grid, the effort in counting the dots also increases (Muehrcke 1978).

### Geographic Information System (GIS)

A GIS is a valuable tool in the construction, manipulation, and display of spatial data. The area estimates here were generated using the ARC/INFO® GIS software. Table G.3 shows a partial list of polygon areas by land-use type. The software automatically calculates the AREA in ft<sup>2</sup>; SQKM is a user-defined conversion of those values into km<sup>2</sup>. Table G.4 contains land-use totals arrived at using the ARC/INFO® GIS package for comparison with Tables G.1 and G.2.

Note that 0.2 km<sup>2</sup> of barren land is included in the GIS estimate; neither of the dot grid estimates contained this category because the grid density was too low for sampling small, rare polygons. If estimating the number or area of such polygons is essential, a higher grid density would need to be used.

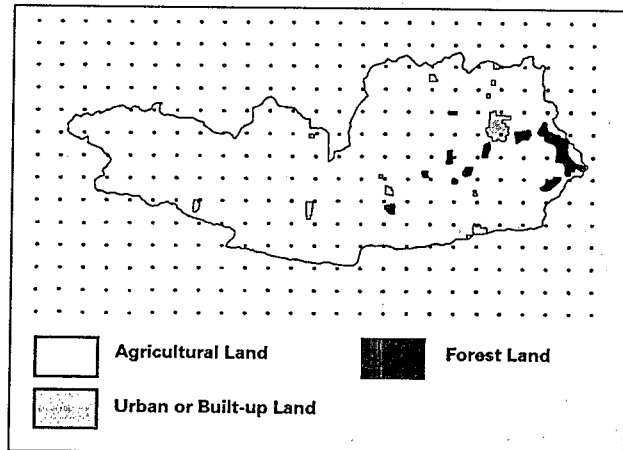


Figure G.2. Subunit 4 from the Illinois case study overlaid with denser dot grid. Polygons represent different land use classes.

Table G.2. Area estimates using denser dot grid. "Land Use" represents the Level I land use class from Anderson et al. (1976).

Land Use Class	Dot Count	Land use	Area (km <sup>2</sup> )
Agricultural Land	120	0.945	462.5
Urban or Built-up Land	2	0.016	7.7
Forest Land	5	0.039	19.3
Totals	127	1.000	489.5

## Planimeter

Under certain conditions, a planimeter can be used to calculate area. A polygon is planimetered by tracing its perimeter with a pen-like tool. If a polygon contains a smaller polygon, the smaller area must be subtracted from the larger "donut" polygon. The overall size of the various polygons within a subunit determines whether this method is practical. Where polygons are mostly large, measurements are fairly quick and accurate. As the average polygon size decreases, however, the effort increases and accuracy decreases. Figure G.3 shows an electronic planimeter; manual versions are also available.

## Quality Assurance and Quality Control

It is important to check the data to ensure that the areal measurements meet the requirements of an assessment. Therefore, various checks must be performed depending on which estimation technique is being used.

When using a dot grid, several steps can be taken to reduce error. First, position the dot grid and tally the dots at least twice — three times if the dot counts differ substantially between the first two counts. Second, use a grease pencil or water-based marker and a tally meter to eliminate confusion when counting large numbers of dots. Third, check to ensure that the proportions of all land-use types add to one. Finally, have another individual repeat the process on 10% of the areas measured.

When using a GIS package, various data sets are entered, manipulated, and displayed. Each step can lead to errors. Maintain copies of the raw data sets to verify how these data are displayed in the end product. If digitizing is required, certain operating procedures should be followed. When beginning the digitizing session, establish the acceptable amount of error allowed for the project, then make sure it is not exceeded by comparing hard copies of the digitized maps against the originals for accuracy. This is done by overlaying the original and the digitized maps on a light table. If boundaries do not match, the polygon data in the GIS should be edited.

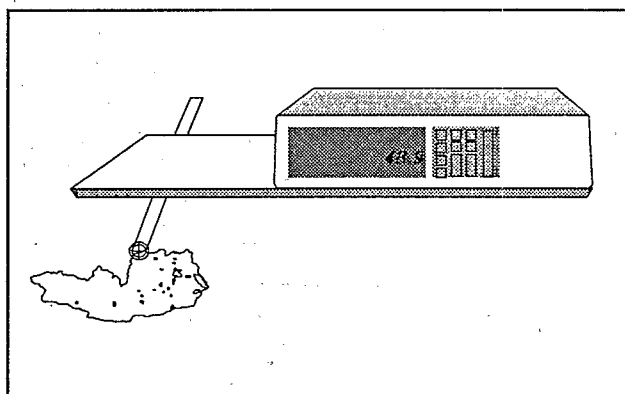


Figure G.3. Electronic planimeter.

Table G.3. Partial listing of land-use areas for polygons within Subunit 4 of the Illinois case study (see Figure G.1). AREA is in  $\text{ft}^2$  and is automatically generated by ARC/INFO®; SQKM is a user-defined variable that converts area to  $\text{km}^2$ . LEVEL2 is the code for the Anderson et al. (1976) Level II land use class.

LEVEL2	AREA	SQKM
12	1035258.0	0.10
11	2153979.0	0.20
41	60510968.0	5.62
17	1429273.0	0.13
21	5074137000.0	471.40
13	873996.8	0.08
41	11819784.0	1.10
11	29863508.0	2.77
.	.	.
.	.	.

Table G.4. Area estimates using GIS package. "Land Use" represents the Level I land-use class from Anderson et al. (1976).

Land Use Class	Area ( $\text{km}^2$ )
Agricultural Land	471.4
Urban or Built-up Land	7.0
Forest Land	10.9
Barren Land	0.2
Totals	489.5

If a planimeter is used, make sure it has been recently calibrated. Use the scale bar on a quality map to determine whether the area registering on the machine corresponds to a geographic area as represented on the map. Be sure to enter the proper scaling factor on the planimeter. As with the dot count, the average of two or more readings should be used. Again, another person should check 10% of the areas measured. Further information on errors in mapping and geographic analysis appears in Burrough (1986).

## APPENDIX H

### Sample Calculations

#### Stream Discharge

Hydrology can be influenced by factors outside of subunit boundaries if the subunit is not a closed drainage unit. Upstream characteristics such as slope, precipitation, and land use are examples of potential influences on hydrology within a particular subunit. Figure H.1 shows the Pearl River Basin overlaid with subunit boundaries; the basin contains two main channels. Subunits 1 and 5 are closed drainage areas, meaning that precipitation provides the only input of water. However, Subunits 2, 3, and 4 are not closed because they receive hydrologic input from upstream subunits in addition to rainwater (Figure H.1). Streamflow in these subunits is cumulative, i.e., it is dependent on upstream subunits. We illustrate how this can affect calculations by calculating the peak discharge for a 50-year flood ( $Q_{50}$ ) for Subunit 4.  $Q_{50}$  can be estimated using the following regression equation developed by the USGS (Landers and Wilson 1991):

$$Q_{50} = 648 \times \text{AREA}^{0.85} \times \text{SLOPE}^{0.11} \times \text{LENGTH}^{0.31}$$

*Equation H.1*

where  $Q_{50}$  is the peak discharge for a 50-year flood in  $\text{ft}^3/\text{s}$ , AREA is the watershed area ( $\text{mi}^2$ ), SLOPE is the mainstem channel slope ( $\text{ft}/\text{mi}$ ), and LENGTH is the mainstem channel length ( $\text{mi}$ ). Note that English units must be used with the independent variables, as the regression was developed to calculate  $Q_{50}$  in  $\text{ft}^3/\text{s}$ .

Because AREA represents total watershed area, not subunit area, AREA for Subunit 4 includes the entire basin and is equal to the sum of the five subunit areas:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{AREA} &= 2478.88 \text{ mi}^2 + 1972.49 \text{ mi}^2 + 1194.29 \text{ mi}^2 + \\ &\quad 1785.10 \text{ mi}^2 + 1294.81 \text{ mi}^2 \\ &= 8725.57 \text{ mi}^2 \end{aligned}$$

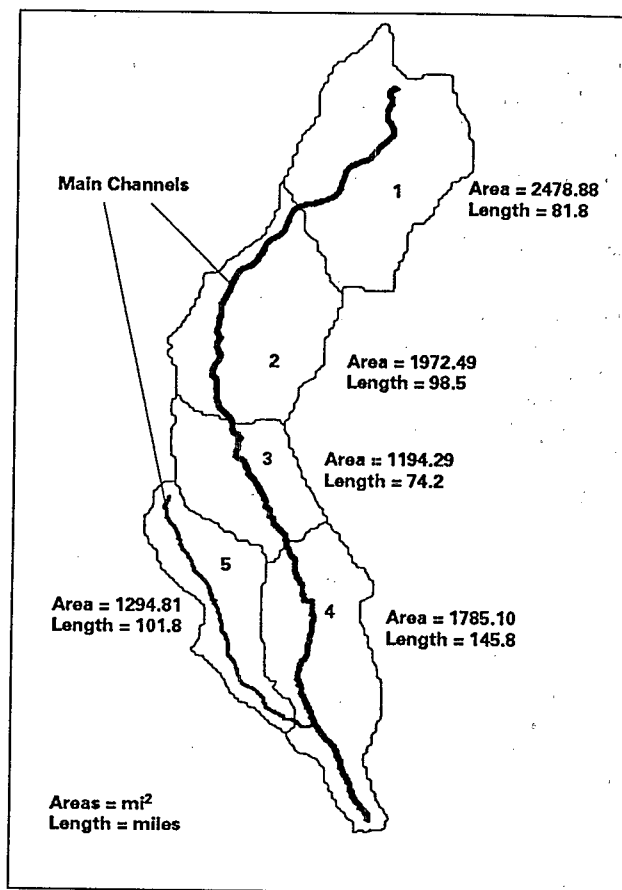
*Equation H.2*

The mainstem channel length is the length of the longest channel and is therefore equal to the combined channel lengths within Subunits 1 through 4:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{LENGTH} &= 81.8 \text{ mi} + 98.5 \text{ mi} + 74.2 \text{ mi} + 145.8 \text{ mi} \\ &= 400.3 \text{ mi} \end{aligned}$$

*Equation H.3*

Note that the channel length of Subunit 5 is not included because it is not a part of the main stem. The mainstem channel slope is similarly dependent on Subunits 1 through 4. For Equation H.1, slope must be calculated



**Figure H.1.** The Pearl River Basin with subunit boundaries. Areas and lengths are for each individual subunit and are not cumulative.

from points 10% and 85% up the mainstem channel (Landers and Wilson 1991), which in this example is at points 40.0 miles ( $0.10 \times 400.3 \text{ mi}$ ) and 340.2 miles ( $0.85 \times 400.3 \text{ mi}$ ) up the channel length. The elevations at these points are 35 and 340 feet, respectively, based on a 1:250,000 USGS topographic map. The length between these points is 75% of the channel length ( $85\% - 10\%$ ), and SLOPE for Subunit 4 is equal to:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{SLOPE} &= \frac{(\text{ELEVATION}_{85\%} - \text{ELEVATION}_{10\%})}{(\text{LENGTH} \times 0.75)} \\ &= \frac{(340 \text{ ft} - 35 \text{ ft})}{300.2 \text{ mi}} = 1.02 \text{ ft}/\text{mi} \end{aligned}$$

*Equation H.4*

Substituting the values of AREA, LENGTH, and SLOPE into Equation H.1 gives the following peak discharge for Subunit 4 (values rounded):

$$Q_{50} = 648 \times 8725.57^{0.85} \times 1.02^{0.11} \times 400.3^{0.31} \\ = 226,602 \text{ ft}^3/\text{sec}$$

Equation H.5

This value can be converted to  $\text{m}^3/\text{s}$  using a conversion factor of  $0.02832 \text{ m}^3/\text{ft}^3$ , giving a value of  $6417 \text{ m}^3/\text{s}$ . A similar approach was used to calculate  $7Q_{10}$  values (7-day mean discharge for a 10-year recurrence interval for the State of Louisiana (Lee 1985a).

### Future Risk

The calculation of future risk for the State of Washington (Equation 4.10 and Table 4.3) is based on recent urban and agricultural growth. Because population and agricultural census data are reported by county, weighting factors must be calculated first (Appendix F) so county data can be prorated to the subunits needed for the assessment. Weighting factors (WEIGHT) are calculated by dividing the joint county-subunit area (J\_AREA) by total county area (AREA):

$$\text{WEIGHT} = \text{J\_AREA} / \text{AREA}$$

Equation H.6

Table H.1 contains weighting factors calculated for the five counties that overlap Washington Subunit 26. Using these data, joint population or agriculture area (e.g., the estimated population for the portion of the county within the subunit) is calculated using the following general equation:

$$\text{J\_VALUE} = \text{VALUE} \times \text{WEIGHT}$$

Equation H.7

where J\_VALUE is the joint value, VALUE is the county value, and WEIGHT is the weighting factor from Equation H.6. Joint values are calculated for 1970 population, 1980 population, 1974 agricultural land, and 1982 agricultural land in Table H.2.

The weighted percent annual change in population and agriculture is then calculated for each joint area using the following two equations:

$$\text{WTPOPCHG} = \left[ \frac{\text{J\_POP80} - \text{J\_POP70}}{\text{J\_POP70}} \right] \times \frac{8}{95}$$

Equation H.8

$$\text{WTARGCHG} = \left[ \frac{\text{J\_AGR82} - \text{J\_AGR74}}{\text{J\_AGR74}} \right] \times \frac{87}{95}$$

Equation H.9

where WTPOPCHG and WTARGCHG are the weighted percent annual change in population and agriculture, respectively, and the other variables are as previously defined. The terms are divided by the number of years between the census dates (10 and 8 for population and agriculture, respectively) to put the change on an annual basis. Because 8 and 87% of national wetland loss has been due to urban expansion and agricultural conversion (Tiner 1984), these values are used as weights in Equations H.8 and H.9 to account for the relative importance of the two impacts (8/95 and 87/95 are actually

Table H.1. Calculation of weighting factors for counties overlapping Washington Subunit 26.

County	J_AREA <sup>1</sup>	AREA <sup>2</sup>	WEIGHT <sup>3</sup>
Cowlitz	1757.11	2964.12	0.5928
Lewis	3816.26	6407.65	0.5956
Pierce	135.98	4299.84	0.0316
Skamania	700.03	4369.82	0.1602
Yakima	18.81	11104.69	0.0017

<sup>1</sup> Joint county-subunit area in  $\text{km}^2$

<sup>2</sup> County area in  $\text{km}^2$

<sup>3</sup> Weighting factor from Equation H.6.

Table H.2. Conversion of county census data into joint county-subunit values for counties overlapping Washington Subunit 26.

County	WEIGHT <sup>1</sup>	POP70 <sup>2</sup>	J_POP70 <sup>3</sup>	POP80 <sup>2</sup>	J_POP80 <sup>3</sup>	AGR74 <sup>2</sup>	J_AGR74 <sup>3</sup>	AGR82 <sup>2</sup>	J_AGR82 <sup>3</sup>
Cowlitz	0.5928	68616	40675	79548	47155	153.93	91.25	165.22	97.94
Lewis	0.5956	45467	27079	56025	33367	554.97	330.53	548.71	326.80
Pierce	0.0316	411027	12998	485643	15358	251.33	7.95	279.09	8.83
Skamania	0.1602	5845	936	7919	1269	33.72	5.40	36.19	5.80
Yakima	0.0017	144971	246	172508	292	7155.05	12.12	6942.55	11.76

<sup>1</sup> Weighting factor from Equation H.6.

<sup>2</sup> POP70, POP80, AGR74, and AGR82 are county values for 1970 population, 1980 population, 1974 agricultural land, and 1982 agricultural land, respectively; areas in  $\text{km}^2$ .

<sup>3</sup> J\_POP70, J\_POP80, J\_AGR74, and J\_AGR82 are joint county-subunit values for 1970 population, 1980 population, 1974 agricultural land, and 1982 agricultural land, respectively; areas in  $\text{km}^2$ .

used so that the factors sum to one; the remaining 5% of national loss is ignored). Table H.3 contains data for WTPOPCHG and WTAGRCHG by joint area and gives totals for Subunit 26 (if either of the two subunit sums were less than zero, the value would have been set to zero since a loss of population or agricultural area

would not necessarily translate into a gain in wetlands). Adding the subunit totals for WTPOPCHG and WTAGRCHG gives the actual risk factor for Subunit 26:

$$\text{RISK} = (9.41 + 24.73) \times 10^{-3} = 34.14 \times 10^{-3}$$

Equation H.10

**Table H.3. Weighted percent annual population change and agricultural change for joint county-subunit areas of counties overlapping Washington Subunit 26 (values rounded).**

County	J_POP70 <sup>1</sup>	J_POP80 <sup>1</sup>	WTPOPCHG <sup>2</sup> (x 10 <sup>-3</sup> )	J_AGR74 <sup>3</sup>	J_AGR82 <sup>3</sup>	WTAGRCHG <sup>4</sup> (x10 <sup>-3</sup> )
Cowlitz	40675	47155	1.34	91.25	97.94	8.40
Lewis	27079	33367	1.96	330.53	326.80	-1.29
Pierce	12998	15358	1.53	7.95	8.83	12.64
Skamania	936	1269	2.99	5.40	5.80	8.38
Yakima	246	292	1.60	12.12	11.76	-3.40
Total			9.41			24.73

<sup>1</sup> J\_POP70 and J\_POP80 are joint county-subunit populations for 1970 and 1980, respectively.

<sup>2</sup> Weighted percent annual change in population (Equation H.8)

<sup>3</sup> J\_AGR74 and J\_AGR82 are joint county-subunit agricultural land areas (in km<sup>2</sup>) for 1974 and 1982, respectively.

<sup>4</sup> Weighted percent annual change in agriculture (Equation H.9)

# APPENDIX I

## Information Form

To the Reader,

We hope you have found *A Synoptic Approach to Cumulative Impact Assessment* valuable. In the event that we update this report, we'd appreciate having your opinion about how it might be improved.

We'd like to get an idea of who our audience is, so please fill in the information below and mail it back to us. Feel free to make any other comments as well.

Many thanks for helping.

Wetlands Research Program  
U.S. Environmental Protection Agency  
200 SW 35TH Street  
Corvallis, OR 97333

Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Affiliation: \_\_\_\_\_

Address: \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

Phone: \_\_\_\_\_

Fax: \_\_\_\_\_

Educational Background: \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

Job Position: \_\_\_\_\_

Is your primary responsibility policy, regulatory,  
technical, or other? \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

Would you like to receive revisions of this document if  
it is updated, or related reports as they become  
available?

☐ YES

☐ NO

Would you like to receive the WRP update?

☐ YES

☐ NO

What do you like best about *A Synoptic Approach to  
Cumulative Impact Assessment*?

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

What do you like least about *A Synoptic Approach to  
Cumulative Impact Assessment*?

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

What isn't in *A Synoptic Approach to Cumulative Impact  
Assessment* that should be?

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

Primary reason you are interested in this approach:

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

Do you plan on conducting a cumulative impact  
assessment?

☐ YES

☐ NO

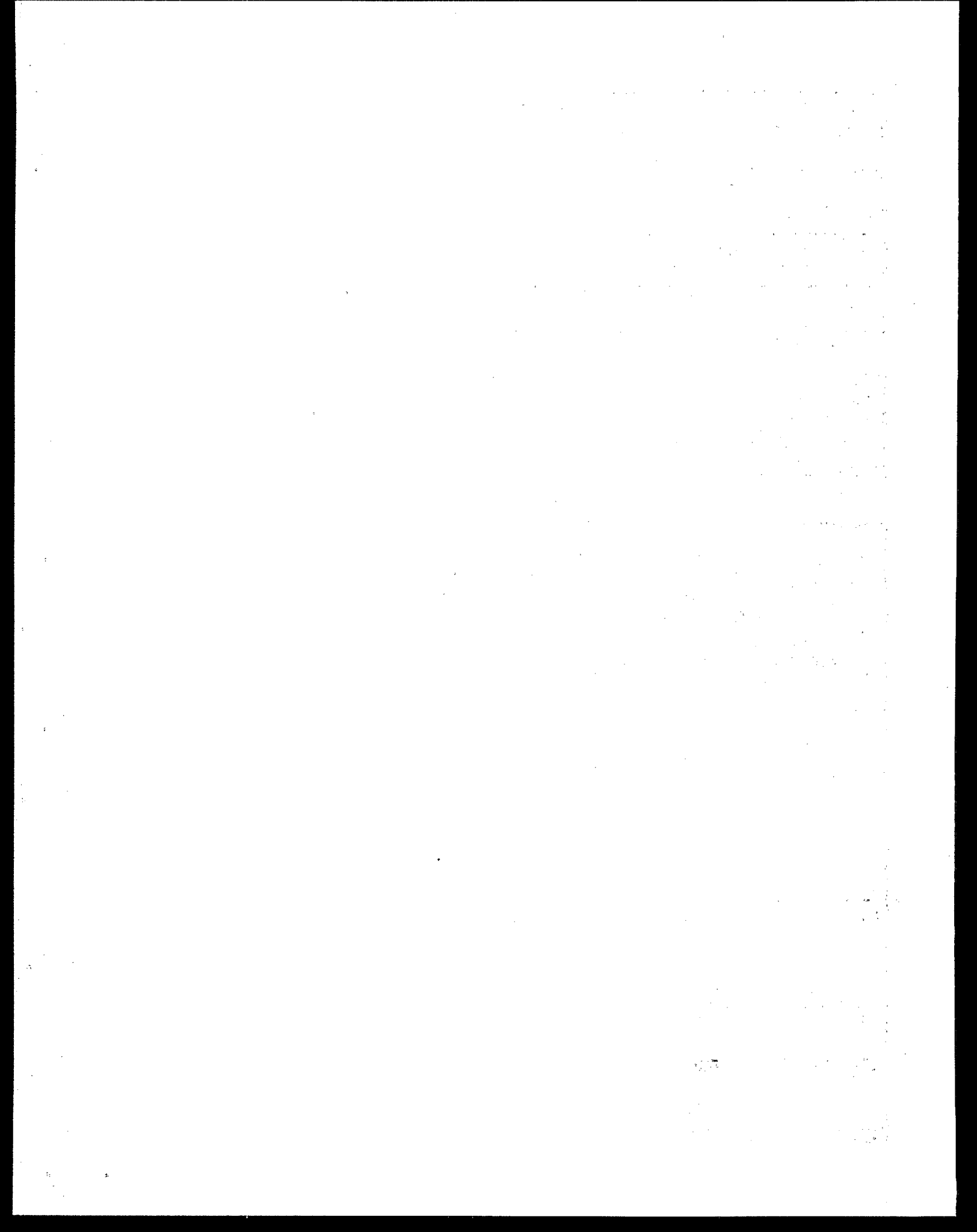
If so, do you plan on using the synoptic approach?

☐ YES

☐ NO

If you answered no, could you please tell us why you  
felt the synoptic approach was inappropriate?

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_



TECHNICAL REPORT DATA (Please read Instructions on the reverse before completing)		
1. REPORT NO. EPA/600/R-92/167	2.	3. RECIPIENT'S ACCESSION NO. PB 93-100147
4. TITLE AND SUBTITLE  A Synoptic Approach to Cumulative Impact Assessment - A Proposed Methodology		5. REPORT DATE October 1992
7. AUTHOR(S) Scott G. Leibowitz, Brooke Abbruzzese, Paul Adamus, Larry Hughes, and Jeffrey Irish		6. PERFORMING ORGANIZATION CODE
9. PERFORMING ORGANIZATION NAME AND ADDRESS  ManTech Environmental Technology, US EPA ERL-Corvallis, OR		8. PERFORMING ORGANIZATION REPORT NO.
12. SPONSORING AGENCY NAME AND ADDRESS US Environmental Protection Agency Environmental Research Laboratory 200 SW 35th Street Corvallis, OR 97333		10. PROGRAM ELEMENT NO.
		11. CONTRACT/GRANT NO.
		13. TYPE OF REPORT AND PERIOD COVERED Published Report
		14. SPONSORING AGENCY CODE EPA/600/O2
15. SUPPLEMENTARY NOTES 1992. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Environmental Research Laboratory, Corvallis, OR.		
16. ABSTRACT  This proposed methodology was designed for assessing cumulative impacts to wetlands as part of permit review under Section 404 of the Clean Water Act. The synoptic approach allows wetland managers to produce regional or statewide maps that rank portions of the landscape according to a set of landscape variables, or synoptic indices. The approach is intended to be easily applied so it can augment the best professional judgement used daily by wetland managers and regulators. The report describes the five steps of conducting a synoptic assessment, and illustrates the use of synoptic information through four case studies.		
17. KEY WORDS AND DOCUMENT ANALYSIS		
a. DESCRIPTORS	b. IDENTIFIERS/OPEN ENDED TERMS	c. COSATI Field/Group
cumulative impacts, cumulative effects, synoptic assessment		
18. DISTRIBUTION STATEMENT  Release to Public	19. SECURITY CLASS (This Report) Unclassified	21. NO. OF PAGES 137 150
	20. SECURITY CLASS (This page) Unclassified	22. PRICE

